"AUTHORIZED TEXT-BOOKS."

AN INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

Intended as an Elementary Drill Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language, and as an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader, and Composition. By Albert Harkness, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo. 162 Pages.

A LATIN GRAMMAR.

For Schools and Colleges. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo, 355 Pages.

A LATIN READER.

Intended as a Companion to the author's Latin Grammar; with References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary. By Albert Harkness, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo. 212 Pages.

A FIRST GREEK BOOK.

Comprising an Outline of the Forms and Inflections of the Language, a complete Analytical Syntax, and an Introductory Greek Reader, with Notes and Vocabularies. By Albert Harkness, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University, author of Harkness's Latin Grammar, &c., &c.

12mo, 276 Pages.

COPP, CLARK & CO.,

PUBLISHERS.

17 and 19 KING STREET EAST, TORONTO.

IN BOOK.

the Inflections and Princiction to the author's Gram-LBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D.,

ARKNESS, Ph. D., Professor

es.

Latin Grammar; with Refary. By Albert Harkness,

infections of the Language, atroductory Greek Reader, art Harkness, Ph. D., Proarkness's Latin Grammar,

e co..

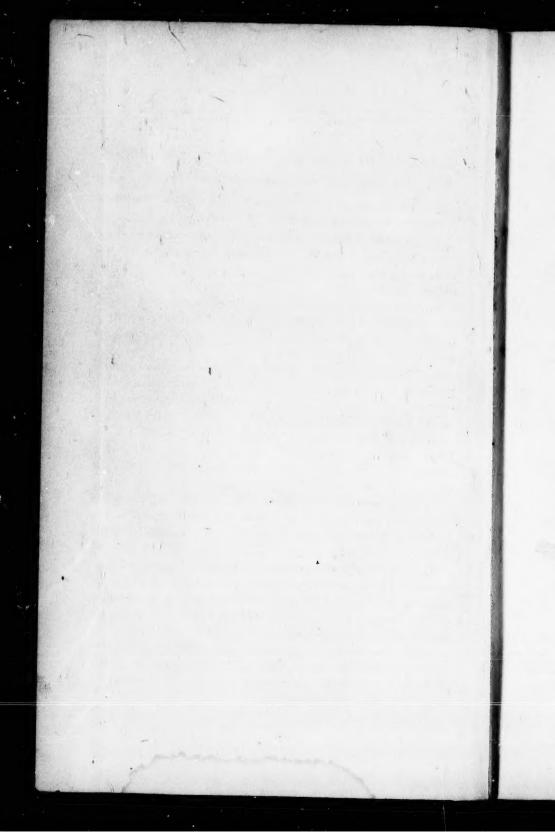
T, TORONTO.

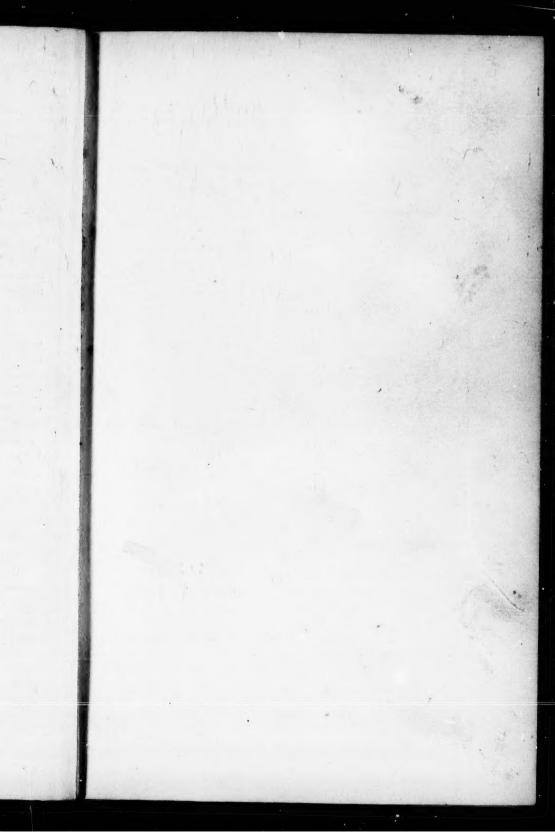
A Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges.

By A. HARKNESS, Ph.D., Professer in Brown University.

To explain the general plan of the work, the Publishers ask the attention of teachers to the following extracts from the Preface:

- 1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those vital principles which underlie, control, and explain them.
- 2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student.
- 3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully-selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.
- 4. He has, moreover, endeavoxed to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering hi spages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to eurich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.
- 5. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself.
- 6. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.
- 7. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive.





Of My Marshall
ARNOLD'S

FIRST LATIN BOOK;

REMODELLED AND REWRITTEN,

AND ADAPTED TO THE

OLLENDORFF METHOD OF INSTRUCTION.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, P. D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.



TORONTO:
COPP, CLARK & CO.,
17 & 19 KING STREET RAST.
1871.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1851, by
D. APPLETON & CO.,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York,

of :

ne

in

wa

The

me

resj

rest

PREFACE.

Arnold's First and Second Latin Book was introduced to the American public some five years since, under the editorial care of Professor Spencer. As the system was, at that time, quite new in this country, and comparatively so in England, the American editor did not think it best "to make any material alteration in the original work." The marked favor with which the volume was at once received, and the almost unprecedented success which has since attended it, are a sufficient proof of its excellence. The test of the class-room and the improved methods of instruction have, however, convinced teachers that, with many rare merits, and with a general plan most happily adapted to the wants of the beginner in Latin, it was still, in some important respects, quite incomplete in its execution and details. The present volume, undertaken at the request of the publishers, is the result of an attempt to remove these defects, and thus to render

Southern

the work worthy of yet higher favor and success. The entire book has been rewritten and many important additions have been made.

t

fu

le

78

re

be

he

ar

m

or

fu

of

977

h

ch

A

G

L

ar

el

th

The Latin of the First and Second Latin Book has been retained, so far as consistent with our purpose; but as it has been found necessary to add many new selections, care has been taken to secure pure classic Latin, by resorting exclusively to the pages of Caesar and Cicero.

In the preparation of this book, it has been a leading object with the editor, so to classify and arrange the various topics as to simplify, and, as far as possible, to remove the disheartening difficulties too often encountered by the learner at the very outset in the study of an ancient language. He has accordingly endeavored so to present each new subject as to enable the beginner fully to master it, before he is called upon to perplex himself with its more difficult combinations. The lessons have been prepared with constant reference to the Ollendorff method of instruction, while, at the same time, special pains have been taken to present a complete and systematic outline, both of the grammatical forms and of the elementary principles of the language. An effort has thus been made to combine the respective advantages of two systems, distinct in themselves, but by no means inconsistent with each other.

In the earlier portions of the book, the exercises for translation consist of two paragraphs of Latin sentences and two of English, The entire

has been een taken the pages

topics as eartening very outordingly the beperplex as have

nguage. advanmeans

n taken

gram-

aslation anglish, the first of each being designed to illustrate the particular topic which chances to be the subject of the lesson, and the second to furnish miscellaneous examples on the various subjects already learned. Thus each lesson becomes at once an advance and a review.

For convenience of reference and for the purposes of general review, a summary of Paradigms and an outline of Syntax have been appended to the lessons. The Syntax will be found, it is hoped, to be an improvement, at least in oint of classification and arrangement, upon that ordinarily presented in Latin Grammars. In a Second Latin Book, now in preparation—being at once a Reader and an Exercise Book—the editor contemplates a fuller development and illustration of the Latin Syntax, in a series of exercises on the principle of analysis and synthesis.

The present volume, as already intimated, has been prepared mainly from Arnold's First and Second Latin Book; the editor has, however, had before him numerous other works of a kindred character, from some of which he has derived valuable aid. Among these may be mentioned, in addition to the various Latin Grammars in use in this country and in England, Allen's New Latin Delectus; Analysis of Latin Verbs, by the same author; and Pinnock's First Latin Grammar; together with numerous other elementary works, among which the editor is happy to specify the First Latin Book, by Professors M'Clintock and Crooks.

Professor Spencer's edition of Arnold's Latin Prose Compo

sition, one of the volumes of the excellent Classical Series published by the Messrs. Appleton, has been consulted with much advantage.

For valuable assistance in the preparation of the Syntax, the editor is happy to acknowledge his indebtedness to Greene's Analysis of the English Language.

A. HARKNESS.

Prividence, July 18, 1851.

Series pub with much

Syntax, the eene's Ana-

KNESS.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

	PRONUNCIATION.			
I.	Letters .		1	ago.
	Syllables			
	Quantity	•		9
	Accentuation		•	22
	Sounds of the Letters	•		X
* •	1. The Continental Method		•	3
	II. The English Method	•		8
	in the English method		•	T.
	LESSONS AND EXERCISES.			
Lesson.				
1.	Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predica	ate		7
	Verbs.—First Conjugation			8
III.	First Conjugation—continued			11
IV.	Second Conjugation	•		12
V.	Third Conjugation			14
VI.	Fourth Conjugation .	•		16
VIL	Four Conjugations.—Plural Number			17
	Nouns.—Nominative Case	•		19
IX.	Nominative Case—continued			23
X.	Vocative Case			24
XI.	Apposition.—Modified Subject			26
XII.	Genitive Case.—Modified Subject .			27
XIII	Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate			31
XIV.	Accusative—continued.—Adverbial Modifiers	4		84
XV.	Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate .			85
XVL	Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate .			88
XVII.	First Declension			40
XVIII.	Second Declension.—Nouns in us and um			43

Lesson.	Page
XIX. Second Declension.—Nouns in er and ir	. 46
XX. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension .	47
XXI. First and Second Declension—continued .	. 51
XXII. First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value	10.
and Degree of Estimation	53
XXIII. Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I.	55
XXIV. Third Declension.— Class II	58
XXV. Third Declension.— Class III.	60
XXVI. Third Declension.— Class IV.	. 68
XXVII. Third Declension.—Genitives in ium.—Gender .	66
XXVIII. Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other	er 68
XXIX. Adjectives.—Third Declension	. 71
XXX. Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension	75
XXXI. Nouns.—Fifth Declension	. 78
XXXII. Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender	81
XXXIII. Verbs.—Esse, to be.—Predicate, Esse with a Noun or an	
Adjective	. 85
XXXIV. Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with Esse in the Pre-	
dicate	87
XXXV Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth	
Conjugations .	. 90
XXXVI Third Conjugation Class I Second Root the same as	
the First	0.9
XXXVII. Third Conjugation.—Class II.—Second Root formed by	
adding s to the First	96
XXVIII. Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root	
formed by adding s to the First	97
XXXIX. Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root	
formed by adding s to the First	100
XL. Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity—	
Radical Vowel lengthened (and often changed) .	103
XLI. Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity—	
Reduplication	105
XLII. Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity—	
Second Root after the analogy of other conjugations	107
XLIII. Subjunctive Mood	110
XLIV Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose	113
XLV. Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation	115
XLVI. Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pro-	
	119
XLVII. Subjunctive MoodFour Conjugations	123

Page 46 47 . 51 alue, 53 55 58 60 . 68 66 ther 68 . 71 75 . 78 81 an . 85 re-87 th . 90 a 8 23 by . 96 ot97 oŧ . 100

103

. 105

s 107 110 . 118 n 115 -. 119 123

	021222122	
Lesson		Page
XLVIII.	Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs	
	in io of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pro-	
	nouns	127
XLIX.	Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Inten-	
_		180
I.	Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative	
	and Interrogative Pronouns	182
LI.	Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Inter-	
	rogative Particles	134
LII.	Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued Inde-	
	finite and Possessive Pronouns	136
2000 CO	Verb Esse, to be	138
1999	Verb Esse, continued.—Comparison of Adjectives .	142
LV.	Compounds of Esse.—Comparison of Adverbs.—Nume-	
		145
LVI.	Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Continued	
	Action	143
LVII.	Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed	
		151
No. of the last of	Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice	154
		158
	Imperative Mood—Active and Passive .	160
		163
	Participles.—Ablative Absolute	166
	Gerunds and Supines	169
	Participle in dus	172
	First Conjugation	174
	Second Conjugation	175
	Third Conjugation	176
	Fourth Conjugation	177
. 63		. 178
4.099000	Deponent Verbs	180
20110	Irregular Verbs.—Possě, Vellě, Nollě, Mallě	182
	Irregular Verbs, continued.—Ferre, Fiert	185
V 40 50 10	Irregular Verbs, continued.—Ire, Edere	. 189
	Periphrastic Conjugations	191
	Impersonal Verbs	198
	Impersonal Periphrastic	195
	Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions	197
2000	Conjunctions	199
LXXIX.	Subjunctive Mood with ŭt, nē, quō	. 201

Lesson.		
LXXX. Subjunctive with quon		Pagu
tions	unus, quin, and other Co	onjune-
LXXXI Interrogative Sentence		208
LXXXII Conditional Cont	8	205
LXXXII. Conditional Sentencea.	-Subjunctive in Relative	Clau-
ses and with quum.		. 207
LYYYIV Doubles		. 209
LXXXIV. Participles, continued		. 212
LXXXV. Derivation of Nouns		. 215
LXXXVI Derivation of Adjective		. 217
LXXXVII. Derivation of Verbs and	d Adverbe	. 219
LXXXVIII. Composition of Words		. 229
	•	. 424
PARADIG	MS, dec.	
1 Norma Frail.		
 Nouns.—Endings of Genitive Sing Gender 	ular .	. 227
		227
		. 227
- Secretarion		. 228
The position .	ar.	229
Total Declemnon		. 282
7. Fifth Declension .		288
8. Case-Endings of Substantives .		. 288
9. Table of Genders		. 284
10. Adjectives.—First and Second Dec	lension	
11. Third Declension		285
12. Comparison of Adjectives		. 236
13. Numerals		238
14. Substantive Pronouns	• •	. 238
15. Adjective Pronouns		239
16. Verbs.—Essi		239
17. Infinitive Endings		241
18. First Conjugation .		. 248
19. Second Conjugation	• • •	243
20. Third Conjugation	• •	245
21. Fourth Conjugation		247
22. Formation of Second Root	• • •	. 250
23. Deponent Verbs	•	252
24. Irregular Verbs		. 252
25. Periphrastic Conjugations	•.	252
to Impersonal Verbs		. 257
TIMPOTROUBIL A GLDS		ark

200

CONTENTS. X1 Pagu. າງເພາດ-SYNTAX. 208 Fago 205 Introduction 259 Clau-. 207 CHAPTER L 209 . 212 Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate. 215 Section I. Subject 260 . 217 " IL Predicate 260 219 . 222 CHAPTER IL Subordinate Elements .- Modifiers. Section L. Use of Modifiers . 262 " II. Modifiers of Nouns . 262 " III. Modifiers of Adjectives . 227 263 . 227 * IV. Modifiers of Verbs . . 264 227 § L Objects 265 . 228 § II. Adverbial Modifiers 268 229 V. Modifiers of Adverbs 271 . 232 288 CHAPTER IIL . 288 Use of Moods, Participles, Gerunds, and Supincs 271 . 284 285 275 DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM . . 236 CAUTIONS . . 277 238 LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 279 . 238 ENGLISH-LATIN VOSABULARY 291 239 . . 289 241 . 248

EXPLANATIONS.

The small numerals above the line in the Exercises refer to Differences of Idiom, page 275; the small letters to Cautions, page 277.

tl

a

-n

C

g

The numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to articles in the body of the work.

In the Exercises, words connected by hyphens are to be rendered into Latin by a single word; as, natural-to-man, humanus; it-is, est, &co.

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

The two Methods, the Continental and the English, which at present prevail in the pronunciation of Latin, differ from each other chiefly in the sounds of the vowels; we shall accordingly first state the settled principles in which they agree (as accent, quantity, &c.), and then present the vowel sounds of each separately, hoping, however, that, in this country, the Continental Method will soon commend itself to general favor. With the important merit of uniform consistency, it is, at the same time, the only pronunciation intelligible on the Continent of Europe, the very place where the American scholar will most need his Latin as a medium of communication.

Terenous

body of

ed into

L LETTERS.

The Latin Language has six characters, or letters, representing vowel sounds, and nineteen representing consonant sounds.

- REM. 1. The vowel sounds are a, e, i, o, u, and y; the consonants are the same as in English, with the omission of w, which is not used in Latin.
- Rem. 2. Two vowels sometimes unite in sound, and form a diphthong, as in English; e. g., & in Casar.
- Rem. 3. X and z* are called double consonants · l, m, n, and r, liquids, and the other consonants, with the exception of h and s, mutes.

^{*} X is equivalent to cs or gs, and z to ds.

IL SYLLABLES.

In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, more, vice, acute, and persuade, are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, mo-re, vi-ce, a-cu-te, per-sua-de.

a

lo

a

III. QUANTITY.

Syllables are, in quantity or length, either long, short, or common (i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short).

1. A syllable is long in quantity:

1) When it contains a diphthong, as the first syllable of cædo.

2) When its vowel is followed by j, x, z, or any two consonants, except a mute followed by a liquid; as the second syllables of erexit and magister.

2. A syllable is *short*, when its vowel is followed by another vowel, or a diphthong, as the second syllable of *indies*.

Rem. The letter h does not affect the quantity of the preceding vowel

The quantity of syllables, when not determined by these rules, will be indicated in the vocabularies (and, in some instances, in the exercises) by the dash — when long, by the curve — when short, and by the two together — when common.

IV. ACCENTUATION.

1. The primary (or principal) accent, or stress of voice, is placed:

1) In words of two syllables, always on the first; as, ho'mo, a man.

2) In words of more than two syllables, on the *penult* (the last syllable but one), if that is *long* in quantity; otherwise on the *antepenult* (the last syllable but two); as, $r\bar{a}d\bar{i}c\bar{i}s$, $con's\bar{u}l\bar{i}s$.

2. An additional accent is placed on each second syllable preceding the primary accent; as, demonstratur.

V SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

I. THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.*

1. The Sounds of the Vowels.

The Continental sounds of the vowels are as follows --

8	ı									ä in	father;	e. g.,	ārīs.
									11.	\bar{a} in	made;	e. g.,	ēdĭt.
•	3	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	l 2.	\check{e} in	made; met;	e. g.,	ămĕt.
j										\bar{e} in	me;		
								,	51.	\bar{o} in	no; nor;	e. g.,	ōră.
•	,	•	•	4	*	•	•	•	2.	ŏ in	nor;	e. g.,	ămŏr.
1	1	٠								ô in	do;	e. g.,	ūnă.
7	y		•							ē in	me;	e. g.,	nymphä
-													

REM. Y is used only in words derived from the Greek.

These sounds are uniformly the same in all situations, except as modified by quantity and accent, (III. and IV.)

2. The Sounds of the Diphthongs.

æ and æ . . . ā in made; e.g., ætās, cœlum. au . . . ou in out; e.g., aurum.

REM. The vowels in ei and eu are generally pronounced separately.

short,

has as

; thus

e pro-

h, but

ables:

llable

y two s the

d b**y** lable

vowel s, will rcises)

e two

s of

^{*} For the Continental Pronunciation the editor is indebted to the kindness of Mr. George W. Greene, Instructor in Modern Languages in Brown Umversity."

3. The Sounds of the Consonants.

The pronunciation of the consonants is nearly the same as in English, though it varies somewhat in different countries.

dón

by

bel

VO1

BOU

has

mi

08,

wh

gle

irá

 D_{ℓ}

an

II. THE ENGLISH METHOD.

1. The Sounds of the Vowels *

In the English method, the vowels generally have the long or short English sounds: the length of the sound, however, is not dependent upon the quantity of the vowel, but must be determined by its situation or accent

(a) In all monosyllables, vowels have

1) The long sound if at the end of the word; as, si, re.

2) The short sound if followed by a consonant; as, sit, rem; except post, monosyllables in es, and plural cases in os; as, hos (a plural case).

(b) In an accented penult, vowels have

1) The long sound before a vowel, diphthong, single consonant, or a mute followed by l, r, or h; as, deus pater, patres; except tibi and sibi.

2) The short sound before a double consonant, or any two single consonants except a mute followed by

l, r, or h; as, bellum, rexit.

(c) In any accented syllable except the penult, vowels

1) The long sound before a vowel or diphthong; as e in éadem.

^{*} The system of vowel sounds here presented is the same as that given in Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and, like that, is based upon Walker's Key to the Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names. The rules, however, unlike those of Andrews and Stoddard, are so prepared as to show the sounds of the vowels, in all their various situations, independently of the division of words into syllables. This, it is hoped, will facilitate their application.

early the

g or short dent upon tuation or

s, si, re. ant; as, plural

single.

ant, or ved by

vowels

ıg; as

as that is based. Proper ard, are various This, it 2) The short sound before a consonant, as o in dóminus: except,

a) U before a single consonant, or a mute followed by r or h (and perhaps l); as, Púnicus, salúbritas.

b) A, e, and o, before a single consonant (or a mute before l, r, or h), followed by e or i before another vowel; as, dôceo, ácria.

(d) In all unaccented syllables, vowels have the short

sound; as, cantámus, vigilat: except,

1) Final a in words of more than one syllable. This has the sound of ah, as in the word America; e. g., musa (musah).

2) Final syllables in i (except tibi and sibi), es, and os, in plural cases; as, hómini, dies, illos (a plural case).

3) The first syllable of words accented on the second, when the first either begins with an *i* followed by a single consonant, or contains *i* before a vowel; as, diébus, irátus.

Rem. E, o, and u, unaccented before a vowel, diphthong, a single consonant, or a mute followed by l, r, or h, are not quite as short in sound as the other vowels in the same situations.

2. The Sounds of the Diphthongs.

Æ and œ, like e in the same situation; e. g., Cæsar, Daédalus.

Au, as in the English, author; e.g., aurum.

Eu, " neuter; e. g., neuter (both Eng. and Latin).

Ei, as in the English, height; e. g., dein. Oi, "coin; e. g., proin.

REM. 1. The vowels in ei and oi are generally pronounced separately.

Rem. 2. A few other combinations seem sometimes to be used to

diphthongs. U is always the first element of these combinations, and has then the sound of w; as, suade — swade: except, Ui in huic, and cui, which has the sound of long i.

3. The Sounds of the Consonants.

The consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; c and g, however, are soft before e, i, and y, and the diphthongs x and x, and hard in other situations: ch is always hard, like k; as, ch arta (k artah).

 $\mathbf{f}c$

it tl (t a: tl

t

ade: except,

in Engnd y, and tuations:

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

LESSON I.

Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate.

1. In Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.

2. These parts of speech, either singly or combined, form propositions or sentences; as, ămās, thou lovest;

puer lūdit, the boy plays.

3. Every proposition, however simple, consists of two parts: (1.) the subject, or the person or thing of which it speaks; and, (2.) the predicate, or that which is said of the subject: thus, in the proposition, puer lūdīt, puer (the boy) is the subject of which the proposition speaks, and lūdīt (plays) is the predicate which is affirmed of the subject.

4. In Latin the subject is often omitted, because the form of the predicate shows what subject is meant; thus the proposition $\check{a}m\bar{a}s$, thou lovest, consists in Latin of a single word, because the ending $\bar{a}s$, of $\check{a}m\bar{a}s$, shows (as we shall see by and by) that the subject cannot be

I, he, or they, but must be thou.

5. When a proposition thus consists of a single word, that word is always a verb; e.g., amat, he loves.

or

sle

οt

it

ăı

6. The analysis of a proposition consists in separating it into its elements.

Example 1.—Proposition, Puer (the boy) lūdīt (plays). Puer (the boy) is the subject, because it is that of which the proposition speaks (3). Lūdīt (plays) is the predicate, because it is that which is said of the subject (3).

EXAMPLE 2.—Proposition, Amās (thou lovest).

Amās is the predicate, because it is that which is said of the subject. Thou, the subject in English, is omitted in Latin, because the ending $\bar{a}s$, of the predicate $\bar{a}m\bar{a}s$, fully implies it.

7. Exercise in Analysis.*

Puellă (the girl) cantăt (sings). Puĕr (the boy) lūdĕt (will play). Pătĕr (the father) vĭdēbĭt (will see). Mātĕr (the mother) rīdēbăt (was laughing). Currēbăt (he was running). Cantābĭt (he will sing). Lūdēbāt (he was playing). Arābāt (he was ploughing).

LESSON II.

Verbs.—First Conjugation.

8. A VERB expresses existence, condition, or action (generally the existence, condition, or action of some person

^{*} These propositions are to be analyzed according to the examples just given. The object is twofold: first, to fix definitely the distinction between subject and predicate; and, secondly, to show the learner that when the subject is a personal pronoun (English, I, thou, he, &c.), it is generally omitted in Latin. The use of the pronoun to express emphasis or contrast will be considered in another place.

n separat

lĭt (plays).

s that of ys) is the the sub-

est).

ch is said s omitted

ate *ămās*,

(the boy) will see). Currēbăt

Currēbăt lēbăt (he

tion (geperson

examples listinction orner that &c.), it is comphasis or thing, called its subject): as, est, he is; dormit, he sleeps (is sleeping, or is asleep); ămăt, he loves.

9. When a verb expresses simply its meaning, without reference to any person or thing, as ămārē, to love, it is said to be in the *Infinitive Mood*.

10. When a verb expresses its meaning in the form of an assertion or question, referring to its subject, as ămăt, he loves, it is said to be in the Indicative Mood.*

11. A verb may represent its subject,

1) As acting in present time; as, ămăt, he loves. It is then said to be in the Present Tense.

2) As acting in past time; as, ămābăt, he was loving. It is then said to be in the Imperfect Tense.

3) As acting in future time (i. e., about to act); as, $\breve{a}m\breve{a}b\breve{i}t$, he will love. It is then said to be in the Future Tense.*

12. A verb may represent its subject,

1) As speaking of himself; as, amo, I love, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the First Person.

2) As spoken to; as, $\check{a}m\bar{a}s$, thou lovest, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the Second Person.

3) As spoken of; as, ămăt, he loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the Third Person.

13. A verb may represent its subject,

1) As consisting of only one person or thing; as, ămăt, he, she, or it loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the Singular Number.

^{*} The other moods and tenses will be noticed in another place.

1

5.

9.

bi

pa

not Lause wh

2) As consisting of more than one person or thing; as, amant, they love; and then both subject and verb are said to be in the Plural Number.

14. Every verb consists of two parts, viz.:

- 1) The Root, or that part of the verb which remains unchanged throughout the various moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; as, am in amare, amo, amat, and amabit.
- 2) The Endings which are added to this root, to form the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; thus, in the forms just noticed—viz., ămārē, ămō, ămāt, and ămābīt—the endings are, ārē, ŏ, ăt, and ābīt.

15. Some verbs have the *infinitive* in $\bar{a}r\check{e}$; as, $\check{a}m$ - $\bar{a}r\check{e}$, to love. These are said to be of

The First Conjugation.

16. In verbs of this conjugation,

1) The root is found by dropping the infinitive ending ārĕ; as, ămārĕ; root, ăm.

2) The third persons singular of the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are formed by adding to this root the following endings:

Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
ăt,	ābăt,	ābĭt.
	DADADICA	

	Amā	rĕ,	to l	love: root, $\breve{a}m$.	
Imperfect.		66	she,	or it loves (or, is loving). " was loving. " will love (will be loving)).

or thing;
h subject
l Number.

which revarious sons; as,

is root, to l persons ; z., ăm*ārĕ*, ure, *ārĕ*, ŏ,

; as, *ăm*-

infinitive

esent, imcative are following

oving).

17. VOCABULARY.

Latin,	Meaning.	Key-words.
Amārĕ,	to love	(amorous).
Arārě,	to plough	(arable).
Cantare,	to sing	(canto).
Lăborarĕ,	to labor	(labor).
Vigilare,	to watch	(vigilant).

18. Exercise.

Labōrat.† 2. Cantat. 3. Arat. 4. Arābat.
 Amābat. 6. Vigilābat. 7. Vigilābit. 8. Cantābit.
 Laborābit. 10. Vigilat. 11. Laborābat. 12. Amābit. 13. Amat. 14. Cantābat. 15. Arābit.

LESSON III.

First Conjugation—continued.

19. VOCABULARY.

Ambŭlārě,	to walk	(ambulatory).
Jūrārĕ,	to swear.	
Pugnarě,	to fight	(pugnacious).
Saltārĕ,	to dance.	
Spērārě,	to hope.	
Vŏcārĕ,	to call	(vocation).

^{*} These Key-words, derived from the Latin, are introduced partly as a key or help to the learner, in fixing the meaning of the Latin, and partly as specimens of English derivatives of Latin origin.

[†] The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either he, she, or it. The ending, at, shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender (see Paradigm). When the subject is thus omitted in Latin, we can usually determine from the connection which subject to use, just as in English we determine the meaning of the pronoun they, which may represent either things or persons, and either males or females. In these exercises the pupil may use he as the subject.

5. vē

Re

17.

20. In English, the tenses, numbers, and persons of verbs are indicated by certain words or signs; as,

Present. Imperfect. Future.

He loves, He was loving, He will love.

In Latin, however, no such signs are used; but their place is supplied by the endings of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs and express the tense, number, and person of the verb by the proper endings; e.g.:

Present. Imperfect. Future.

Eng. He loves, He was loving, He will love.

Lat. Amat, Amābat, Amābit.

21. Exercises.

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Cantat. 3. Ambülat. 4. Ambulābat. 5. Jurābat. 6. Vocābat. 7. Sperābat. 8. Sperābit. 9. Ambulābit. 10. Saltābit. 11. Jurat. 12. Cantābat. 13. Vocat. 14. Laborābat. 15. Jurābit.

(b) 1. He calls. 2. He is ploughing. 3. He hopes. 4. He swears. 5. He is laboring. 6. He was laboring. 7. He was walking. 8. He was dancing. 9. He was singing. 10. He was ploughing. 11. He will plough. 12. He will call. 13. He will swear. 14. He will hope. 15. He will labor. 16. He is walking. 17. He was hoping. 18. He will walk. 19. He dances. 20. He was fighting. 21. He will sing.

LESSON IV.

Verbs.—Second Conjugation.

22. Some Verbs have the infinitive in ērē; as, monere, to advise. These are said to be of

persons of; as,

l love.

the verb.
omit these
rson of the

ire. vill love. ibit.

at. 8. Spe-Jurat. 12.
Jurābit.
He hopes.
as laboring.
9. He was
will plough.
ie will hope.
17. He was
es. 20. He

4. Ambu-

; as, monore,

The Second Conjugation.

23. In verbs of this conjugation,

1) The root is found by dropping the infinitive ending ērē; as, monērē; root, mon.

2) The third persons singular of the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are formed by adding to this root the following endings:

Present. Imperfect. Future. Ett, Ebit.

PARADIGM.

Mŏnēre, to advise: root, mŏn.

Present. Mon-et, he, she, or it advises (is advising). Imperfect. Mon-ebat, " " was advising. Future. Mon-ebit, " " will advise.

24. VOCABULARY.

Dŏcērĕ, to teach (docile). Dŏlērĕ, to grieve (doleful). Flere, to weep. Mănere. to remain. Mŏvērě, to move (move). Nërë, to spin. Respondere, to answer (respond). Rīdērě, te laugh (ridicule). Timere. to fear, to be afraid (timid).

25. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ridet. 2. Docet. 3. Respondet. 4. Dolet.
5. Dolēbat. 6. Nebat. 7. Flebat. 8. Manēbat. 9. Movēbat. 10. Movēbit. 11. Dolēbit. 12. Docēbit. 13. Respondēbit. 14. Ridēbit. 15. Movet. 16. Docēbat.
17. Manēbit. 18. Flet. 19. Ridēbat. 20. Nebit.

10

20

24

28

w

7.

H

H

19

W

m

21. Pugnat. 22. Manet. 23. Pugnābat. 24. Manēbat. 25. Pugnābit. 26. Manēbit. 27. Cantat. Timet. 29. Saltābat. 30. Respondēbat. 31. Ambulābit. 32. Timēbit. 33. Laborat. 34. Movet. 35 Saltābat. 36. Docēbat. 37. Vocābit. 38. Dolēbit.

(b) 1. He remains. 2. He moves. 3. He weeps. 4. He spins. 5. He was spinning. 6. He was laughing. 7. He was teaching. 8. He was grieving. 9. He was answering. 10. He will answer. 11. He will weep. 12. He will remain. 13. He will spin. 14. He is laughing. 15. He was weeping. 16. He will teach. 17. He teaches. 18. He was moving. 19. He will laugh.

20. He dances. 21. He laughs. 22. He was calling. 23. He was weeping. 24. He walks. 25. He answers. 26. He was ploughing. 27. He was laughing. 28. He will sing. 29. He will move.

LESSON V.

Verbs.—Third Conjugation.

26. Some verbs have the infinitive in ěrě; as, rěgěrě, to rule. These are said to be of '

The Third Conjugation.

27. In verbs of this conjugation,

1) The root is found by dropping the infinitive

ending ĕrĕ; as, rĕgĕrĕ; root, rĕg.

2) The third persons singular of the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are formed by adding to this root the following endings:

24. Manēantat. 28. 31. Ambufovet. 35 Dolēbit.

Dolēbit.

weeps. 4.
s laughing.
9. He was
will weep.
He is laughteach. 17.
will laugh.
Ie was calls. 25. He

was laugh-

; as, rĕgĕr**ĕ**,

ne infinitive

present, imindicative are ne following Present. Imperfect. Future.

It, ebat, et.

Paradigm.

Rěgěrě, to rule: root, rěg.

Present. Rěg-it, he, she, or it rules (is ruling).

Imperfect. Rěg-ebăt, " " was ruling.

Future. Rěg-ět, " " will rule.

28. VOCABULARY.

Biběrě,	to drink	(bibber; as, wine-hibber),
Cădĕrĕ,	to fall	(cadence),
Currĕrĕ,	to run	(current).
Discěrě,	to learn	(disciple).
Lĕgĕrĕ,	to read	(legible).
Luděrě,	to play	(ludicrous).
Scrīběrě,	to write	(scribe, scribble).

29. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Ludit. 2. Currit. 3. Discit. 4. Discēbat. 5. Scribēbat. 6. Bibēbat. 7. Bibet. 8. Cadet. 9. Leget. 10. Legit. 11. Currēbat. 12. Scribet. 13. Scribit. 14. Ludēbat. 15. Discet.
- Labörat. 17. Movet. 18. Cadit. 19. Vocābat.
 Ridēbat. 21. Legēbat. 22. Sperat. 23. Dolet.
 Bibit. 25. Jurābat. 26. Flebat. 27. Cadēbat.
 Arābit. 29. Respondēbit. 30. Ludet.
- (b) 1. He writes. 2. He drinks. 3. He falls. 4. He was falling. 5. He was reading. 6. He was playing. 7. He will play. 8. He will run. 9. He will learn. 10. He learns. 11. He was writing. 12. He will read. 13. He is playing. 14. He was running. 15. He will fall.
- 16. He is fighting. 17. He fears. 18. He reads. 19. He was singing. 20. He was spinning. 21. He was learning. 22. He will labor. 23. He will remain. 24. He will write.

8

2

b

I

C

W

B

1

CO

2

si w 3.

al

ea

th

BC

LESSON VI.

Verbs .- Fourth Conjugation.

30. Some verbs have the infinitive in $\bar{\imath}r\bar{e}$; as, aud $\bar{\imath}r\bar{e}$, to hear. These are said to be of

The Fourth Conjugation.

31. In verbs of this conjugation,

1) The root is found by dropping the infinitive ending $\bar{\imath}r\bar{e}$; as, aud $\bar{\imath}r\bar{e}$; root, aud.

2) The third persons singular of the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are formed by adding to this root the following endings.

Present.	Imperfect.	Future
ĭt,	iēbăt,	iĕt.

PARADIGM.

	Audīrĕ, to	he	ar:	root, aud.	
	Aud-ĭt,	he,	she,	or it hears (is hearing).	
t.	Aud-iebăt,	"	44	" was hearing.	

Imperfect. Aud-iebăt, " " was heari Future. Aud-iet, " " will hear.

32. VOCABULARY.

Present.

Audīrē, -	to hear	(audible).
Custodīre,	to guard	(custody).
Dormirě,	to sleep	(dormant).
Erŭdīrē,	to instruct	(erudition).
Scīre,	to know	(science).
Sitīrē,	to thirst.	
Věnīrě,	to come.	

33. Exercises.

(a) 1. Custōdit. 2. Erŭdit. 3. Sitit. 4. Sitiēbat.
5. Veniēbat. 6. Sciēbat. 7. Sciet. 8. Audiet. 9. Dormiet. 10. Dormit. 11. Erudiēbat. 12. Custodiet.
13. Venit. 14. Audiēbat. 15. Erudiet.

as, audīrē,

e infinitive

sent, imperare formed g endings

nearing). ng.

lible).
stody).
mant).
dition).
ence).

4. Sitiēbat. Audiet. 9. . Custodiet. 16. Ambŭlat. 17. Docet. 18. Currit. 19. Audit 20. Cantābat. 21. Ridēbat. 22. Ludēbat. 23. Dormiēbat. 24. Saltābit. 25. Nebit. 26. Discet. 27. Veniet.

(b) 1. He thirsts. 2. He knows. 3. He guards. 4. He was guarding. 5. He was instructing. 6. He was coming. 7. He will come. 8. He will hear. 9. He will thirst. 10. He will know. 11. He hears. 12. He was thirsting. 13. He will instruct. 14. He sleeps. 15. He was hearing. 16. He will guard.

17. He walks. 18. He spins. 19. He runs. 20. He comes. 21. He was dancing. 22. He was teaching. 23. He was writing. 24. He was sleeping. 25. He will sing. 26. He will laugh. 27. He will play. 28. He will instruct. 29. He labors. 30. He was weeping. 31, He will learn. 32. He will sleep.

LESSON VII.

Verbs.—Four Conjugations.—Plural Number.

34. THE Four Conjugations already noticed contain all the regular verbs of the Latin language: hence,

1) In any regular verb, the root is found by dropping the infinitive ending of the conjugation to which it belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows:

Conj. I. Conj. II. Conj. III. Conj. IV. ārĕ, ērĕ, ĕrĕ, Īrĕ.

a) These endings, it must be observed, differ from each other only in the vowel before $r\tilde{e}$, which is called the *characteristic* vowel of the conjugation. The characteristic vowels in the four conjugations are as follows:

Conj. I. Conj. II. Conj. III. Conj. IV. \bar{a}_{j} , \bar{e}_{j} , \bar{c}_{j} , \bar{I}_{i} .

Itms.—These vowels occur so frequently in their respective conjugations, that they are called favorite vowels of the conjugations. The third conjugation has also it as a favorite vowel, as in the present ending, it; e. g., regit, he rules.

2) In any regular verb, the third persons singular of the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are formed by adding to the root the endings of the conjugation to which the verb belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows:

	Pres.	Imperf.	Fut.
Conj. I.	i ăt,	abăt,	abit.
Π.	ĕt,	ēbăt,	ēbĭt.
III.	ĭt,	ēbāt,	ět.
IV.	ĭt,	iēbāt,	iĕt.

35. In any regular verb, the third persons plural, in the tenses already noticed, are formed by simply inserting n before t in the endings of the third singular.

Exc.—If i immediately precedes t, it must be changed, in the fourth conjugation, into iu; as, audit, he hears; audiunt, they hear: and in the other conjugations into u; as, amabit, he will love; amabunt, they will love.

PARADIGM.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
Conj. I. Sing.	Am-ăt,	ăm-abăt,	ăm-ābĭt.
	Am-ant,	ăm-ābant,	ăm-ābunt.
II. \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	Mŏn-ĕt,	mŏn-ēbăt,	mŏn-ēbĭt.
	Mon-ent,	mŏn-ēbant,	mon-ebunt.
III. Sing.	Rěg-ĭt,	rĕg-ēbăt,	rĕg-ĕt.
	Rěg-unt,	rĕg-ēbant,	rĕg-ent.
IV. Sing.	Aud-it,	aud-iebăt,	aud-iĕt.
Pluz.	Aud-iunt,	aud-iebant,	aud-ient.

[00

y. IV.

ective conjugae conjugations, owel, as in the

ons singular e tenses of to the root which the e four con-

Fut. abit. abit. abit. abit. abit.

plural, in simply insingular.

in the fourth r: and in the unt, they will

luture.
1-ābĭt.
1-ābunt.
in-ēbĭt.
in-ēbunt.
2-ēt.
2-ent.

l-ient.

36. Exercises.

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Saltant. 3. Ambulābat. 4. Ambulābant. 5. Arābit. 6. Arābunt. 7. Docet. 8. Docent. 9. Timēbat. 10. Timēbant. 11. Ridēbit. 12. Ridēbunt. 13. Ludit. 14. Ludunt. 15. Scribēbat. 16. Scribēbant. 17. Curret. 18. Current. 19. Dormit. 20. Dormiunt. 21. Veniēbat. 22. Veniēbant. 23. Custodiet. 24. Custodient. 25. Vocant. 26. Dolent. 27. Discunt. 28. Sciunt. 29. Saltābunt. 30. Movēbant. 31. Legēbant. 32. Erudiēbant. 33. Jurābunt. 34. Manēbunt. 35. Cadent. 36. Sitient.

(b) 1. He sings. 2. They sing. 3. He was swearing.
4. They were swearing. 5. He will labor. 6. They will labor. 7. He laughs. 8. They laugh. 9. He was spinning. 10. They were spinning. 11. He will remain. 12. They will remain. 13. He runs. 14. They run. 15. He was playing. 16. They were playing. 17. He will drink. 18. They will drink. 19. He knows. 20. They know. 21. He was guarding. 22. They were guarding. 23. He will hear. 24. They will hear. 25. They walk. 26. They answer. 27. They write. 28. They sleep. 29. They were ploughing. 30. They were teaching. 31. They were learning. 32. They were instructing. 33. They will sing. 34. They will weep. 35. They will read. 36. They will come.

LESSON VIII.

Nouns .- Nominative Case.

37. In Latin, as in English, all names, whether of persons, places, or things, are called *Nouns*; as, *Clesăr*; puer, a boy, &c.

Rms. 1.—Names of individual persons or objects are called propes nouns; as, Casăr; Romă, Rome.

REM. 2.—Names applicable to persons or objects, not as individuals, but as members of a class, are called common nouns; as, equils a horse (a name applicable to all animals of this class).

38. All nouns have gender, number, person, and case.

39. The Gender of a noun is either masculine, feminine, common, or neuter.

40. In Latin, as in English, all nouns denoting objects which have sex, except such names of animals as are applicable to both sexes, are,

1) Masculine, when they denote male beings; as, homines, men; puer, a boy; leones, lions.

2) Feminine, when they denote female beings; as, muliër, a woman; puellă, a girl; leænă, a lioness.

3) Common, when they apply alike to both sexes; as, părens, a parent (either male or female); testis, a witness (either male or female).

41. When gender is employed to denote sex, as in the cases just noticed, it is called natural gender.

42. In nouns denoting objects without sex (neuter in English), and in most names applicable to animals of both sexes, the gender in Latin is entirely independent of sex, and is accordingly called grammatical gender.

Some of these nouns are grammatically masculine; some, grammatically feminine; and some, grammatically neuter.

43. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined partly by their signification, but principally by their endings.

44. The general rules for ascertaining the grammatical gender of nouns, independently of their endings, are:

called proper

ns individuals, ns ; as, ĕquüs es).

, and case. cline, femi-

noting obanimals as

eings; as, ions.

le beings; ; leænă, a

oth sexes; r *female*); e).

sex, as in der.

ex (neuter o animals rely indeammatical

nasculine ; grammati-

etermined by their

grammatiendings, 1) Most names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine; as, Rhēnus, the Rhine; auster, the south wind; Aprīlis, April.

2) Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine; as Ægyptŭs, Egypt; Rōmā, Rome; Dēlŏs, name of an island; laurus, the laurel-tree.

3) Indeclinable nouns,* and clauses used as nouns, are neuter; as, fās, right; nihīl, nothing.

Gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

45. The Numbers and Persons are the same in Latin as in English. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; and the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one; and the plural, more than one.

46. The Cases of Latin nouns are six in number, viz.: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.

47. The case of a noun is indicated by its ending; and the formation of its several cases is called *Declension*.

48. The Nominative Case corresponds to the nominative in English, both in name and use; e. g.,

Puer lūdīt, the boy plays.

49. Rule of Syntax.†—The subject of a finite (i. e. not infinitive) verb is put in the nominative.

REM. 1.—Thus, in the example, puër is in the nominative by this rule. REM. 2.—The subject stands before the verb, as in English.

^{*} Such as have but one form for all cases and both numbers.

[†] Rules for the government and agreement of words are called *Rules* of Syntax.

50. Rule of Syntax.—A finite verb must agree with its subject in number and person.

Rem.—Thus, in the above example, ladit is in the third person singular, to agree with its subject puer.

Determine which of the nouns in the following Vocabularies have natural gender, and which grammatical, and apply rules.

51. VOCABULARY.*

Caesăr, n.	Caesar, a celebrated Roman	n gene r al.
Fīliŭs, m.	son	(filial).
Păter, m.	father	
Puellă, f.	girl.	(paternal).
Puĕr, m.	boy	(
Vincere,	to conquer,	(puerile). (vincib le).

52. Exercises

- (a) 1. Pater† docet. 2. Puer ludit. 3. Filius discēbat. 4. Caesar vincēbat. 5. Puer veniet. 6. Puella cantābat. 7. Pater scribēbat.
- (b) 1. The girl will learn. 2. The father will conquer. 3. The boy dances. 4. The son was learning. 5. The father was ploughing. 6. The boy was playing. 7. The girl will sing. 8. Caesar was coming.

^{*} Gender is indicated in the Vocabularies by m. for masculine, f. for feminine, c. for common, and n. for neuter.

[†] As the Latin has no article, a noun may be translated, (1) without the article; as, pătër, father: (2) with the indefinite article; as, pătër, a father: (3) with the definite article; as, pătër, the father.

ust agree

person singu-

Vocabularies les,

filial), paternal).

ouerile). incib**le**).

us discē-3. Puella

will conlearning, ras playning.

uline, f. for

(1) without as, pătër, a

LESSON IX.

Nouns .- Nominative Case -- Continued.

53. VOCABULARY.*

Aquă, f.	water	(aqueous).
Aquilă, f.	eagle	(aquiline).
Avis, f.	bird.	
Cănis, c.	dog	(canine).
Equus, m.	horse	(equestrian).
Filiă, f.	daughter	(filial).
Fluĕrĕ,	to flow	(fluent).
Hostis, c	enemy	(hostile).
Impěrarě	to command	(imperative).
Măgistěr,	master, teacher	(magisterial).
Mater,	mother	(maternal).
Mors, f.	death	(mortal).
Nubes, f.	cloud.	•
Rex,	king	(regal).
Servus, m.	slave	(servant).
Vŏlārĕ,	to fly	(volatile).

54. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mors veniet. 2. Aquila volat. 3. Hostis veniēbat. 4. Nubes movet. 5. Aqua fluit. 6. Canis ludēbat. 7. Equus curret. 8. Magister erudiēbat. 9. Rex imperābat.

10. Avis volat. 11. Volant. 12. Servus pugnābit. 13. Pugnābant. 14. Puer timēbat. 15. Timēbant. 16. Puella discēbat. 17. Discēbant. 18. Filia dormiēbat. 19. Dormiēbant.

(b) 1. The bird will fly. 2. The eagle was flying. 3. The king will come. 4. The mother will teach. 5. The daughter will learn. 6. The dog will run. 7. The

^{*} In this and the following Vocabularies, whenever the gender of a noun is not marked, the pupil is expected to determine it by the rules already given.

slave will swear. 8. Caesar was coming. 9. The slave is ploughing.

10. They were ploughing. 11. The king will conquer. 12. They are conquering. 13. The dog will come. 14. They were coming. 15. The girl is weeping. 16. They will weep. 17. The boy is singing. 18. They will laugh.

LESSON X.

Nouns .- Vocative Case.

55. THE same form* of the noun which is called the nominative, when spoken of, is called the vocative, when spoken to. This corresponds to the nominative independent in English; e. g.

Voc. Nom.
Păter, puer cădet.
Father (or, O father), the boy will fall.

Rem.—In very short sentences, like the above, the vocative may be placed either at the beginning or close; in other cases, however, it is generally preceded by one or more words in the sentence.

56. Rule of Syntax.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative.

Rem.—The interjection O is sometimes used before the name address ed, both in Latin and English.

57. VOCABULARY.

Agricolă,	husbandman	(agriculture).
Balbus,	Balbus, a man's name.	
Caiŭs,	Caius, a man's name.	
Discipulus,	pupil	(disciple).
Mordere,	to bite.	(www.pie).

^{*} A single exception will be noticed in another place.

(peccant).

The slave

will cone dog will rl is weeps singing

called the tive, when independ.

II. tive may be ses, however.

sentence. person or

ame address

ilture).

e).

ICO.

58.7

O, used in direct address. O (intery.), Peccare. to sin

Rēgīnă, queen. sister. Sŏrŏr.

58. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puer jurat. 2. O mater, puer jurat. 3. Puer ludēbat. 4. Puer ludēbat, magister. 5. Rex saltābat. 6. O regina, rex saltābat. 7. Mater dolēbit. 8. Soror, mater dolēbit. 9. Canis mordēbit. 10. O puer, canis mordēbit.

11. Mors veniet. 12. Balbus jurābat. 13. Jurābunt. 14. Agricola arābit. 15. Arant. 16. Servus peccat. 18. Magister erudiet. 19. Hostis 17. Peccabant. vincet. 20. Vincebant. 21. Scient. 22. Discebant. 23. Puella legēbat. 24. Rex imperābat. 25. Nubes movet. 26. Pugnābant. 27. Vincunt.

(b) 1. The king will conquer. 2. O queen, the king will conquer. 3. The slave was weeping. 4. Father, the slave was weeping. 5. The boy is swearing (swears). 6. Master, the boy is swearing (swears). 7. The dog will bite. 8. Brother, the dog will bite. 9. They will dance. 10. Mother, they will dance. 11. The master will hear. 12. Sister, the master will hear. 13. The horse will run. 14. Daughter, the horse will run. 15. Death will come. 16. Death will come, O king.

17. Caius is ploughing. 18. They will plough. 19. Balbus was fighting. 20. They are fighting. 21. The girl was writing. 22. They will learn. 23. The pupil will learn. 24. The master is teaching. 25. The queen is weeping. 26. They will weep. 27. They were reading. 28. The eagle was flying. 29. The king will command. 30. The mother will teach. 31. The king is conquering. 32. The father will come.

LESSON XL

Nouns.—Apposition.—Modified Subject.

59. THE subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting the same person or thing connected with it to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by the limiting noun; e. g.

Subject not modified.

Subject modified.

Lătīnus rēgnābāt.
 Latinus was reigning.
 Latinus the king was reigning.

REM. 1.—Rex, in the above example, limits Latinus; i. e. it shows that the predicate regnabat is not affirmed of every one who may have borne the name Latinus, but only of Latinus the king. Rex is in the same case as the subject, i. e. nominative, and is said to be in apposition with it.

REM. 2.—The noun in apposition is generally placed after the noun which it limits, as in the above example; if, however, it is emphatic, it is placed before that noun.

60. VOCABULARY.

Aurum,	gold.	
Crescěrě,	to grow, to wax (as moon)	(crescent).
Faustulus,	Faustulus, an Italian shepherd.	
Lătinus,	Latinus, a king of Latium.	
Lāvīniā,	Lavinia, daughter of Latinus.	
Lūnă,	moon	(lunar).
Micare,	to glitter, to shine.	
Mīlĕs,	soldier	(military).
Nŭmă,	Numa, second king of Rome.	3)1
Pastor,	shepherd	(pastor, pastoral).

Rēgnārē, Tulliā,

to reign Tullia.

(regnant, reign).

Victoriă,

a queen of Rome.

Victoria, queen of Englana.

61. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus dormiēbat. 2. Balbus servus dormit. 3. Latīnus regnābat. 4. Latīnus rex vincēbat. 5. Tullia cantābat. 6. Tullia regīna saltābit. 7. Caius pastor cantābit.

8. Luna crescit. 9. Aurum micat. 10. Lavinia regīna regnābat. 11. Currēbant. 12. Current. 13. Pastor ridēbit. 14. Ridēbant. 15. Canis mordēbit. 16. Mordēbunt. 17. Puella nebit. 18. Nebunt.

(b) 1. Numa was reigning. 2. King Numa was reigning. 3. Faustulus a shepherd was singing. 4. Queen Victoria was reigning.

5. The boy was ploughing. 6. They were playing.
7. They will write. 8. The queen was weeping. 9.
They are weeping. 10. The soldier will fight. 11.
The girl will learn. 12. The daughter is spinning.
13. They will spin. 14. The boy will fight. 15. They will fight.

LESSON XII.

Nouns .- Genitive Case .- Modified Subject.

62. Nouns in Latin are declined in five different ways, and are accordingly divided into five classes, called *Declensions*, distinguished from each other by the following

ect.

ave a noun d with it to is then said

băt. as reigning

d

i e. it shows one who may the king. Rez and is said to

after the noun r, it is *empha*-

ent).

ary).

r, pastoral).

GENTTIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. L	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	I,	Ys,	ūs,	el.*

EXAMPLES.

4	Nominative.	Genitive.
Dec. 1	Musă, a muse,	mūsae, of a muse.
Ľ	Servus, a slave,	servi, of a slave.
III.	Honor, an honor,	honoris, of an honor.
IV.	Fructus, a fruit,	fructus, of a fruit.
v.	Dies, a day,	diet, of a day.

REM.—The genitive endings are usually added to the word after the ending of the nominative is dropped; but, as this is not always the case, it becomes necessary, in order to decline a noun correctly, to know both the nominative and the genitive: accordingly, both these forms are given in the Vocabularies.

63. The Genitive Case expresses possession, and the various relations denoted by the preposition of, and accordingly corresponds both to the English Possessive, and the English Objective with of; as, regis corona, the king's crown (or the crown of the king); amor gloriae, the love of glory.

64. The subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting a different person or thing connected with it, to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be modified by such noun; e. g.

Subject not modified.

Subject modified.

Fīliŭs rēgnābĭt.
 Rēgĭs fīliŭs rēgnābĭt.
 The son will reign.

The son of the king will reign.

REM.—The genitive rēgis (of the king), in the above example, modifies fīliūs (the son); i. e. it shows that the predicate rēgnabit

[◆] In this ending e is long except in spĕī, fǐdēī, and rēī

(will reign) is not affirmed of every son, but only of the son of

Dec. V.

a) In the example, the limiting genitive stands before the noun which it limits. This seems to be the more common order, when no *emphasis* is intended.

though we often find it reversed.

b) If the noun which is limited by the genitive is emphatic, or is a monosyllable, it generally stands before the genitive; e. g.

Cĭcĕrö, pătĕr pătriae.
 Cicero, the father of (his) country.

2. Lex nātūrae.

The law of nature.

REM.—In the first example, pătër is emphatic, and in the second, lex is a monosyllable; they accordingly stand before their genitives.

65. RULE OF SYNTAX,—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g. Lăfīnus rec, Latinus the king (59, Rem. 1).

2) In the *genitive*, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g. Rēgis fīliūs, the son of the king.

66. VOCABULARY.*

Amīcus,	- 46	ăgricolae, ămici,	husbandman friend	(ag iculture), (amicable).
Balbus, Caius,		Balbī, Caiī,	Balbus, a man's name.	
Cănis,	St.	cănis,	dog	(canine).
Filia,	* 46.	filiae,	daughter.	(

^{*} The genitive is given in the Vocabulary; and the pupil may determine from the genitive ending to which declension the noun belongs.

use. e. honor. uit.

word after the is not always noun correctly, ordingly, both

n, and the of, and ac-Possessive, corona, the nor gloriae,

with it, to then said

ībīt. will reign. ample, modicate *rēgnabī*t

d rëī

Filius,	Gen. filii,	son	(filial).
Frater,	" fratris,	brother	(fraternal)
Lătinăs,	" Latini,	Latinua.	Tracernati
	,	a king of Lati	1699.
Mīlěs,	" mīlītīs,	soldier	(military).
Pătěr,	" pătris,	father	(paternal).
Puĕr,	" puěri,	boy	(puerile).
Regină,	" regmae,		(pacisso):
Rex,	" regis,	king	(regal).
Servüs,	Bervī,	alave	(servant).
Tulliă,	" Tulliae,	Tullia,	(30, 00,00).
	•	a queen of Ro	me.

67. Exercises.

(a) 1. Servus dormit. 2. Balbi servus dormiet. 3. Filius ludit. 4. Regis filius ludēbat. 5. Regīnae pater docēbat. 6. Filia ridēbat. 7. Filia regīnae ridēbat. 8. Amīcus regis cadet.

9. Balbus servus veniēbat. 10. Balbi servus dormit. 11. Pastor cantābit. 12. Canis pastōris mordēbit. 13. Mordēbunt. 14. Filia pastōris nebit. 15. Regis amīcus timēbit. 16. Caius, regis amīcus, timēbit. 17. Tullia, regis filia, cantābat.

(b) 1. The brother will conquer. 2. The king will conquer. 3. The brother of the king will conquer. 4. The daughter of the king is singing. 5. The queen will read. 6. The daughter of the queen will read. 7. The father of Balbus was laughing.

8. The shepherd's dog (the dog of the shepherd) will bite. 9. The boy's dog will bite. 10. The husbandman's dog will play. 11. The soldier will fight. 12. The son of the soldier will fight. 13. Latinus the king was conquering. 14. The shepherd's daughter (the daughter of the shepherd) is spinning.

ilial). raternal)

ilitery).

uternal).

uerile).

gal).

rvant).

.

Nouns .- Accusative Case .- Direct Object of Predicate.

LESSON XIII.

- 68. Every noun consists of two distinct parts, viz:-
 - 1) The Root, or that part which remains unchanged throughout the various cases of both numbers; as mūs in mūsă, mūsae, and mūsām.
 - 2) The *Endings*, which are added to the root to form these cases; thus, in the forms just noticed, viz., mūsā, mūsae, and mūsām, the endings are ā, ae, and ām.
- 69. In any noun, of whatever declension,
 - 1) The root may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular (62); as, mūsā, Gen. mūsae; root, mūs: servūs, Gen. servī; root, serv: hŏnŏr, Gen. hŏnōrš; root, hŏnōr, &c.
 - 2) Any case may be formed (with a few exceptions) by adding to this root the proper ending.
- 70. 1) The Accusative Singular of neuter nouns is the same as the Nominative; e. g., Nom. sceptrum, a sceptre; Accus, sceptrum.
 - 2) The Accusative Singular of masculine and feminine nouns is formed from the root, by adding one* of the following

ACCUSATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. IL.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ăm,	ŭm,	ĕm,	ŭm,	ĕm.

[♣] If the noun is of the first declension, the learner will, of course, add the ending given for the first declension; if of the second, the ending given for the second; and so on.

rmiet. 8.

e ridebat.

us dormit. ēbit. 13. gis amīcus 17. Tullia.

king will quer. 4. he queen will read.

herd) will husbandght. 12. the king hter (the

EXAMPLES.

	Genitive.	Root.	Ending.	Accusative.
Dec. I.	Masae, of a muse;	müs	-ăm:	mūsam, a muse.
				servum, a slave.
III.	Honoris, of an honor;	hŏnō	r-ĕm:	honorem. an honor
IV	Fructus, of a fruit;	fruct	-ŭm:	fructim, a fruit.
V.		di		diěm, a day.

71. The accusative case corresponds very nearly to the English objective, and is used after transitive verbs and certain prepositions.

72. When a verb represents its subject as acting upon some other person or thing, it is said to be transitive; and the person or thing upon which the action is exerted, is called its direct object; e. g.

Servius impērium administrat. (Servius the government administers.) Servius administers the government.

73. In English the object is placed after the verb; thus, government is placed after administers; but in Latin the object precedes the verb; thus, imperium precedes administrat.

74. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The Direct Object of an action is put in the accusative.

75. VOCABULARY.

Aedificare,		to build	(edifice).
Dies,	Gen. dieī,	day.	(august).
Dominus,	" domini,	master, as owner	(domineer),
Epistŏlă,	epistŏlae, f.	letter	(epistle).
Laudarě,		to praise	(laud).
Monstrare,		to show.	(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
Mors,	" mortis, f.	death	(mortal).

787

a fruit. lay.

nearly to sitive verbs

as acting to be tranthe action

the verb; t in Latin precedes

ect of an

(edifice).

(domineer), (epistle). (laud).

(mortal).

10.1	7	OUND.—ACC	UDAIITE VADE:	,
Maras,	Gen.	müri, m.	wall	(mural).
Occiděrě,			to kill.	
Puellă,	66	puellae,	girl.	
Senatus,		sĕnātūs, m.	senate	(senate)
Spērarě,			to hope for.	
Terrere,			to terrify.	
Timērě,			to fear	(timid).
Viă,	"	viae, f.	way, road.	
Viderĕ,			to see.	
Vītārē,			to shun.	

76. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius puellam laudat. 2. Puer murum aedificābat. 3. Rex puĕrum ridet. 4. Puer mortem vitat.
5. Puella diem sperābat. 6. Puella viam monstrābit.
7. Servus domĭnum occīdit.

8. Puella puĕrum laudat. 9. Rex senātum timet. 10. Puer canem timēbit. 11. Epistŏlam scribit. 12. Puer canem occidēbat. 13. Mortem vitant. 14. Mortem timent. 15. Balbus servus domĭnum timēbit. 16. Balbum servum docent. 17. Balbi filius puĕrum laudābat.

(b) 1. The boy will show the road. 2. Balbus is building a wall. 3. Caius was praising the boy. 4. The slave is showing the way. 5. The king hopes for the day. 6. The girl will shun the dog.

7. The dog will bite the girl. 8. Father is writing a letter. 9. The father will praise the daughter. 10. They are building a wall. 11. They are killing the slave. 12. The king's son will play. 13. The king fears death. 14. The death of the father will terrify the son.

LESSON XIV.

Nouns.—Accusative, continued.—Adverbial Modifiers.

77. Rule of Syntax.—Certain qualifying words, called adverbs, are often connected with verbs, merely to modify their meaning; e. g.,

Mīles fortīter pūgnat.
 Mīles non pūgnat.
 (The soldier bravely fights.)
 The soldier fights bravely.
 The soldier does not fight.

REM.—In these examples, fortiter (bravely) and non (not) are adverbe modifying pagnat. In Latin the adverb generally precedes the verb, as in these instances.

78. VOCABULARY.*

Anguis, anguis, c.	snake, serpent.	
Christianus, I, m.	Christian	(Christian).
Fortiter,	bravely.	(Om istium).
Lex, legis, f.	law	(legal).
Mater, matris,	mother	(maternal).
Negligere,	to disregard	(maternat), (neglect),
Non,	not.	(negrect).
Pastor, pastoris,	shepherd	(manton)
Pěconia, ae, f.	money	(pastor).
Servius, I,	Servius, a man's name.	(pecuniary).
Vox, vocis, f.	voice	(vocal).

79. Exercises.

(a) 1. Servius pugnat. 2. Servius fortiter pugnat. 3. Mors Christianum non† terret. 4. Agricola anguem timebit. 5. Agricola anguem non timebit. 6. Pater

^{*} In this and the following Vocabularies, either the genitive or its ending is given immediately after each substantive.

[†] In translating non before a verb, place 'not' after the English ense-sign; thus, non terret, does not terrify, or is not terrifying.

Modifiers.
ing words,

gnät. : fights.) es not fight.

t) are adverbe precedes the

ristian).

al). ternal). lect).

tor). uniary).

d).

pugnat.
anguem
6. Pater

nitive or its

he English

filiam audiēbat. 7. Pater filii vocem audiēbat. 8. Mater vocem neglīget. 9. Mater filiae vocem non neglīget.

10. Caius legem negligēbat. 11. Christiānus pecuniam negliget. 12. Pecuniam negligent. 13. Puĕrum docent. 14. Christiānus mortem non timet.

(b) 1. The husbandman will fight. 2. The husbandman will not fight. 3. Servius fears death. 4. Servius does not fear death. 5. The slave hears the voice of (his) master. 6. The boy was killing the dog. 7. The boy was killing the shepherd's dog. 8. The dog will not bite. 9. Servius will avenge the death of the king.

10. They do not fear death. 11. They will fight bravely. 12. Caius is teaching the boy. 13. The daughter of the queen is singing. 14. They did not hear (were not hearing). 15. They will not disregard the law.

LESSON XV.

Nouns .- Dative Case .- Indirect Object of Predicate.

80. The Dative Case in Latin corresponds to the objective with to or for in English; as, mūsā, a muse; Dat. mūsae, to or for a muse.

81. The Dative Singular of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

DATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.	-
ae,	ō,	Ϊ, .	ui,*	ē1.†	

^{*} Neuter nouns of the fourth declension are exceptions, as they have the dative singular like the nominative.

[†] In this ending e is long except in speī, fīdēī, and rēī.

q

EXAMPLES.

	Root. L			Date	ive.	
Dec. I. Musae, of a muse; II. Servi, of a slave; III. Honoris, of honor; IV. Fructus, of fruit; V. Diei, of day;	serv hönör fruct	- ō; - I; - uī;	servē, hŏnērī.	u	u u	an honor. a fruit.

82. The person or thing to or for which any thing is, or is done, is called an indirect object; e. g.,

Balbus puĕrō viam monstrat. (Balbus to the boy the way shows.)
Balbus shows the way to the boy.

Rem.—In the example it will be observed that the indirect object precedes the direct. This is the more common order, though not unfrequently reversed.

83. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Any transitive verb may take the accusative of the direct object and the dative of the indirect object.

84. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārĕ,	to accuse.	
Bellum, I, n.	war.	
Clauděrě,	to shut	(close).
Conděrě,	to found, to build.	(00000):
Dărĕ,*	to give.	
Domus, domus, or domi, f.		(domestic),
Evertěrě,	to pull down, to overthrow,	
Indicere,	to declare (as war).	
Leŏ, leōnĭs, m.	lion.	
Mīles, itis, m. (rarely f.),	139	(military)

^{*} Dare is of the first conjugation, with a short, contrary to the general rule.

for a muse.
" a slave.
" an honor.
" a fruit.
" a day.

y thing is,

indirect object er, though not

verb may e dative of

(close).

(do<mark>mesti</mark>c).

military)

to the gene-

Portă, ae, f.	gate	(portal).
Rěpěrirě,	to find.	((porter).
Romŭlŭs, ī,	Romulus, the founder of Rome.	
Sceptrum, I, n.	sceptre.	•
Urbs. is, f.	city	(urbane)

85. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pastor viam monstrat. 2. Pastor puero viam monstrat. 3. Puer viam monstrabit. 4. Puer pastori viam monstrabit. 5. Servus portam claudet. 6. Servus regi portam claudet.

7. Romŭlus urbem condēbat. 8. Agricŏla anguem repĕrit. 9. Miles agricŏlae domum evertet. 10. Regis sceptrum vidēbant. 11. Milĭti viam monstrant. 12. Leōnem timēbant.

(b) 1. The slave is building a wall. 2. The slave is building a wall for the king. 3. The boy was showing the road. 4. The boy was showing the road to the husbandman. 5. The husbandman is showing the road to the boy. 6. They will declare war against the city.

7. They are founding a city for the queen. 8. They will not disregard the law. 9. They were writing for the king. 10. They will accuse the boy. 11. They were praising the queen. 12. They will praise the queen's daughter. 13. The king will declare war against the senate. 14. The king will give the city to (his) son.

LESSON XVI.

Nouns .- Ablative Case .- Modified Predicate.

- 86. THE Ablative Case in Latin corresponds to the objective with from, by, in, or with in English; as, mūsā, a muse; Abl. mūsā, from a muse, or by, in, or with a muse.**
- 87. The Ablative Singular of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

ABLATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. L	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
.a,	Q,	ĕ,†	ŭ,	ē.

EXAMPLES.

	Genitive.	Root.	Ending	<i>1</i> .	Ab	lati	ve.	
Dec. I.	Musae, of a muse;	mūs	- a; 1	mūsā,	from,	in,	&c.	, a muse.
II.	Servi, of a slave;	serv	-0;	servō,	66	66	"	a slave.
Ш.	Honoris, of honor;	hŏnō	r - ĕ; l	hŏnōrĕ	, 44	66	44	honor.
IV.	Fructus, of fruit;	fruct	- a; f	fructu,	66	66	86	fruit.
V.	Dieī, of day;	di	- ē; d	lie,	66	66		day.

88. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the time of an action; e. g.,

Hiëmë ursus dormit.
(In winter the bear sleeps.)
The bear sleeps (when?) in winter.

89. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The time when is put in the

^{*} The preposition is, however, often expressed before the ablative, as it is before the objective in English.

[†] As an exception to this, a few nouns of the third declension form the ablative in 7, as we shall see by-and-by.

licate. Is to the ob: ; as, mūsă,

, or *with* a

Dec. V.

ec., a muse.

a slave.
honor.

" fruit. " day.

oun denot-

put in the

he ablative, as

clension form

ablative without a preposition (i. e., without any word for the English at, in, &c.)

Rem.—The ablative of time often stands first in a sentence, as in the example.

90. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the place of its action; e. g.,

Ursus in antro dormit (The bear in a cave sleeps.)

The bear sleeps (where?) in a cave.

91. Rule of Syntax.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town (227), is generally put in the ablative with a preposition.

The pupil, in preparing his exercises, should imitate the order in the examples, whenever nothing is said on the point.

92. VOCABULARY.

Aestas, atis, f. summer. Agĕr, ăgrī, m. field (agriculture). Antrum, I, n. cave. Asinus, I, m. 88. Avis, is, f. bird (aviary). Dilăniare, to tear in pieces. Equus, I, m. horse (equestrian), Hiems, ĕmĭs, f. winter. Hortus, I, m. garden (horticulture). In (prep. with abl.), in. Lūcus, ī, m. grove. Mons, tis, m. mountain. Pratum, I, n. meadow. Ursus, I, m, bear.

93. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ursus dormit. 2. Ursus in antro dormit. 3 Canis currit. 4. Canis in horto currit. 5. Puer ludēbat. 6. Puer in agro ludēbat. 7. Hiĕme ursus in antro dermiet. 8. Romulus urbem condēbat. 9. Romulus urbem in monte condēbat. 10. Hieme ursus in antro dormit.

Servus regem occīdet.
 Leo asĭnum dilaniat.
 Rex regīnam accusābat.
 Regīna filiam docēbit.
 In luco ludunt.
 Leo equum dilaniābit.

(b) 1. The boy is playing. 2. The boy is playing in the garden. 3. The dog is running. 4. The dog is running in the meadow. 5. The bird will not sing. 6. The bird will not sing in winter. 7. The daughter was singing in the grove. 8. They will walk in the field. 9. They will play in summer.

10. Balbus will fear Caius. 11. They will fear the queen. 12. He was building a wall. 13. They are building a wall. 14. The queen is walking in the field. 15. The queen's mother was weeping. 16. The slave is showing the boy (to the boy) the way. 17. The slave was shutting the gate. 18. The boy will shut the gate.

LESSON XVII.

Nouns.—First Declension.*

94. To the *First Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive in ae (62). They all end in \check{a} (except a few *Greek* nouns. See 174).

95. Latin nouns of this declension are grammatically feminine; unless their gender is determined by their signification, according to previous rules (40, 44).

^{*} Having learned in the previous Lessons the use of the several cases of the Latin language, the pupil will now find little difficulty in mastering the five declensions (62) in all the cases of both numbers.

pat. 9. Rome ursus in

ım dilaniat. am docēbit. ībit.

s playing in The dog is ot sing. 6. aughter was in the field.

rill fear the t. They are in the field. The slave t. The slave ut the gate.

ouns which $n \ \tilde{a}$ (except

mmatically ed by their 44).

e several cases alty in master 96. We have already learned that the root of a noun may always be found from the genitive singular (69, 1), but, as it may also be formed without much difficulty from the nominative, it will be well for us to notice, in connection with the different declensions, the manner in which this may be done.

97. In the First Declension,

1) The root may be found by dropping the nominative ending \check{a} , as $m\bar{u}s\check{a}$; root, $m\bar{u}s$ (69, 1).

2) Any noun may be declined (i. e., all the cases of both numbers may be formed) by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

Sing. Plur.	Non. ă, ae,	Gen. ae, ārŭm,	Dat. ae, Is,	Accus, ăm, ās,	Voc. ă, ae,	Abl. ā, īs.
----------------	-------------------	----------------	--------------------	----------------------	-------------------	-------------------

PARADIGM.

Singular. Nom. Mas-ă, a muse. Gen. Mas-ae, of a muse. Dat. Mas-ae, to, for a muse. Acc. Mas-ăm, a muse. Voc. Mas-ă, O muse. Abl. Mas-a, from &c. a muse.	Plural. Nom. Mūs-ae, muses. Gen. Mūs-arūm, of muses. Dat. Mūs-is, to, for muses. Acc. Mūs-as, muses. Voc. Mūs-ae, O muses. Abl. Mūs-is, from, &c. muses.
---	---

98. VOCABULARY.*

Apěrīrě, Aquílă, ae, Căpūt, ĭtĭs, n. Cŏlumbă, ae,	to open, to uncover eagle head	(aperture). (aquiline). (capital).
Columba, ae,	dove.	

The pupil must apply rules for gender

	_
garland, crown pain, grief, sorrow nightingale.	(coronation), (dolorous).
to laugh, to laugh at	(ridicule).
5 to feel, to perceive	
to bind, to bind up.	
	pain, grief, sorrow nightingale. to laugh, to laugh at to feel, to perceive by the senses. to bind,

99. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puellae saltant.
2. Aquĭlae volant.
3. Regīna puellas docēbit.
4. Tulliae filiae ridēbunt.
5. Tulliae filias ridēbit.
6. Aquĭla columbas occīdet.
7. Lusciniae cantābant.

8. Balbus vocem audit. 9. Caius dolōrem vitābit. 10. Puellae dolōrem sentiunt. 11. Servus epistŏlas scribit. 12. Puer caput vinciēbat. 13. Regīna puellae corōnam dabit. 14. Regīna puellis corōnas dabit.

(b) 1. The girl was writing a letter. 2. The girls are writing letters. 3. The queen will call (her) daughter. 4. The queen is calling (her) daughters. 5. Tul-

lia will give a garland to her daughter.

6. They will give garlands to (their) daughters. 7. He is reading the queen's letter. 8. They are reading the girls' letters (the letters of the girls). 9. They will show the way to the queen. 10. The husbandman will shut the gate. 11. The doves will fly. 12. The nightingales are singing. 13. The boy hears (his) father's voice. 14. The boy is opening the letters. 15. The slave will open (his) master's letters.

onation). orous).

icule).

t. 3. Robunt. 5. s occīdet.

n vitābit. epistŏlas na puellae abit.

The girls r) daugh-5. Tul-

nters. 7.
reading
9. They
husbandfly. 12.
cars (his)
e letters.

LESSON XVIII.

Nouns .- Second Declension .- Nouns in us and um.

100. To the Second Declension belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in $\bar{\imath}$ (62). They end in $\bar{\imath}s$, $\bar{\imath}s$, $\bar{\imath}s$, $\bar{\imath}s$, and $\bar{\imath}s$ (except a few Greek nouns. See 174).

101. In this declension nouns in $\bar{u}m$ are grammatically neuter; and the rest (with a few exceptions*) are grammatically masculine; unless their gender is determined by their signification, according to previous rules (40, 44).

102. In nouns in $\check{u}s$ and $\check{u}m$, of this declension, the root is found by dropping the nominative ending; as, serv- $\check{u}s$, a slave; root, serv: $r\bar{e}gn-\check{u}m$, a kingdom; root, $r\bar{e}gn$.

103. Nouns in *us* are declined by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

Q:	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ŭs,	ī,	ō,	ŭm,	ĕ,†	ō,
Plur.	I,	ōrtim,	Is,	ōs,	ĭ,	īs.

* It has not been thought best to burden the memory of the learner with lists of exceptions, at this early stage of his study. Accordingly, general rules, covering the great majority of cases, are given for immediate and constant use; thus the pupil may fix the general principles of the language, and become better prepared to understand and recollect the exceptions as they occur in his lessons. Such exceptions, whether partaining to gender or other subjects, will be marked in the Vocabularies.

† The vocative singular, in nouns in ŭs of this declension, is not like the nominative (see 55 and note). Proper nouns in iŭs drop the ending in the vocative singular; as, Tullius (proper name), Voc. Tulli. Filius, a son, and gëniŭs, a guardian angel, also drop the ending in the vocative singular.

PARADIGM.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Serv-ŭs, a slave. Gen. Serv-ĭ, of a slave. Dat. Serv-ŭ, to, for a slave. Acc. Serv-ŭm, a slave. Voc. Serv-ĕ, O slave. Abl. Serv-ō, from, by a slave.	Nom. Serv-I, slaves. Gen. Serv-orum, of slaves. Dat. Serv-Is, to, for slaves. Acc. Serv-os, slaves. Voc. Serv-I, O slaves. Abl. Serv-Is, from, by slave

Rem.—It will be well for the pupil to accustom himself to compare the several cases with each other, and to associate together such as are alike, or nearly so.

104. Nouns in $\tilde{u}m$ are declined by adding to the root the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

Sing. Plur.	Nom. ŭm, ă,	Gen. ī, ōrŭm,	Dat. 5, 18,	Accus. ŭm, ă,	Voc. ŭm, ă,	Abl. 5, 18.
----------------	-------------------	---------------------	-------------	-----------------	-------------------	-------------

PARADIGM.

Gen. Rēgn-ī, of a kingdom. Dat. Rēgn-ō, to, for a kingdom. Acc. Rēgn-um, a kingdom. Voc. Rēgn-um, O kingdom. Abl. Rēgn-ō, from, by a kingdom. Abl. Rēgn-ō, from, by a kingdom. Abl. Rēgn-īs, from, by kingdom.	Dat. Regn-ō, to, for a kingdom. Acc. Regn-um, a kingdom. Voc. Regn-um, O kingdom	Dat. Rēgń-Is, to, for kingdoms. Acc. Rēgn-ā, kingdoms.
--	--	---

Rem. 1.—In neuters of ail declensions, the nom., acc., and voc. are alike in each number, and in the plural end in d, as in the paradigm just given.

REM. 2.—Neuters in *ũm* are declined like masculines in *ũs* of this declension, except in the cases just mentioned (nom., acc., and vec.). Compare paradigms.

105. VOCABULARY.

Agnus, I, lamb. Discipulus, I, pupil (disciple). Dominus, I, master, as owner (domineer). to carry on, Gĕrĕrĕ. to wage (as war). Haedus, 1, kid. Lupus, J. wolf. Măgister, trī, master, as teacher (magisterial).

106. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius Balbum docēbat. 2. Balbus Caium docēbat. 3. Servus domĭnum occīdet. 4. Servi domĭnos timent. 5. Balbus filios laudābit. 6. Servus domĭni filios timet. 7. Servi dominōrum filios timēbunt.

8. Puellae dolōrem sentiēbant. 9. Servi muros aedificābunt. 10. Pastor filiis canem dabit. 11. Pastor filiābus* haedum dabit.

(b) 1. Balbus will instruct the slave. 2. Caius will punish the pupil. 3. They will instruct (their) pupils. 4. The slaves will fear Balbus. 5. The master was punishing (his) slaves. 6. Caius will kill the wolf. 7. Wolves will kill lambs. 8. The wolves do not see (see not) the kids.

9. Caius was waging war. 10. They are waging wars. 11. Balbus will fight. 12. The sons of Balbus will fight. 13. The master is teaching the boys. 14. The master is teaching his pupils in the garden. 15. The girls were walking in the garden. 16. He was playing in the meadow. 17. They will play in the fields. 18. The slaves were reading (their) master's letters.

slaves. r slaves. s. es. by slaves.

f to compare together such

o the root

*Abl.*5,
Is.

ns.

ingdoms.

kingdoms.

ns.

doms.

kingdoms.

c. are alike paradigm

us of this, and voc.).

^{*} Filia has the dative and ablative plur. in abus to distinguish if from the same cases of filius.

LESSON XIX.

Nouns.—Second Declension, continued.—Nouns in er and ir.

107. Nouns in er and ir, of the second declension, have the nominative and vocative singular alike, and in all the other cases are declined like servus (103), with the single exception that most nouns in er drop e in the root.

PARADIGMS.

1.	Gĕnĕr,	a son-in-law:	root,	gĕnĕr	(ĕ n	ot dror	med).
	,		2000,	901001	(0 11	ou arou	Deu.

	- cold gener (o not aroppe
Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Gěněr, a son-in-law.	Nom. Gĕnĕr-I, sons-in-law.
Gen. Gener-i, of son-in-law.	Gen. Generatrum of some

Dat. Gěněr-ö, to son-in-law.

Acc. Gěněr-ům, son-in-law. Voc. Gěněr, O son-in-law. Abl. Gěněr-ö, from son-in-law. Abl. Gěněr-ö, from son-in-law.

2. Ager, a field: root, agr (e dropped).

	. 1001, agr (e dropped).
Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Ager, a field.	Nom. Agr-1, fields.
Gen. Agr-I, of a field.	Gen. Agrarim of fa

Dat. Agr-ō, to a field.

Dat. Agr-ōrum, of fields.

Dat. Agr-im, a field.

Voc. Agr, O field.

Voc. Agr. O fields.

Voc. Ager, O field.

Abl. Agr-o, from a field.

Voc. Agr-i, O fields.

Abl. Agr-is, from fields.

Vir (a man) and its compounds are the only nouns in & and are declined like gönör.

108. VOCABULARY.

Armiger, I, armor-bearer.
Dīligentia, ae, diligence.
Gener, I, son-in-law.
Liber, librī, book.
Vulpēs, is, f. fox.

ouns in

109. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puer in agro ludit. 2. Pueri in agris ludē bant. 3. Magister puĕros docēbit. 4. Magistri disci pulos docēbunt. 5. Magister pueris libros dabit. 6. Armigĕrum occidēbant.

7. Pater diligentiam (64, b) filiörum laudābat. Reginae filia in luco ambulabat. 9. Lusciniae in lucis cantant. 10. Magistri legem non negligent. 11. Pueri

vulpem non occident.

(b) 1. The boy was running in the fields. 2. The boys will run in the fields. 3. The boys saw the master's book. 4. The pupils will give the master a book (a book to the master). 5. They will give books to (their) masters. 6. He will punish the armor-bearer. 7. He will accuse (his) son-in-law. 8. They will accuse (their) sons-in-law.

9. The master was praising (his) pupils. 10. The master was praising the diligence of (his) pupils. 11. The pupils do not hear the master. 12. The slaves will shut the gates of the city. 13. The boys were reading in the garden. 14. The girls are reading in the meadow.

LESSON XX.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

110. THE Adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify substantives; as, bonus, good; māgnus, great.

111. The form of the adjective often depends, in part, upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies:

ke, and in 103), with drop ě in

leclension,

ropped).

n-law. sons-in-law. ns-in-law. in-law. s-in-law. sons-in-law.

fields.

l).

ds.8.

fields.

s in Mr. and

e. g., Bŏnŭs puĕr, a good boy; Bŏnă puellă, a good girl; and Bŏnŭm rēgnum, a good kingdom. Thus, bŏnŭs is the form of the adjective when used with masc. nouns, bŏnă with fem., and bŏnữm with neuter.

112. These three forms of the adjective are declined like nouns of the same endings. Thus, the masculine is declined like servus (103), and is accordingly of the second declension; the feminine like mūsă (97), and is of the first declension; and the neuter like rēgnum (104), and is of the second declension.

PARADIGM.

	В	ŏnŭs, good.	
	n	SINGULAR.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Bŏn-ŭs,	bŏn-ă,	bŏn-ŭm.
Gen.	Bŏn-ī,	bŏn-ae,	bŏn-ī.
Dat.	Bŏn-o,	bŏn-ae,	bŏn-ō.
Acc.	Bon-um,	bŏn-ăm,	bŏn-ŭm.
Voc.	Bon. &,	bŏn-ă,	bŏn-ŭm.
Abl.	Bŏn-ō,	bŏn-a,	bŏn-ō.
		PLURAL,	
Nom.	Bŏn-ī,	bŏn-ae.	bŏn-ă.
Gen.	Bŏn-ōrŭm,	bŏn-ārŭm,	bŏn-ōrŭm.
Dat.	Bŏn-īs,	bŏn-īs,	bŏn-īs.
Acc.	Bon-os,	bŏn-as,	bŏn-ă.
Voc.	Bŏn-ī,	bŏn-ae,	bŏn-ă.
Abl.	Bŏn-īs,	bŏn-īs,	bŏn-īs.

REM.—Adjectives like the above are called adjectives of the First and Second Declension, because they are declined like nouns of these declensions; the masc and neut being declined like nouns of the second declension, and the fem. like those of the first.

113. Some adjectives of this declension have the nom. and voc. sing. in ĕr, like nouns in ĕr of the second declension. These, in all their other forms, are de-

good girl; s, bŏnŭs is sc. nouns,

e declined masculine gly of the 97), and is e regnum

f the First te nouns of like nouns first.

ave the second are de-

clined like bonus in the Paradigm above, with the exception, that most of them drop \check{e} before r of the root in all genders.

PARADIGMS.

±. ±(oner, tender:	root, těněr (ĕ	not dropped)
	Masc.	Fom.	Nout.
Nom.	Těněr,	těněr-a,	těněr-ŭm.
Gen.	Těněr-I,	těněr-ae,	těněr-t.
Dat.	Těněr-ō,	těněr-ae,	těněr-o.
Acc.	Těněr-um,	těněr-am,	těněr-ŭm.
Voc.	Těněr,	tĕnĕr-ă,	těněr-ům.
Abl.	Těněr-ö,	tĕnĕr-a,	těněr-ō.
		PLURAL.	• CA1C4-0.
Nom.	Těněr-ī,	těněr-ae,	těněr-a.
Gen.	Těněr-orum,	těněr-arům,	těněr-ōrum.
Dat.	Těněr-is,	těněr-īs,	těněr-īa.
Acc.	Těněr-os,	těněr-as,	těněr-ă.
Voc.	Těněr-ī,	těněr-ae,	tĕnĕr-ā.
Abl.	Těněr-is,	tĕnĕr-īs,	tĕnĕr-īs.
2.		root, aegr (ĕ	dropped).
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Aegĕr,	aegr-ă,	aegr-ŭm.
Gen.	Aegr-I,	aegr-ae,	aegr-um.
Dat.	Aegr-ō,	aogr-ae,	aegr-1. aegr-5.
Acc.	Aegr-um,	aegr-ăm,	aegr-ŭm.
Voc.	Aegĕr,	aegr-ă,	aegr-um.
Abl.	Aegr-ō,	aegr-a,	aegr-din.
		PLURAL.	aegr-o.
Nom.	Aegr-I,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ă.
Gen.	Aegr-orum,	aegr-ārum.	aegr-ōrŭm.
Dat.	Aegr-īs,	aegr-īs,	aegr-orum,
Acc.	Aegr-ös,	aegr-as,	aegr-a.
Voc.	Aegr-ī,	aegr-ae,	aegr-a.
Abl.	Aegr-Is,	B	CEL-H.

a

d

C

n

b

 \mathbf{T}

on

th

m

SII

abo

the

113

Rem.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in tis (the is generally short in alterius), and the dative singular in t in all genders, viz.: alius, another; nullus, no one; solus, alone; totus, the whole; ullus, any; unus, one; aliur, the other; neuter, neither and uter, which (of the two).

114. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adjectives agree with the nouns which they qualify, in gender, number, and case; e. g.,

Māter bonam fīliam laudat. (The mother (her) good daughter praises). The mother praises her good daughter.

REM. 1.—The adjective bonam is in the feminine accusative singular to agree with its noun filiam.

REM. 2.—The position of the adjective seems to depend principally upon emphasis; and accordingly the adjective precedes or follows its noun, according as it is or is not emphasic. In the example, bönam is emphasic.

REM. 3.—Meŭs, my; tuŭs, your (or thy); suŭs, his, her, &c., though called adjective pronouns (273 and 295), are in declension and agreement really adjectives. They usually follow their nouns: e.g.

Mulier ancillam suam excitat. (The woman maid her awakens.) The woman awakens her maid.

115. VOCABULARY.

Bčnīgnus, a, um, kind (benign). Bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm, good. Magnus, a, um, large, great (magnitude). Meŭs,* ă, ŭm, my. Pulcher, chră, chrăm, beautiful. Sěpělirě, to bury. Studiosus, a, um, studious. Suŭs,† ă, um, his, her, its, their. Tuŭs, ă, ŭm, your, thy.

^{*} Voc. sing. masc. is mī.

[†] The meaning of this word depends in part upon the gender and number of the subject of the proposition in which it is used. Thus, in the

in tue (the

r in t in all one : *tötäe*.

noutër, nei-

with the

er, and

116. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Regīna puĕros laudābat. 2. Regīna puĕros bonos laudābat. 3. Pater filium suum docēbat. 4. Mater filias suas amābit. 5. Bona mater filias suas amābit.
- 6. Magister puĕros docēbit. 7. Bonus magister studiosos puĕros docēbit. 8. Agricŏlae anguem non timēbunt. 9. Caius bonam legem non neglĭget. 10. Christiāni legem bonam non neglĭgunt. 11. Pater meus in prato ambŭlat.
- (b) 1. The father was burying his son. 2. They are burying their sons. 3. My friend does not hear my voice. 4. The daughters love (their) kind mother. 5. The mother will instruct her beautiful daughters.
- 6. Caius disregards the law. 7. They disregard the good laws. 8. The boys are killing your dog. 9. Good boys will not kill dogs. 10. Your dog will kill the wolf 11. Dogs will kill large wolves.

LESSON XXI.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, continued.

117. THE noun which the adjective qualifies is often omitted in Latin; and then in translating into English the word man must be supplied, if the adjective is masc. sing.; woman, if fem. sing.; and thing, if neuter sing.; e. g.,

above example (Müliër ancillam suam excitat), suam means her, because the subject muliër is fem. sing.; with a masculine subject it would mean his, and with a plural subject, their, &c.

singular

orincipally or *follows* example,

ough calland agrees: e.g.,

n). itude).

ider and 28, in the

nc

pr

Avārus pēcūniām āmāt. (The avaricious (man) money loves.) The avaricious man loves money.

Rem.—After a plur. adjec. the noun is sometimes expressed and sometimes omitted in the Eng. translation; thus, avart may be translated avaricious men, or simply the avaricious.

118. When a noun is limited by a genitive, one or both nouns may be qualified by an adjective; e. g.,

Māgnă rēgis coronă.
 (The great of the king crown.)
 The king's great crown.

Māgnă bŏnī rēgĭs cŏrōnă.
 (The great of the good king crown.)
 The good king's great crown.

119. VOCABULARY.

Aureŭs, ă, ŭm, golden. Avārītiā, ae, avarice. Avārus, a, um, avaricious. Impiŭs, ă, ŭm, impious. Indoctŭs, ă, ŭm, unlearned Lăbor, oris, m. labor. Poētă, ae, m. poet. Săpientiă, ae, wisdom. Vindicară to avenge.

120. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Auream regis coronam videbant. 2. Servi magnam regis coronam videbunt. 3. Balbi domum evertent. 4. Impii domum evertebant. 5. Indoctus sapientiam laudābat.
- 6. Magnum boni regis sceptrum timēbunt. 7. Amīci sapientiam tuam laudant. 8. Christiāni avaritiam vitābunt. 9 Mater bonas filias laudābat.
 - (b) 1. He disregards his slave's labor. 2. He disre-

e. g.,

gards his slave's great labor. 3. The beautiful daughters of the queen will dance. 4. The poet was holding the beautiful crown. 5. The poet was holding the good queen's beautiful crown. 6. The good (man) will not disregard the law. 7. The poet will laugh at the unlearned (man). 8. The good will not fear death.

9. They will avenge the death of their father. 10. They were avenging the death of the good (woman). 11. The impious (man) will fear death. 12. The poet will build a beautiful house.

LESSON XXII.

Nouns and Adjectives.—First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation.

121. The predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun or adjective denoting price, value, or degree of estimation; e. g.,

1. Avārus pātriam auro vendet.

(The avaricious (man) (his) country for gold will sell.)
The avaricious man will sell his country for gold.

2. Avārŭs pēcūniām māgnī aestīmāt.

(The avaricious (man) money at a great (price) values.)
The avaricious man values money at a great price (or highly).

122. Rule of Syntax.—Price, when expressed by nouns, is generally put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, generally in the genitive.

Rem. 1.—The genitive of a few nouns and the ablative of a few adjectives sometimes occur in expressions of price and value.

REM 2.—In example 1. the noun auro is in the ablative, and in example 2. the adjective magni is in the genitive by the above rule

Servi lomum doctus

Amīci n vitā-

disre-

r,

no

by

123. VOCABULARY.

Aestimare, Aurum, I,	to value gold.	(estimate).
Magni,	at a great price, at a high price.	
Magnī aestimārē,	to prize highly, to think highly of.	
Parvi,	at a little price, at a low price.	
Parvi aestimare,	to think little of.	
Pătriă, ae,	native country	(patriotic).
Proditor, oris,	traitor.	(Pan totte).
Venděrě,	to sell	(vend).
Vērus, a, um,	true, real.	(00,00).
Virtus, atis, f.	virtue.	

124. Exercises.

(a) 1. Impius patriam auro vendēbat. 2. Proditor patriam parvi³ aestimābit. 3. Caius amīci sui labōrem parvi aestimat. 4. Boni virtūtem magni³ aestimant.

5. Rex servum magni aestimābit. 6. Regīna aurēam corōnam magni aestīmat. 7. Magnam urbis portam claudent. 8. Domĭnus servi sui epistolas aperiet. 9. Servus puĕros vocābit.

(b) 1. The traitor will sell (his) country for gold.

2. Caius values true virtue at a great (price).²

3. The master thinks little² of the labor of his slave.

4. The poet will feel real sorrow. 5. A father will not disregard the sorrow of his son. 6. The avaricious (man) will value virtue at a low (price). 7. The avaricious value money at a high (price). 8. Christians think little of money.

imate).

riotic).

Τ.

Proditor laborem imant. auream portam riet. 9.

or gold.
3. The

ner will aricious e avariristians

LESSON XXIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I.

125. To the *Third Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in is. They end in a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x, and may be divided into four classes:

- 1) Those which have the root the same as the nominative singular (except, in a few instances, the omission or change of the radical vowel): as, muliër, a woman; root, muliër.
- 2) Those which form the root by adding a single letter to the nominative singular: as, leŏ, a lion; root, leōn.
- 3) Those which form the root by dropping the ending of the nominative singular: as, urbs, a city; root, urb.
- 4) Those which form the root by changing the ending of the nominative singular: as, piĕtās, piety; root, piĕtāt.

126. CLASS I.—This class comprises nouns in c, *l, n, r, t, and y. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel changes:

- 1) Nouns in ter and ber generally drop e in the root: as, păter, a father; root, pătr.
- 2) Nouns in ĕn generally change ĕ into ĭ in the root: as, flūmĕn, a river; root, flūmĕn.
- 3) Nouns in ŭt change ŭ into ĭ in the root: as, căpŭt, a head; root, căpĭt.

^{*} There are only two nouns with this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

Res.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in all and or, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

127. Neuter nouns of this declension have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike, and are declined in the other cases by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

9	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing. Plur.	ă (iă),	ĭs, ŭm (iŭm),	ī, ĭbŭs,	ă (iă),	_ ă (iă),	ĕ (ī). ibŭs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong only to neuters in e, al, and ar.

PARADIGMS.

1. Căpăt, n. (root, căpăt)	, a head.	2. Animal, n., an animal. (root, same as nom.* [126].)
Singular.	Plural.	Singular. Plural.
Nom. Căpăt, Gen. Căpăt-ĭs, Dat. Căpăt-ī, Acc. Căpăt, Voc. Căpăt, Abl. Căpăt-ĕ,	Căpīt-ă. Căpīt-ŭm. Căpīt-ĭbŭs. Căpīt-ā. Căpīt-ă. Căpīt-ă.	Nom. Animal, Animal-ia. Gen. Animal-is, Animal-ium. Dat. Animal-I, Animal-ibus. Acc. Animal, Animal-ia. Voc. Animal, Animal-ia. Abl. Animal-I, Animal-ibus.

128. Masculine and feminine nouns of this declension are declined, in all the cases except the *nominative* and *vocative singular* (which are alike), by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
0	ēs,	ĭs, ŭm (iŭm),	ĭ, ĭbŭs,	ĕm (ĭm), ēs,	ĕs,	ĕ (ī). ĭbŭs.

^{*} With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

anged; this lly lengthen

the nomie, and are root the

> Abl. ĕ (ī). ibŭs.

, and ar.

animal. [126].) ural. nāl-iă. nāl-iŭm. nāl-ĭbŭs.

nal-ia. nal-ia. nal-ĭbŭs.

declenminative ng to the

Abl. ĕ (ī). ĭbŭs. REM.—The inclosed endings (except that of the genitive plural, which will be noticed again, 141) belong only to a few words.

PARADIGMS.

1. Lăbŏr, n	n., labor.	2. Mülier, f.,	a woman.
(root, same as no	m.* [126].)	(root, same as	
Singular	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Lăbor,	Lăbor-ēs.	Nom. Mulier,	Mŭliĕr-ēs.
Gen. Lăbor-ĭs,	Lăbor-ŭm.	Gen. Mulier-is,	
Dat. Lăbor-i,	Lăbor-ĭbus.		Mülier-ibus,
Acc. Lăbor-ĕm,	Lăbor-es.	Acc. Mülier-em	
Voc. Labor,	Lăbor-ēs.	Voc. Mulier,	
Abl. Lăbor-ĕ,	Lăbor-ibus.	Abl. Müliĕr-ĕ,	Mülier-ibüs.
3. Pătĕr, a	father.	4. Frātĕr,	a brother.
(root, patr [1	26, 1].)	(root, frātr	[126, 1].)
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Pătěr,	Pătr-ēs.	Nom. Frater,	Fratr-ēs.
Gen. Pătr-is,	Pătr-ŭm.	Gen. Fratr-is,	Fratr-um.
Dat. Pătr-I,	Pătr-ĭbŭs.	Dat. Fratr-I,	
Acc. Pătr-ĕm,	Pătr-ēs.	Acc. Fratr-ĕm,	Fratr-ës.
Voc. Pătěr,	Pătr-ēs.	Voc. Frater,	Fratr-es.
Abl. Pătr-ĕ,	Pătr-ĭbŭs.	Abl. Fratr-ĕ,	Fratr-ĭbŭs.

129. VOCABULARY.

Brūtus, 1,	Brutus, a Roman consul.
Caecus, a, um,	blind.
Consŭl, ĭs,	consul, Roman chief magistrate.
Finīrē,	to finish.
Frater, tris,	brother.
Lūcērĕ,	to shine.
Mŭliër, ĕrĭs,	woman.
Sĕnātŏr, ōris,	senator.
Sīrēn, is, f.	siren.
Sol, is, m.	sun.
Sŏrŏr, ōrĭs,	sister.

^{*} With the radical vowel lengthened (126, Rem.).

130. Exercises.

(a) 1. Agricola laborem finiebat. 2. Mulier sorores accusabit. 3. Brutum consulem occidebat. 4. Senatores Caesarem occidebant.

5. Bonus puer caput aperiet. 6. Servi capita aperiebant. 7. Sirēnes cantābant. 8. Sol lucēbat. 9. Caeci solem non vident. 10. Pastōres aurum magni aestīmant.

(b) 1. The boy accuses his brother. 2. They accuse their brothers. 3. The consuls were waging war. 4. The senators fear the consul. 5. The consuls fear the senators. 6. The shepherd values his dog at a high (price).² 7. They will finish their labor.

8. They fear the sirens. 9. Good boys uncover their heads. 10. The blind boy does not see the sun. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The good woman loves (her) beautiful daughters. 13. Good daughters love their mothers. 14. Good mothers instruct their daughters.

LESSON XXIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class II.

131. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third-declension in a, o, and a few in i. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

1) Nouns in a, and a few in i, add t: as, poēmă, a poem; root, poēmăt: hydrŏmĕlĭ, mead; root, hydrŏmĕlĭt.

2) Nouns in o add n: as, leō, a lion; root, leōn.

Rem. 1.—O is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in do and go change o into t, before n in the root: as virgo, a virgin; root, virgin.

lier sorōres . 4. Sena-

pita aperiē.
9. Caeci aestimant. hey accuse

g war. 4. ls fear the at a high

cover their sun. 11. od woman daughters ruct their

d-declenroot by

, $po\overline{e}mreve{a}$, id ; root,

ot, leōn.

the root:

PARADIGMS.

Singular.	: root, poēmăt (131, 1).
N. Poēmă,	N. Poēmāt-ă.
G. Poēmăt-ĭs,	G. Poēmāt-ŭm.
D. Poēmăt-I,	D. Poemat-ibus, or is.*
A. Poemă,	A. Poemăt-ă.
V. Poēmă,	V. Poēmăt-ă.
A. Poēmăt-ĕ,	A. Poemat-ibus, or Is.*
2. Sermő, m., a discourse. (root, sermőn [131, 2].) Singular. Plural. N. Sermő, Sermőn-ës. G. Sermőn-is, Sermőn-üm. D. Sermőn-I, Sermőn-ibűs. A. Sermőn-em, Sermőn-es. V. Sermő, Sermőn-es. A. Sermőn-e, Sermőn-ibűs.	3. Virgŏ, f., a virgin. (root, virgĭn [131, 2. Rem. 2].) Singular. Plural. N. Virgŏ, Virgĭn-ēs. G. Virgĭn-is, Virgĭn-im. D. Virgĭn-im, Virgĭn-ibŭs. A. Virgŏ, Virgĭn-ēs. V. Virgŏ, Virgĭn-ēs. A. Virgŏn-ĕ, Virgĭn-ös.

132. VOCABULARY.

Accipiter, tris, m. Homo, inis, Optio, onis, f. Oratio, onis, f. Orator, oris, Pavo, onis, m. Poema, tis, n.	hawk. man. choice oration, orator. peacock. poem.	(optional).
Sermő, önïs, m . Timid-üs, \ddot{a} , $\ddot{u}m$,	discourse timid.	(sermon).
Virgo, inis,	maiden, virgin	(virgin).

[•] Nouns in a generally take the ending is instead of ibits in the dat, and abl. plural.

133. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pater turas promodta legēbat. 2. Poēta sermō nem tuum laudābit. 3. Timīdae puellae pavonem timent. 4. Virgines homini viam monstrabunt.

5. Bonus puer fratri optionem dabit. 6. Pueri homines timent. 7. Indocti sapientiam parvi's aestimābunt,

8. Puellae sorores suas amant.

(b) 1. My brother is reading your discourse. 2. The boys will kill the peacock. 3. They will kill the beautiful peacocks. 4. Your mother is reading the peem. 5. The girls are reading poems. 6. The doves fear the hawk. 7. The hawk will kill your dove.

8. The hawks will kill the beautiful doves. 9. Mothers feel real sorrow. 10. The unlearned will laugh at the orator. 11. The poet will hear the oration. 12. The orator prizes wisdom highly.2 13. The avaricious

think little of wisdom.

LESSON XXV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class III.

134. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in bs, ms, ps, x = cs or gs, is, ys, e, a few in i,* and a few in es. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

1) Nouns in bs, ms, ps, and ys, drop s: as, urbs, a city; root, urb; hiems, winter; root, hiem.

2) Nouns in x = (cs or gs) drop the s in x: as, vox (cs), a voice; root, voc; rex (gs), a king; root, req.

^{*} Nouns in i are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; s few form the root by dropping i, and a few by adding t (131, 1).

pavonem int. ueri homitimabunt.

the beauhe pcem. s fear the

. 9. Molaugh at ' ion. 12. varicious

d declenn i,* and oing the

s, *urbs*, a hiĕm. n x: as, a king;

linable; s

8) Nouns in is, e, and a few in es, drop those endings; as, hostis, an enemy; root, host: nūbēs, a cloud; root, nūb: mărĕ, a sea; root, măr.

PARADIGMS.

		RADIGMS.	
(root, u Singulo N. Urb-s, G. Urb-is, D. Urb-I, A. Urb-ĕm V. Urb-s, A. Urb-ĕ,	Urb-ĭbŭs. Urb-ēs. Urb-ēs. Urb-ĭbŭs.	(root, mi Singular N. Măr-ĕ, G. Măr-ĭs, D. Măr-I, A. Măr-ĕ, V. Măr-ĕ, A. Măr-ĭ,†	Măr-iă.† Măr-iŭm.† Măr-ibŭs. Măr-iă. Măr-iă. Măr-ibŭs.
(root, are Singular N. Arx, G. Arc-is, D. Arc-i, A. Arc-em, V. Arx, A. Arc-e, (root, host Singular.	Arc-ēs. Arc-ēs. Arc-ibŭs. , an enemy. [184, 3].) Plural. Host-ēs. Host-ibŭs. Host-ēs. Host-ēs.	4. Rex (gs) (root, rēg Singular. N. Rex, G. Rēg-ĭs, D. Rēg-ĕm, V. Rex, A. Rēg-ĕ, 6. Nūbēs, (root, nūb [Singular. N. Nūb-ĕs, G. Nūb-ĭs, D. Nūb-ĭs, V. Nūb-ĕs, A. Nūb-ĕs, A. Nūb-ĕs, A. Nūb-ĕs, A. Nūb-ĕs,	Rēg-ēs. Rēg-tum. Rēg-tum. Rēg-tum. Rēg-ēs. Rēg-ēs. Rēg-tum. Rēg-tum. Rēg-tum. Rēg-tum. Nūb-ēs. Nūb-tum. Nūb-tum. Nūb-tum. Nūb-tum. Nūb-tum.

^{*} Monosyllables in s or x, preceded by a consonant, have ium in the senitive plural See 141, 3.

135. VOCABULARY.

Arx, arcis, f. citadel, tower. CIVIS, is, m, and f. citizen (civil). Frütex, icis, m. ahrub. Grex, ěgis, m. flock, herd (gregarious), Hostis, is, m. and f. enemy (hostile). Judex. icis. iudæe (judwial). Pax, pacis, f. peace (pacific). Reŭs. I. criminal. Servarë. to keep, observe (serve). Viölare. to violate.

136. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius leges violābit. 2. Regīna urbem conlēbat. 3. Puĕri magnam urbis portam claudunt. 4.
Pastōres arcem condent. 5. Reus judĭcis vocem timet.

6. Cives regem accusābant. 7. Consules hostes vincēbant. 8. Pastor gregem magni³ aestīmat. 9. Boni cives pacem magni aestīmant. 10. Filii patrem vindicēbunt. 11. Servus frutīcem in horto reperiēbat. 12. Impii patriam auro vendunt. 13. Rei judīcis vocem timēbunt. 14. Proditor patriam parvi³ aestīmat. 15. Proditōres patriam parvi aestimabunt. 16. Agricŏla labōrem finiēbat.

(b) 1. The boys will not observe the law. 2. Good citizens observe the laws. 3. They will guard the city.
4. Soldiers will guard the cities. 5. They accuse the judge. 6. The criminals will accuse their judges. 7. The king is violating the law.

8. Slaves fear their masters. 9. Slaves fear the voices of their masters. 10. The king will conquer the enemy (pl.). 11. The shepherd will guard his flock. 12. Shepherds guard their flocks. 13. The poet will

n. rarious). ile). cial). fic).

:).

bem condunt. 4. s vocem

s hostes imat. 9. ii patrem eperiēbat. cis vocem mat. 15. Agricola

2. Good the city. ccuse the dges. 7.

fear the conquer his flock. poet will

praise the judge. 14. They praise the judges. Christians will observe the laws of the city. 16. He does not observe the laws of the city. 17. Good citizens will not violate the laws. 18. The boy is accusing his sister. 19. They are accusing their fathers. 20. Traitors will sell their country for gold. 21. They think little of virtue. 22. They prize money highly.

LESSON XXVI.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class IV.

137. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third deelension in as, os, us, ls, ns, rs, and most of those in es. These form the root by changing s into r, t, or d.

- 1) Nouns in as, ls, ns, rs, and most of those in es, generally change s into t: as, pietas, piety; root, pietat: mons, a mountain; root, mont: ăbies, a fir-tree; root, ăbiet: mīles, a soldier; root, mīlīt. (See REM. 2, below.)
- Rem. 1.—Masculines in as, of Greek origin, insert n before t in the root: as, ělěphās, an elephant; root, ělěphant. Ress. 2.—Many nouns in es change e into i, before t, in the root: as,

milës; root, milit.

2) Nouns in os and us generally change s into r or t: as, flos, a flower; root, flor: săcerdos, a priest; root, săcerdot: virtus, virtue; root, virtut: genus, a kind; root, gener: tempus, time; root, tempor.

Rem.—Most nouns in us change s into r, and u of the nominative becomes ĕ or ŏ in the root, as in these examples.

In

108

Th

PARADIGMS.

1. Cīvĭtās,	f., a state.	2. Ars,	f., art.
(root, cīvitā	[187, 1].)	(root, art	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Cīvītās,	Cīvĭtāt-ēs.	N. Ars,	Art-ēs.
G. Civitat-is,	Cīvĭtāt-ŭm.	G. Art-is,	Art-iŭm.
D. Civitat-ī,	Cīvitāt-ibus.	D. Art-I,	
A. Cīvitāt-ĕm,	Cīvitāt-ēs.	A. Art-ĕm,	Art-ēs.
V. Cīvitās,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	V. Ars,	Art-ēs.
A. Cīvĭtāt-ĕ,	Cīvītāt-ībŭs.	A. Art-ĕ,	Art-ĭbŭs.
3. Mīlĕs, c.	, a soldier.	4. Corpus,	n., a body.
(root, milit [13	7, 1, Rem. 2].)	(root, corpo	r [137, 2].)
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	
N. Mīlĕs,	Mīlīt-ēs.	N. Corpus,	Corpŏr-ă.
G. Mīlĭt-ĭs,	Mīlĭt-ŭm.	G. Corpor-is,	
D. Milit-i,		D. Corpŏr-ī,	•
A. Mīlĭt-ĕm,	Mīlĭt-ēs.	A. Corpus,	•
V. Mīlĕs,	Mīlĭt-ēs.	V. Corpus,	Corpŏr-ă.
A. Mīlĭt-ĕ,	Mīlĭt-ĭbŭs.	A. Corpŏr-ĕ,	Corpor-ibus.

138. The Latin, like every other language, has certain forms of expression peculiar to itself, called *Idioms:** e. g.,

Aliquid † temporis,	something of time	(Lat. Idiom).
inquia temporis,	some time	(Eng. Idiom).
Multum † bonī,	y much of good	(Lat. Idiom).
Martin Dolli)	much good	(Eng. Idiom).
Quantum † voluptatis,	5 how much of pleasure	(Lat. Idiom).
deminant voidpoatis;	how much pleasure	(Eng. Idiom).
Nīhīl stābīlītātīs,	5 nothing of stability	(Lat. Idiom).
*******	no stability	(Eng. Idiom).
Pres Those (4) and no	mion alleritarian and	49

REM.—These (†) are neuter adjectives used as nouns; they govern the genitive by the rule already given (65).

^{*} These should be carefully compared with the corresponding English A table presenting the *Differences of Idiom* between the Latin and English is inserted in this volume for the benefit of the learner See p. 275.

vrt.

1].)

ural.

-ës.

-iŭm.

-ĭbŭs.

-ès.

-ēs.

-ĭbŭs.

7, 2].)

lural.

pŏr-ă.

pŏr-ă.

pŏr-ă.

pŏr-ŭm.

pŏr-ĭbŭs.

pŏr-ĭbŭs.

lage, has

. Idiom).

g. Idiom).

t. Idiom).

g. Idiom).

t. Idiom). g. Idiom).

. Idiom).

g. Idiom).

they govern

ling English in and Eng

ee p. 275.

body.

139. VOCABULARY.

Aliquid, something. Amittěrě, to lose. Avārītiā, ae, avarice. Cīvitās, ātis, f. state. Corpus, oris, n. (corporal). body (corporeal). Elĕphās, antīs, m. elephant. Fĭgūră, ae, figure. Hăbērĕ, to have. Improbus, a, um, bad, wicked. Multum (neut. adj.), much. Multum boni, much good. Multŭm tempŏris, much time. Nihil (indec.), nothing. Perděrě, to waste (perdition) Quantum (neut. adj.), how much? Săcerdos, otis, m. and f. priest, priestess. Stăbilitās, ātis, f. firmness, stability (stability). Tempus, ŏris, n. time. Voluptas, atis, f. pleasure (voluptuous)

140. Exercises.

(a) 1. Avaritia nihil habet voluptātis. 2. Multum tempŏris perdēbat. 3. Figūra nihil habet stabilitātis. 4. Imprŏbi leges civitātis violābunt. 5. Servus elephantis corpus puĕro monstrābat.

6. Improbi virtūtem parvi aestīmant. 7. Milītes urbem custodient. 8. Sacerdotes bonam legem non violābunt. 9. Discipūli multum temporis perdunt. 10. Indocti multum voluptātis amittunt.

(b) 1. The boy will waste much time. 2. They will lose much pleasure. 3. The state will observe its laws. 4. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 5. The king will punish the soldiers.

6. The priests were praising the queen. 7. The good queen will praise the priests. 8. The soldiers will fear the enemy. 9. The good value wisdom highly.² 10. He will laugh at the unlearned. 11. He is losing much time. 12. The unlearned lose much pleasure.

LESSON XXVII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.—Genitives in ium.—Gender.

141. It has already been mentioned (128, Rem.) that some nouns of the third declension have the genitive plural in imm instead of imm. These are,

1) Neuters in e, al, and ar: as, mare, marium; animal, animalium.

 Nouns in is and es of Class III.: as, hostis, hostium; nūbēs, nūbium.

3) All monosyllables in s or x preceded by a consonant: as, urbs, urbium; arx, arcium.

4) Nouns in ns and rs (though in these $\tilde{u}m$ is sometimes used): as, client, clientium; cohors, cohortium.

Rem.—The use of im in words not included in the above classes must be learned from observation.

142. The gender of nouns of the third declension, when not determined by their signification (40, 44), may generally be ascertained from their endings, by the following

RULES FOR GRAMMATICAL GENDER.

1) Masculines.—Most nouns in er, or, os es, increasing in the genitive, and o, except do, go,

The good swill fear hly. 10. is losing usure.

tives in

EM.) that genitive

mărium;

is, hostis,

led by a

se *um* is

ove classes

clension, (40, 44), s, by the

s es, inot do, go, and io, are masculine; e.g., āēr, air; hŏnŏr, honor; flōs, a flower; pēs (gen. pĕdĭs), a foot; sermō, a discourse.

- 2) Feminines.—Most nouns in do, go, io, as, is, ys aus, s preceded by a consonant, x, and es not increasing in the genitive, are feminine; e. g., ărundă, a reed; imāgō, an image; ōrātiō, an oration; aestās, summer; turrīc; a tower; laus, praise; hiems, winter; lex, a law; nūbēs (gen. nūbīs), a cloud.
- 3) Neuters.—Most nouns in a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us, are neuter; e. g., mărĕ, a sea; poēmă, a poem; lāc, milk; ănĭmăl, an animal; flūmĕn, a river; căpūt, a head, &c.

For exceptions, see Table of Genders (579).

143. VOCABULARY

Amīcus, I,* friend (amicable)
Animus, I, mind, soul.
Carpere, to gather, to pluck.
Flos, oris, flower (floral).
Ignavus, ā, um, indolent, cowardly.
Magnitudo, inis, greatness, size (magnitude)

144. Exercises.

(a) 1. Veram animi magnitudinem laudābunt. 2. Christiāni leges bonas non violābunt. 3. Pučri multum temporis perdunt. 4. Puer caput aperiet.

5. Servus urbis portas claudit. 6. Servi dominum suum vindicabunt. 7. Puer patris vocem audit. 8.

[·] Gender, when not given, must be determined by previous rules.

Puĕri patrum voces audient. 9. Lupus haedum dilaniābat. 10. Haedi lupos timent.

(b) 1. The boys are gathering flowers. 2. He will pluck the beautiful flower. 3. The dog will fear the lion. 4. Dogs fear lions. 5. The girl will waste much time. 6. Your fat er will lose much time. 7. The indolent lose much pleasure. 8. The priests are praising the king.

9. The queen will not violate the laws. 10. The king's son was violating the laws of the state. 11. My friend will not disregard my sorrow. 12. Your friends will not disregard your sorrow

LESSON XXVIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other.

- 145. 1) In any noun of the third declension, all the cases, except the nominative and vocative singular (and the accusative sing. in neuters), can be readily formed from each other, by a simple change of the endings: thus, the accusative sing. hŏnōrēm gives (by a change of ending) the dat. hŏnōrē, or the dat. and abl. plur. hŏnōrībūs, or any other case which may be desired.
 - 2) The nominative and vocative singular (and acc. sing. in neuters) can generally be formed from any other case, in some one of the following ways:

dum dila-

. He will fear the

aste much

7. The in-

praising

10. The 11. My

11. My 11 friends

es from

sion, all vocative neuters), her, by a che accue of end-bl. plur. may be

and acc. ed from ollowing a) By dropping the ending of the given case: as, honorem,* Nom. honor.†

Rem. 1.—This applies to many nouns whose root ends in l, n, or r and to a few with the root in it.

Rem. 2.—I is changed before t into ŭ, and before n into ĕ; and ĕ is inserted before r when preceded by t or b (126, 1); e. g., Gen. eŭpĭtis; root, căpĭt; Nom. căpŭt. Gen. flūminis; root, flumin; Nom. flūmēn. Gen. patris; root, patr; Nom. pātēr.

b) By changing the ending of the given case into s, ēs, is, (or for neuters into) ě: as, urbis, Nom. urbs; nūběm, Nom. nūbēs, &c.

REM. 1.—This applies to most nouns of this declension.

REM. 2.—T, d, or r, at the end of the root, is dropped before s, and is changed into \(\vec{e}\); cs or gs will of course be written x; e. g., pi\(\vec{e}\)tatem, Nom. pi\(\vec{e}\)tas (t dropped before s); militiem, Nom. milits (t dropped before s, and i changed into \(\vec{e}\)); r\(\vec{e}\)gem, Nom. rex (regs.—rex).

c) By changing the ending of the given case, together with er or or, as the last syllable of the root, into us: as, generis, Nom. genus.

Rem.—This applies only to a few of those words whose root ends in $\check{e}r$ or $\check{o}r$.

146. The predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun denoting the manner or cause of its action, or the means or instrument employed; e. g.,

Irăm meăm dōnō plācābīt.

(Anger my with a gift he will appease.)

He will appease my anger with a gift.

147. RULE OF SYNTAL. The cause or manner of an

^{*} The acc. sing. is used here, though any other case would do equally well.

[†] The nom. and voc., it will be remembered, are the same in form.

action, and the means or instrument employed, are expressed by the ablative.

REM.—In the above example, dono expresses the means emplyed, and is accordingly in the ablative.

148. VOCABULARY.

Altus, a, um, Catena, ae,	high, lofty chain.	(altitude).
Cingĕrĕ, Complērĕ, Cunctŭs, ă, ŭm,	to surround. to fill all (as a whole)	'complement').
Donŭm, 1, Flumën, ĭnĭs, Glădiŭs, 1,	gift river. sword.	(donation).
Illustrarě,	to illumine to illuminate	(illustrate)
Iră, ae,	anger	(ire). (irascible).
Lux, lūcīs, Mŭliĕr, ĕrĭs,	light woman.	(lucid).
Placarě,	to appease	(placable).

149. Exercises.

(a) 1. Miles regem gladio occidēbat. 2. Regem catēna vinciēbat. 3. Sol urbem magnam sua luce illustrat.
4. Iram dono placant. 5. Cives regis iram donis placābunt. 6. Flumen urbem cingit.

7. Mulier bona epistolas scribit. 8. Agricola urbis portas claudet. 9. Poetārum filiae cantant. 10. Pulchrae pastorum filiae saltābunt. 11. Caii anīmum donis placābunt.

(b) 1. The soldiers will bind the king with chains.

2. The river will surround the beautiful city.

3. The boy surrounds his head with a garland.

4. He will surround his sister's head with garlands.

5. H. will

d, are ex-

s emplyed,

a complet thea

ude).

lement).

ion).

rate)

ible).

).

ble).

m catēna illustrat. is placā-

la urbis 10. Pulm. donis

chains.
3. The
He will
He will

give a beautiful garland to his sister. 6. They will give beautiful garlands to their brothers.

7. They were building a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a high wall. 9. The sun illumines all (things) with its light. 10. The sun fills all (things) with its light. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The blind do not see the light of the sun.

LESSON XXIX.

Adjectives.—Third Declension.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz:

1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).

2) Those which have two (the masc. and fem. being the same).

3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

151. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same declension, gender, and ending. It must, however, be observed,

1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in \tilde{e} or $\bar{\imath}$, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in $\bar{\imath}$ only.

2) That all except comparatives have, in the plural, the nom., acc., and voc. neuter in ia, and the genitive in iam.

CLASS I .- THREE TERMINATIONS.

152. Adjectives of the first class have in the nominative singular the masculine in er, the feminine in es, and the neuter in e.

PARADIGM.

		Acer, sharp.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut
N.	Acĕr,	ācr-ĭs,	acr-ĕ.
G.	Acr-is,	acr-is,	ācr-ĭs.
D.	Acr-r,	ācr-ī,	ācr-ī.
A.	Acr-ěm,	acr-ĕm,	ācr-ĕ.
V.	Acĕr,	ācr-ĭs,	acr-ĕ.
A.	Acr-1,	ācr-ī,	āer-ī.
		PLURAL.	
N.	Acr-es,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iă.
G.	Acr-ium,	ācr-iŭm,	ācr∗iŭm.
D.	Acr-ibus,	ācr-ĭbŭs,	ācr-ībūs.
	Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	acr-iř
V.	Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iă.
A.	Acr-ĭbŭs,	ācr-ībŭs,	ācr-ibus.

CLASS II .- TWO TERMINATIONS.

153. Adjectives of the second class have both the masculine and feminine in is, and the neuter in e, except comparatives,* which have the masculine and feminine in ior, and the neuter in iis.

^{*} The use of comparatives will be illustrated in connection with the comparison of adjectives.

PARADIGMS.

	1. Tris	stĭs, sad.	
SINGUL	AR.	PLURA	L.
Masc. and Fem. N. Trist-ĭs, G. Trist-ĭs,	Neut, trist-ĕ. trist-ĭs.	Masc. and Fem. N. Trist-es,	Neut. trist-iă.
D. Trist-ī, A. Trist-ĕm,	trist-ī. trist-ĕ.	G. Trist-iŭm, D. Trist-ibŭs, A. Trist-ēs,	trist-ĭbŭs. trist-jă.
•	trist-ī.	V. Trist-ēs, A. Trist-ībŭs,	trist-ĭbŭs.
SINGULA		arative), more sa	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Maso. and Fem.	

CLASS III.—ONE TERMINATION.

154. All other adjectives of this declension have only one form in the nominative singular for all genders.

PARADIGMS.

	1. Fēli	x, happy.	
SINGUL. Masc, and Fem.		PLURA	L.
N. Felix, G. Felic-ĭs, D. Felic-ĭ, A. Felic-ĕm, V. Felix, A. Felic-ĕ (ī),	fēlix. fēlīc-īs, fēlīc-ī. fēlix. fēlix. fēlīc-ĕ (ī).	Masc. and Fem. N. Fēlīc-ēs, G. Fēlīc-iŭm, D. Fēlīc-ibŭs, A. Fēlīc-ēs, V. Fēlīc-ēs, A. Fēlīc-ibŭs,	Neut. fēlīc-iā. fēlīc-iūm. fēlīc-ibūs. fēlīc-iā. fēlīc-iā.

the nomiinine in *is*,

ut. 5. 8.

i.

ŭm. bůs. i. bŭs.

both the r in \check{e} , exuline and

ion with the

PARADIGMS,—continued.

	2. Pruden	as, prudent.	-
SINGUL	AR.	PLURA	L.
Masc. and Fem. N. Prūdens, G. Prūdent-ĭs, D. Prūdent-ĭ, A. Prūdent-ĕm, V. Prūdens, A. Prūdent-ĕ (1),	Nout. pradens. pradent-is, pradent-i. pradens. pradens. pradent-ĕ(i).	Masc. and Fem. N. Prudent-ës, G. Prudent-iŭm, D. Prudent-ibus, A. Prudent-ës, V. Prudent-ës, A. Prudent-ibus,	pradent-ibus pradent-ia.

155. VOCABULARY.

Acer, acris, acre,	sharp, severe	(acrid).
Fidēlis, ĕ,	trusty, faithful	(fidelity).
Fortis, ě,	brave	
Gloriă, ae,	glory.	(fortitude).
Măcŭlarĕ,	to blemish, to stain	(massled)
Maximi,	at a very high (price), very hi	(maculate)
Maximi aestimārē,	to prize very highly.	gmy.
Pausanias, ae,	Pausanias, a distinguished Spartan gen	4
Prūdens, entis,	prudent, cautious.	eral.
Turpĭs, ĕ,	base, disgraceful	(turpitude)
Săpiens, entis,	wise.	(turputuse)
Splendens, entis,	shining	(splendid).

156. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābat. 2. Fidēles servi dominos suos vindicābunt. 3. Sol splendens cuncta suā luce illustrābat. 4. Sapientes virtūtem maximi² aestīmant.
- 5. Sapiens leges acres non violābit. 6. Christiāni virtūtem laudant. 7. Boni virtūtem magni aestimābant. 8. Pausanias gloriam turpi morte maculābat. 9. Pausanias magnam belli gloriam turpi morte maculābat.
- (b) 1. The brave soldier will fight. 2. The brave king will conquer the enemy (pl.). 3. The brave will

Nout.

ūdent-iă. ūdent-iŭ**m**.

ndent-ïbŭs. ndent-iä. ndent-iä.

ident-ĭbŭs.

conquer the cowardly. 4. Wise (men) will not stain their glory by a base death.

5. The good prize the laws of the state very highly.³
6. Kind masters do not punish faithful slaves. 7. A prudent (man) will not violate the laws of his country.
8. The prudent do not violate severe laws.

LESSON XXX.

Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension.

157. Adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only: those of the first and second declension are declined in the masculine and neuter like nouns of the second declension, and in the feminine like nouns of the first; those of the third declension are declined throughout like nouns of the third. (See Lesson XXIII.)

158. Endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

		GITLY 1			PLUBAL		A few ; he	ve Sin	g. thue
3.7	2,*	1.	Neut. 2.	Masc.	Fem. 1.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. G.	ī,	ă, ae,		ī, ōrŭm,	ae, ārŭm,	ă. ōrŭm.	ŭs, ĕr, Iŭs,	ă, īŭs,	ŭm. Iŭs.
D. A.		ae,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ī,	Ι,	T.
v.	ĕ, ĕr,†	ă,		ōs, ī,	as, ae,	ă. ă.	ŭm, ĕ, ĕr,	ăm, ă,	ŭm. ŭm.
Α.	ō,	ā,	ő,	īs,	īs,	īs.	Ö,	ā,	ō.

* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in $\check{e}r$, the masc. nom. sing. is generally the root (\check{e} is sometimes dropped): $\check{e}r$, therefore, is not properly a case-ending; it is given merely to show the termination of the nom. and voc. sing., without regard to the root (107).

t See list, 113, REM.

(acrud). (fidelity). (fortitude).

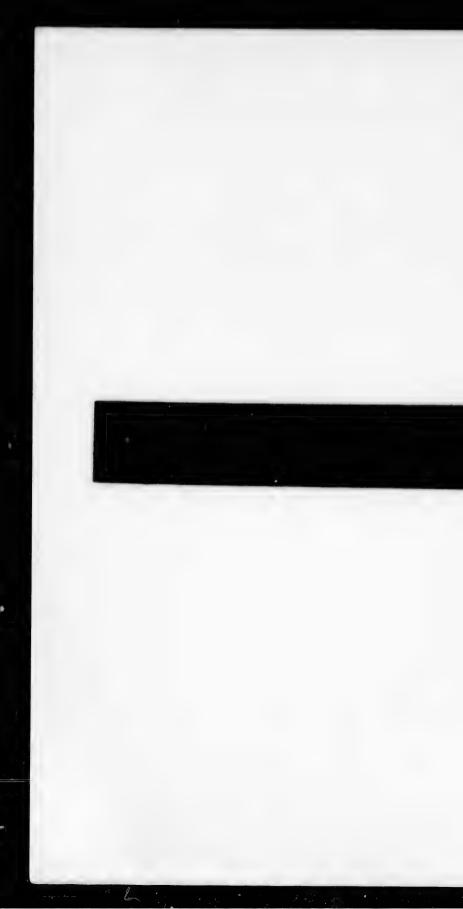
(maculate)

(turpitude)

splendid).

ibat. 2. ol splenvirtūtem

hristiāni mābant. . Pausabat. e brave ave will



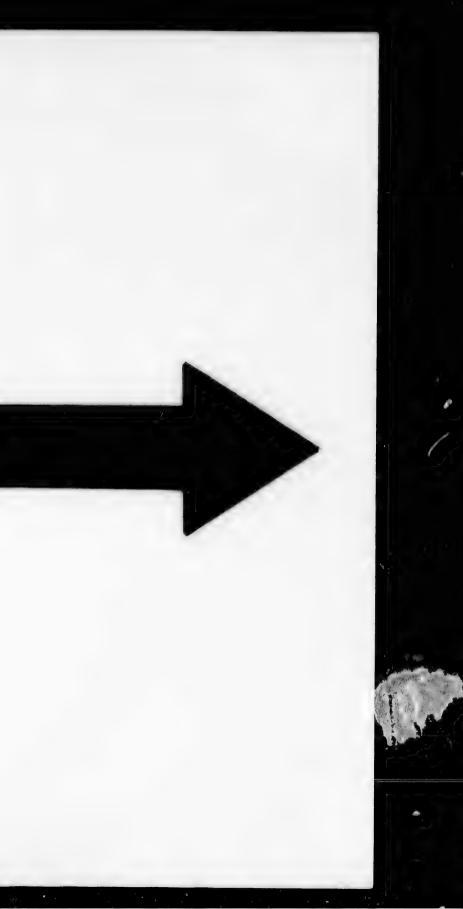
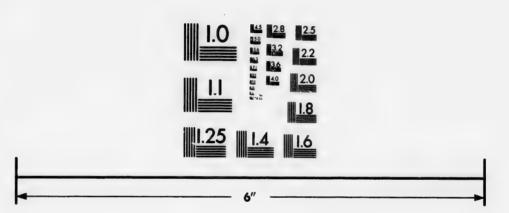


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580 (716) 872-4503

SIM FIME SET OF THE STATE OF THE SET OF THE



159. Endings of adjectives of the Third Declension.

	TH	REE TI	ERM.	TWO	TERM.	CUMPAI	RATIVES.	ONE T	ERM.
	M.	F.	N.	M.& 1	. N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F	. N.
N.	ĕr,	ĭs,	ĕ.	ĭs,	ĕ.	ŏr,†	ŭs.	yariou	13.
	ĭs,	ĭs,	18.	ĭs,	ĭs,	ōr -ĭs,	ör-ĭs.	ĭs.	
D.	ī,	I,	I.	ī,	ĩ.	ōr-ī,	or-î.	ī.	
	ĕm,	ĕm,	ĕ.	ĕm,	ĕ.	ōr-ĕm,	ŭs.	ĕm.ţ	
V.	ĕr,*	ĭs,	ĕ.	ĭs,	ĕ.	ŏr,	ŭs.	like n	om.
A.	ī,	ī, .	1.	ī,	ī.	ōr-ĕ (ōr-ī),	ōr-ĕ (ōr-ī).		
N.	ēs,	ēs,	iă.	ēs,	iă.	or-ēs.	or-ă.	ēs,	iă.
G.			iŭm.			or-ŭm,	ōr-ŭm.	iŭm,	iŭm.
	-		ĭbŭs.			ōr-ĭbŭs,	ōr-ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs
	ēs,	ĕs,				or-es.	ōr-ă.	ēs,	iă.
V.	ēs,	ēs,			iă.	or-es,	ōr-ă.	ēs,	iă.
		ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.	ōr-ĭbŭs,	ōr-ĭbŭs.	ĭbŏs,	ĭbŭs

FOURTH DECLENSION.

160. Nouns of the Fourth Declension have the genitive singular in $\bar{u}s$, and the nominative in $\bar{u}s$ and \bar{u} .

161. In this declension, nouns in $\tilde{u}s$ (with a few exceptions) are masculine, and those in \bar{u} are neuter.

162. The root is found by dropping the nominative ending: as, fructus, fruit; root, fruct: cornu, a horn; root, corn.

163. Nouns in ŭs (of the fourth declension) are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	om. Gen. is, üs, is, uüm,			ŭs,	Abl. ū. ĭbŭs (ūbŭs≬).
--	---------------------------------	--	--	-----	-----------------------------

* The remark on this ending, in adjectives of the first and second declension, is also applicable here (See 158, Rem. 2.)

† The ör here given in connection with the case-endings belongs to the root; in the nom., acc., and voc. of the neut. sing., it is changed into us

t Neut like nom. § This ending is used only in a few words

Clension.

NE TERM.

& F. N.

rious.

n.‡ (e nom. (I).

, iă. m, iŭm. ŭs, ĭbŭs. , iă. , iā. is, ĭbŭs.

he genind \bar{u} .

few exter.

minative
a horn;

are de-

ibŭs§).

second de-

ngs to the

164. Neuters in \bar{u} , though formerly considered indeclinable in the singular, are found to have the genitive in $\bar{u}s$, and are declined with the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing. ū	ūs,	ū,	ū,	u,	ū.
Plur. uă,	uŭm,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*)), uă,	uă,	ībūs (ūbūs*).

PARADIGMS.

1. Fructus	1. Fructus, m., fruit.			n., a horn.
(root, j	ruct.)	-	(root,	corn.)
Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
N. Fruct-ŭs,	Fruct-us.		N. Corn-u,	Corn-uă.
G. Fruct-us,	Fruct-uum.		G. Corn-us,	Corn-uum.
D. Fruct-uī,	Fruct-ibus.		D. Corn-u,	Corn-ĭbŭs.
A. Fruct-ŭm,	Fruct-us.		A. Corn-u,	Corn-uă.
V. Fruct-ŭs,	Fruct-üs.	1	V. Corn-u,	Corn-uă.
A. Fruct-ū.	Fruct-ĭbŭs.	.	A. Corn-u,	Corn-ibus.

165. VOCABULARY.

Currus, us,	chariot.	
Dux, ducis, m. and	f. leader, guide	(dukė).
Et,	and.	
Excruciare,	to torture	(excruciate).
Exercitüs, üs,	army.	
Innocens, entis,	innocent.	
Luctus, as,	grief, sadness.	
Mănŭs, ūs, f.	hand	(manacle)
Mětůs, üs,	fear.	
Nescīrĕ,	not to know, to be ignorant of	
Sīnŭs, ūs,	bosom	(sinuous).
Sullă, ae,	Sulla, a man's name.	

^{*} This ending is used only in a few words.

166. Exercises.

(a) 1. Sinus metum nescit. 2. Luctus anımum excruciat. 3. Rex hostium (141, 2) currus videt. 4. Hostes regis currum audient. 5. Duces exercitui viam monstrabunt. 6. Puella epistolam sua manu scribit.

7. Caius epistolas sua manu scribēbat. 8. Servi Sullae domum evertēbant. 9. Servus domini mortem vindicābit. 10. Pastoris filius mortem non timet. 11. Luctus et metus animum excruciant (612, Rem.).

(b) 1. The innocent (man) knows not fear. 2. The innocent know not fear. 3. The bosom of the innocent knows not fear. 4. The boy's mother will write the letter with her own hand. 5. The father is writing the letters with his own hand.

6. The slave will show the beautiful chariot to his master. 7. The father will avenge the death of his son. 8. Fear tortures the cowardly. 9. Fear does not torture the brave. 10. The cowardly fear death. 11. Brave soldiers do not fear the enemy.

LESSON XXXL

Nouns.—Fifth Declension.

167. Nouns of the Fifth Declension have the genitive singular in $\bar{\epsilon}\bar{\imath}$,* and the nominative in $\bar{\epsilon}s$.

168. Nouns of this declension are feminine, except dies, a day, masculine and feminine in the singular,

^{*} In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. e is long, except in specifiwhere it is short), fidei, and rei (where it is common).

imum exvidet. 4. citui viam

scribit.
Servi Suli mortem
imet. 11.

the innowill write is writing

riot to his th of his does not eath. 11.

genitive

e, except singular,

cept in spai

and masculine only in the plural; and merīdies, midday, masculine.

REM.—The fifth declension comprises only a few words, and of these few, only two,—diēs, a day, and rēs, a thing, are complete in the plural.

169. The root is formed by dropping the nominative ending: as, dies, a day; root, di.

170. Nouns of this declension are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acous.	Voc.	Abl
Sing.	ēs,	ěī,*	ēī,*	ĕm,	ēs,	ē.
Plur.	ēs,	ērŭm,	ēbŭs,	ēs,	ēs,	ēbns.

PARADIGMS.

Rēs, f ., a	thing.	Dies, m. and f., a day.			
(root,	<i>r</i> .)	(ro	ot, di.)		
Singular.	Plural.	Singula	r. Plural.		
N. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	N. Di-ēs	, Di-es.		
G. R-ĕī,	R-ērŭm.	G. Di-ēī,	Di-ērŭm.		
D. R-ěi,	R-ēbŭs.	D. Di-er,	Di-ēbŭs.		
A. R-ĕm,	R-es.	A. Di-ĕn	n, Di-ēs.		
V. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	V. Di-ēs	, Di-ēs.		
A. R-ē,	R-ēbus.	A. Di-ē,	Di-ēbŭs.		

171. VOCABULARY.

Aciës, eī, line of battle.

Aciëm instruërë, to draw up an army in order of battle.

Cōpiae,† arum, forces (copious).

Diës, ēī, day.

* See note on page 78.

† Copiae is of the first declension, plural; the singular is not used with this signification.

Edücěrě,	to lead forth	(educe).
Eměrě,	to purchase.	(eauce).
Equitatus, as,	cavalry.	
Fidēs, ĕī,	faith, one's word	(fidelity).
Instruĕrĕ,	to arrange, to array	(instruct).
Omnis, ĕ,	all, every.	(4,406, 406).
Proximus, a, um,	nearest, next	(proximate)
Rědacěrě,	to lead back	(reduce).
Servarě,	to keep, to observe	(serve).
Spēs, ěī,	hope.	(30,00)1

172. Exercises.

(a) 1. Christiānus fidem suam servat.
2. Boni fidem suam non viŏlant.
3. Dies veniet.
4. Proximo die (88) Caesar copiàs suas reducēbat.
5. Proximo die Caesar aciem instruēbat.

6. Caesar equitātum omnem educēbat. 7. Puellam regis currum vidēbat. 8. Hostium (141, 2) copias vidēbunt. 9. Tullia puellis viam monstrābit. 10. Tullia epistŏlam sua manu scribit.

(b) 1. The king will keep his word. 2. The queen will not break her word. 3. All (men) prize hope very highly.² 4. They do not purchase hope with gold. 5. The wise will not sell hope for gold (122).

6. He prizes his cavalry very highly. 7. The king thinks highly of his whole army. 8. The soldiers will observe the laws. 9. The citizens will observe all the laws of the state. 10. The wise value true greatness of mind very highly. 11. The avaricious value money very highly.

(educe).

(fidelity). (instruct).

(proximate) (reduce). (serve).

Boni fidem eximo die eximo die

7. Puellam
2) copias
ibit. 10.

he queen hope very gold. 5.

The king diers will we all the greatness to money

LESSON XXXII.

Nouns .- Five Declensions .- Greek Nouns .- Gender.

173. TERMINATIONS of Substantives.

				BING	ULAR.			
Dec. I. Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.		
	F.	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.
N.	ă.	ŭs, ĕr, ĭr.	ŭm.	various.		ŭ s.	ũ.	ēs.
G.	ae.	ī.		ĭs.		ūs.		ēī.*
D.	ae.	ő.		ī.		uī.	ũ.	ē1.*
		ŭm.		ĕm (ĭm).	like nom.	ŭm.	ũ.	ĕm.
V.	ă.	ĕ, ĕr, ĭr.	ŭm.	like nom.		ŭs.	n.	ēs.
A.	a.	ō.		ĕ (1).		a.		ē.
				***	BAL.			
N.	ae.	ī.	ă.		ă, or iă.	ūs		
G.	ārŭm.	ōrŭm.		ŭm (iŭm).		uŭm.		ērŭm.
D.	īs.	18.		ībŭs.		ībŭs (ŭbŭs)		ēbŭs.
A.	as.	ōs.		ēs.	ă, <i>or</i> iă.	üs,	uă.	ēs.
v	ae.	ī.	ă.		ă, <i>or</i> iă.	ūs.		ēs.
				ĭbŭs.		ibus (abas).		ēbŭs.

Rem.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek. The only nominative endings not already noticed, are e, as, and es, in the first declension, and os and on in the second.

174. The following are specimens of the declension of Greek nouns.

^{*} See 167, REM.

DECLENSION L

1.	Aenēās	(a man's	name). 2	. Anchīsēs	(a man's name).
----	--------	----------	----------	------------	-----------------

ene-as,

G. Aenē-ae.

D. Aenē-ae,

A. Aenē-am (an),

V. Aenē-ā,

A. Aenē-ā.

N. Anchīs-ēs,

G. Anchis-ae,

D. Anchīs-ae,

A. Anchīs-ēn.

V. Anchīs-ē (a),

A. Anchīs-ē (a).

3. Epitome, an abridgment.

Singular.

Plural.

N. Epitom-ē,

G. Epitom-es,

D. Epitom-ae, A. Epitom-en,

V. Epitom-ē, A. Epitom-ē,

Epitom-ae. Epītom-ārum.

Epitom-is. Epitom-as.

Epitom-ae. Epitom-is.

DECLENSION II.

1. Ilion, n. (name of a city). 2. Delos, f. (name of an

N. Ili-ŏn,

G. Ili-ī,

D. Ili-ō,

A. Ili-ŏn,

V. Ili-ŏn,

A. Ili-ō.

island). N. Del-ös.

G. Del-I.

D. Del-o,

A. Del-on,

V. Děl-ě,

A. Del-o.

DECLENSION III.

1. Pericles (a man's name).

N. Pěrřel-ēs,

G. Pěricl-is,

2. Hērōs, a hero.

Singular.

N. Hērō-s, G. Hero-is,

- Hērō-ēs. Hērō-ŭm.

D. Pěricl-i,

A. Pěrřel-ěm (eă),

V. Pěrřel-ēs (ě),

A. Pěrřel-ě.

D. Hērō-ī,

Hero-ibus. A. Hērō-ĕm (ă), Hērō-ēs (ās).

V. Hērō-s, A. Hero-ĕ,

Hērō-ēs. Hērō-ĭbŭs.

Plural.

m's name).

n, (a), (a).

m.

175. Table of Genders of Nouns as determined by Nom. Ending.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Dec. I.	as and es.	ă and ē.	
Dec. II.	ĕr, ĭr, ŭs (and os*).		ŭm (and on*).
Dec. III.	and o, except do,		ar, ur, and us
Dec. IV.	ŭs.		a.
Dec. V.		ēs.	

(For exceptions see Table of Genders [579]).

176. VOCABULARY.

Accĭpĕrĕ,‡	to receive, to accept.
Achilles, § is,	Achilles, a Grecian hero.
Aenēas, ae,	Aeneas,

a Trojan prince.

Anchises, ae, Anchises, the father of Aeneas.

Ascanius, I, Ascanius, the son of Aeneas.

Carthago, inis, Carthage,
a city in the northern part of Africa.

ne of an

ero.

Plural.

rō-ēs.

rō-ŭm.

rō-ĭbŭs.

r**ō-**ēs (ās). rō-ēs.

o-cs. o-ibŭs.

^{*} The inclosed endings belong to Greek nouns, many of which, being proper names (of men and women), have natural gender.

[†] Preceded by a consonant.

[‡] Accipere forms its imperfect and future tenses like verbs of the fourth conjugation. (See 270, 271.)

[&]amp; Achilles, being a Greek noun, is declined like Pericles (174).

Dido,* as, or onis, Dido,

queen of Tyre and afterwards the foundress of Carthage.

Epitomē, ēs, abridgment

(epitome)

Heros, oïs, hero.
Història, ae, history.
Industria, ae, industry.
Noster, tra, trum, our.

Regnum, I, kingdom, government.

Roma, ae, Rome,

city of Italy, on the river Tiber.

Trojanus, a, um, Trojan.

177. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, urbem condēbat. 2. Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accīpit. 3. Dido Carthaginem condēbat. 4. Epitomen orationis suae scribet.

5. Caesar milĭtes omnes educēbat. 6. Industria multum voluptātis habet. 7. Labōrem suum finiet. 8. Horti nostri multos flores habent. 9. Servus puĕros vocābit.

(b) 1. Aeneas was founding Rome. 2. The son of Anchises was founding Rome. 3. Aeneas, the son of Anchises, was founding the city of Rome (the city Rome). 4. The Trojan hero loves queen Dido. 5. They will kill the Trojan hero.

6. They are reading an abridgment of the history.
7. The soldiers praise Caesar. 8. Aeneas praises his father Anchises. 9. The Trojans fear Achilles. 10. Achilles was slaying the Trojans. 11. The soldier is showing his sword to the boy. 12. They will show their swords to the boys.

^{*} Dido is sometimes declined regularly, as a Latin noun of the third declension, and sometimes has the genitive in ūs, and all the other cases like the nom.

LESSON XXXIII.

Verbs.—Essĕ, to be. Predicate, Essĕ, with a Noun or an Adjective.

178. Esse, to be, is an irregular verb (i. e., it does not belong to either of the four conjugations already noticed), and gives us in the third persons of the present, imperfect, and future tenses, the following

PARADIGM.

	Singul	ar.	Plur	al.
Present. Imperfect. Future.	Est, he, she, Erăt, " " Erĭt, " "	or it is, " was, " will be.	Sunt, they Erant, " Erunt, "	were, will be.

179. The predicate of a proposition is sometimes expressed by the verb esse (to be), with a noun or an adjective; e. g.,

1. Terră est rotundă. The earth is round.

REM. 1.—In this example, the predicate is not simply est, but est rotunda; for the assertion is not that the earth is (i. e. exists), but that the earth is round.

Rem. 2.—The adjective rotunda agrees with the subject terra in gender, number, and case, by the rule already given. (114).

 Plūrīmae stellae solēs sunt. (Very many stars suns are.) Very many stars are suns.

REM.—Here the predicate is soles sunt.

180. Rule of Syntax.—A noun in the predicate after esse is put in the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing.

REM.—In example 2, soles is in the nominative by this rule.

(epitome)

the

dēbat. 2. 3. Dido ionis suae

astria mul-8. Horti os vocābit. he son of the son of (the city Dido. 5.

e history.
raises his
illes. 10.
soldier is
will show

of the third other cases 181. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The adjectives dīgnus, in dīgnus, contentus, praedītus, frētus, and lībēr, take the abiative; e. g.,

Virtus parvo contentă est. (Virtue with little content is.)
Virtue is content with little.

Res.—Parvo in this example is a neut adj. used as a noun; it is put a the ablative after contentd, by the rule just given.

182. VOCABULARY.

Arbör, öris, f.	tree	(arbor).
Beatus, a, um,	happy	(beatitude)
Candidus, a, um,	white	(candid).
Contentus, a, um,	content, contented.	
Culpă, ae,	blame, fault	(culpable).
Dīgnŭs, ă, ŭm,	worthy	(dignity).
Essĕ,	to be.	
Est,	is, it is.	
Făcĕrĕ,*	to do, to make.	
Florere,	to flourish.	
Frētus, a, um,	relying on.	
Indīgnŭs, ä, ŭm,	unworthy	(indignity).
Laus, dis,	praise	(laud).
Līběr, ĕră, ĕrŭm,	free	(liberty).
Nēmő (ĭnis,†)	nobody, no one.	
Nix, nĭvĭs,	snow.	
Nunquăm,	never.	
Parvum (neut. adj.),	little, a little.	
Praeditus, a, um,	endued with.	
Quăm,	how.	
Quăm multī, ae, ă,	how many.	
Sempěr,	always.	
Virēs, vīriŭm, plur. of vīs,	strength.	
Vītă, ae,	life ot	(vital).

^{*} This verb, together with some others of the third conjugation, has the imperfect and future like verbs of the fourth conjugation.

[†] The genitive neminis and ablative nemine are not in good use.

dīgnŭs, in , take the

oun; it is put

erbor). beatitude) candid).

ulpable). lignity).

ndignity). aud). iberty).

ntal). njugation, has

rood use.

183. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Nix est candīda.
 2. Bonus est beātus.
 8. Boni sunt beāti.
 4. Sapientes parvo contenti sunt.
 5. Servus laude dignus est.
 6. Patris mei servus laude indīgnus est.
- 7. Caius patriam auro vendēbat. 8. Caius, homo vita indīgnus, patriam auro vendet. 9. Quam multi indīgni luce sunt! 10. Arbor florēbat. 11. Balbus multa laude florēbat.
- (b) 1. No-one is always happy. 2. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. 3. The avaricious are not contented. 4. Caius is not free from blame. 5. Caius is unworthy of praise.
- 6. Balbus praises my fidelity. 7. Balbus, a man endued with great virtue, was praising my fidelity. 8. Balbus does much good. 9. Caius is unworthy of life. 10. Caius, a man unworthy of life, does no good. 11. Caius, relying on his strength, does not fear the lion. 12. The slaves are not free from blame. 13. Christians are contented with little.

LESSON XXXIV.

Verbs.—Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with Esse in the Predicate.

184. An infinitive mood (with the words belonging to it) (9) may be used as a noun, and thus become the subject of a verb. When thus used it is in the neuter gender (44, 3), and of course taker the adjectives in agreement with it in the same gender; e. g.,

Diff Ielle est judicare.

(Difficult (it) is to judge.)

It is difficult to judge, or, To judge is difficult.

REM.—Here jūdicarë (to judge) is the subject of the proposition, for it is that of which the predicate difficile est (is difficult) is affirmed. It is in the nominative case, and subject of the verb est, and the adjective difficile agrees with it.

185. When the noun in the predicate after esse does not denote the same person or thing as the subject, it is put in the *genitive*; e.g.,

Christiani est neminem violare.

(Of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.)

It is the duty (or part) of a Christian to wrong nobody.

Rem. 1.—In this example the subject is nëminëm viölarë, and the predicate, Christiani est.

REM. 2.—Combining articles 180 and 185 we have the following

186. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate, after the verb esse, is put,

- In the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., Cĭeĕrð ĕrăt consul, Cicero was consul.
- In the genitive when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., Christiani est neminem viòliro, it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.

187. In rendering into English, when a genitive follows any part of the verb esse (as est, ĕrăt, ĕrĭt, &c.), such a substantive as duty, part, mark, business, &c., must be supplied.

		English 1	diom.	Latin Idio:n.		
lt	is th	e part)			
	46	duty				
	4	business	of a wise man.	It is of	a wise man.	
	4	mark	1			
	4	character	}			

188. VOCABULARY.

Difficilis, ĕ, difficult. Errare, to err. Făcilis, ĕ, easy (facility). Fiděm violarě, to break one's word. Hūmānŭs, a, um, human, natural to man. Magnum est, it is a great thing. Peccare, to sin, to do wrong. Turpis, č, base, disgraceful (turpitude). to offend against, to wrong, to Viölarĕ, (violate). break a law, one's word, &c.

189. Exercises.

(a) 1. Humānum est peccāre. 2. Humānum est errāre. 3. Turpe est fidem suam violāre. 4. Patris est filium suum docēre. 5. Regis est regnāre.

6. Matris est filias suas docēre. 7. Servi est viam monstrāre. 8. Turpe est poētae domum evertēre. 9. Matres filias laudant. 10. Boni est fidem servāre. 11. Impii est fidem violāre.

Rem. 1.—In English, when an infinitive mood is the subject of a proposition, the pronoun it is used before the verb is; hence, in translating such sentences into Latin, this pronoun it, which represents, as it were, the coming infinitive or clause, must be omitted.

Rum. 2.—After it is, such a substantive as part, duty, business, mark.

Rum. 2.—After it is, such a substantive as part, duty, business, mark must be omitted in translating into Latin.

(b) 1. It is a great (thing) not to fear death. 2. It is easy to err. 3. It is (the duty) of a Christian to keep (his) word. 4. It is (the part) of a wise (man) to keep the laws.

5. It is disgraceful to neglect a son. 6. It is natural-to-man to prize money very highly. 7. It is the mark of an unlearned man to think little of wisdom. 8. It is the slave's business to shut the gates of the city. 9. It is difficult to shut the gates of the city. 10. A

ficult.

roposition, for It) is affirmed. b *est*, and the

r essĕ does subject, it

g nobody.

ollowing predicate,

hen it deg., Cĭcĕrð

ferent perniněm viðng nobody. enitive folerit, &c.), siness, &c.,

lio:n.

ise man.

good citizen will observe the laws of his country. 11. It is the part, of a good citizen to observe the laws of his country.

LESSON XXXV.

Verbs.—Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations.

190. The tenses which we have thus far used, viz., the present, imperfect, and future, represent the action of the verb as continuing (11), i. e., as not completed. There are also three tenses for completed action, viz.:

1) The *Perfect*, which represents the action as completed in present time, i. e., as just completed; e. g., ămāvĭt, he has loved.

2) The Pluperfect, which represents the action as completed in past time; as, ămāvērăt, he had loved.

3) The Future Perfect, which represents the action as completed in future time; as amaverit, he will have loved.

191. The tenses for *completed* action are not formed from the same root as those for action *not completed*, but from another called the *second root*. This is formed in various ways.

192. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the second root is formed by adding $\bar{a}v$, \check{u} ,* and $\bar{v}v$, respectively, to the root † of the verb; e.g.:

^{*} A very few verbs of the second conjugation add ev, which may be regarded as the full form for which u is a contraction (the e being dropped, and v changed to u).

[†] This we will now call the 1st root, to distinguish it from the 2d.

e laws of

190-192

econd, and

nsed, viz., the action completed. on, viz.: action as

action as t, he had

the action āvĕrĭt, he

t formed completed, is formed

ugations, ad $\bar{v}v$, re-

nich may be being drop-

n the 2d.

			First Root.	Second Root.
Conj.	I.	Amārĕ,	ăm,	$\breve{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{m}\bar{a}v$.
Conj.	II.	Mŏnērĕ,	mŏn,	mönŭ.
Conj.	IV.	Audīrĕ,	aud,	$\operatorname{aud} \overline{\imath v}$.

193. In verbs of all the conjugations, the third persons singular of the tenses for completed action are formed by adding to the second root the following endings:

Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect
ĭt,	ĕrăt,	ĕrĭt.

PARADIGMS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Amāre, to love: 1st root, $\bar{a}m$; 2d root, $\bar{a}m\bar{a}v$. Perfect. Amav-it, he, she, or it has loved (or loved).*

Pluperf. Amav-ĕrăt, " " had loved.

Fut. Perf. Amav-ĕrĭt, " " will have loved.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Monēre, to advise: 1st root, mon; 2d root, monu.

Perfect. Monu-it, he, she, or it has advised (or advised).*

Pluperf. Monu-erat, " " had advised.

Fut. Perf. Monu-erit, " " shall have advised.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Audīre, to hear: 1st root, aud; 2d root, audīv.

Perfect. Audiv-it, he, she, or it has heard (or heard).*

Pluperf. Audīv-ĕrăt, " " had heard.

Fut. Perf. Audīv-ĕrĭt, " " shall have heard.

194. In any regular verb, the third persons *plural*, in the tenses for completed action, are formed by simply

^{*} The perfect in Latin corresponds sometimes to our perfect indefinite, and sometimes to our perfect definite (perfect with have); hence. ***Amavit may be translated either he has loved, or he loved.

inserting n before t in the ending of the third person singular (35), except in the perfect, where it must be changed into $\bar{\epsilon}runt$; e. g.,

_					
			Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Fut. Perfect.
Coni	I. {	Sing.	Amāv-ĭt,	ămāv-ĕrăt,	ămāv-ĕrĭt.
conj.		Plur.	Amāv-ĭt, Amāv-ērunt,	ămāv-ĕrant,	ămāv-ĕrint.
Coni	TT	Sing.	Mŏnu-ĭt,	mönu-ĕrăt,	mŏnu-ĕrĭt.
conj.	11.	II. Sing. M	Mŏnu-ērunt,	monu-erant	mŏnu-ĕrint.
Coni	T 177	Sing.	Audīv-ĭt,	audīv-ĕrăt,	audīv-ĕrĭt.
conj.	Τ 4.	Plur.	Audīv-ĭt, Audīv-ērunt,	audīv-ĕrant,	audīv-ĕrint.

195. Vocabulary.

to estimate, to value.	
to plough	(arable).
to hear	(audible).
to tear in pieces.	(
to swear.	
to praise	(laudable.)
to show.	,
to appease	(placable.)
to bury.	4
to keep, to observe.	
to terrify, to frighten.	
	to plough to hear to tear in pieces. to swear. to praise to show. to appease to bury. to keep, to observe.

196. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puer juravěrat. 2. Puěri juravērunt. 3. Agricola aravěrit. 4. Servi aravěrint. 5. Vulpes puěros terruit. 6. Vulpes puěros terruērunt. 7. Poētae sapientiam parvi aestimāvit.

8. Veram virtūtem magni aestimaverat. 9. Christiānus pecuniam parvi aestimāvit. 10. Christiāni est pecuniam parvi aestimāre. 11. Magnam poētae sapi-

^{*} The learner will readily form the second root from the first, by adding the endings here given.

l person «

195, 196.

u. Perfect.

āv-ĕrint.

āv-ĕrint.

inu-ĕrit.

inu-ĕrint.

līv-ĕrit.

līv-ĕrint.

rable). udible).

udable.)

lacable.)

3. Agripuĕros tae sapi-

Christiciāni est ae sapi-

e *first*, by

entiam parvi aestimavěrant. 12. Pater filium sepelīvit. 13. Puěri patrem sepelivěrant.

(b) 1. The boy has heard a voice. 2. The boys had heard their father's voice. 3. The slave had shown the way to the shepherd. 4. They will have shown the house to their master.

5. Caius had praised his son. 6. He has praised his slaves. 7. The lion has torn the horse in pieces. 8. The fox had frightened the boy. 9. They had valued wisdom at a low price. 10. It is easy to keep (one's) word. 11. It is difficult to appease anger. 12. He has appeased the boy's anger with a gift.

LESSON XXXVI.

Third Conjugation.—Class I.—Second Root the same as the First.

197. Most verbs of the third conjugation may be divided into two classes, viz.:

1) Those which have the second root the same as the first.

2) Those which form it by the addition of s.

198. The first class comprises most verbs of this conjugation which have the first root in a vowel, together with a few which have it in a consonant; e. g.,

Suĕrĕ, to sew: 1st root, sŭ; 2d root, sŭ. Dēfendĕrĕ, to defend: "dēfend; "dēfend.

199. The manner in which the third persons of the tenses for completed action are formed from the second root, has already been explained. See 193, 194.

PARADIGM.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Dēfendĕrĕ, to defend: 1st root, dēfend; 2d root, dēfend.

Perfect. Pluperfect. Future Perfect.

Dēfend-ĭt, dēfend-ĕrăt, dēfend-ĕrĭt.

Dēfend-ērunt, dēfend-ĕrant, dēfend-ĕrint.

200. The *Preposition* is the part of speech which expresses the various relations of objects; * e. g.,

Rex për urbëm ambülābăt.

(The king through the city was walking.)

The king was walking through the city.

REM.—In this example, per, through, is a preposition.

201. Partial Rule of Syntax.—Some prepositions govern the accusative, and some the ablative.

REM. 1.—Whenever a preposition occurs in the exercises, its particular case will be given in the vocabularies.

REM. 2.—The accusative, urbëm, in the above example, is governed by the preposition per.

202. VOCABULARY.

Aedif isium, I, building, edifice.

Ambŭlārě, av, to walk.

Annuere, annu, to assent, to give assent.

Concilium, I, council, meeting. Conditio, onis, condition, terms.

Constituere, constitu, to arrange, to appoint (constitute).

Defendere, defend, to defend. Dormīre, īv, to sleep

to sleep (dormant).
to set on fire, to burn (incendiary)

Lěgið, önis, legion, body of foot-soldiers.

Per (prep. with acc.), through. Proelium, I, battle.

Incenděrě, incend,

^{*} It will be remembered, however, that certain relations are sometimes expressed by the cases of nouns (63, 80, 86).

Vestis, is.

(vest).

VERBS.

ot, d*ēfend. Perfect*. l-ĕrĭt.

-ĕrint.

which ex-

у.

preposiative.

s, its particu-

, is governed

constitute,

dormant). incendiary.)

s are some

Prīvātūs, ă, um, private, personal. Rěliquus, ă, um, remaining, the rest (relic). Respuěrě, respu, to reject. Romani (adj. pl.), Romans. Romanus, a, um, Roman, belonging to Rome. Suĕrĕ, sŭ, to sew, to stitch. (timid). to fear Timēre, ŭ,

garment

203. Exercises.

(a) 1. Privātum aedificium incendit. 2. Relĭqua privāta aedificia incendĕrant. 3. Puellae vestem suērunt. 4. Patres annuĕrant. 5. Milĭtes urbem defendĕrant. 6. Romāni urbem defendērunt.

7. Relĭquas legiones in acie constituit. 8. Ursi in antro dormivērunt. 9. Agricŏla per urbem ambulāvit. 10. Non respuit conditionem Caesar. 11. Diem concilio constituērunt. 12. Diem concilio constituerit. 13. Servus viam monstraverat. 14. Puer mortem timuit. 15. Humānum⁶ est mortem timēre. 16. Impii⁷ est fidem violāre.

(b) 1. The king has appointed a day for the battle.

2. They had appointed a day for the council.

3. The soldiers defended the building.

4. They had defended the poet's house.

5. The queen assented.

6. The king had not assented.

7. The good boy will walk in the city. 8. The poet's daugnter had walked through the great city. 9. They will set the house of the poet on fire. 10. It is the duty' of a good man to defend the house of a friend. 11. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. 12. They will not defend the house of the avaricious. 13. They will not reject the condition. 14. Caesar had rejected the terms. 15. He will have arranged his sol-

diers in order of battle. 16. They had arranged their soldiers in order of battle.

LESSON XXXVII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

204. VERBS of the third conjugation which have the first root in a consonant, generally form the second from it by the addition of s; e. g.,

Carpere, to pluck; 1st root, carp; 2d root, carps. Rēpěrě, to creep: reps.

Rem.—When b stands at the end of the first root, it is changed into p before s in the second; e.g.,

Scribere, to write; scrib; scrips (not scribs). Nūběrě, to marry; nūb; nups (not nubs).

205. An adjective modifying the subject is sometimes used in Latin instead of an adverb modifying the verb; e.g.,

Portăm *învitus* claudet.

(Lat. Id.) The gate unwilling he will shut (adj.). (Eng. Id.) He will shut the gate unwillingly (adv.).

206. VOCABULARY.

Carpere, carps, to pluck, to card, to gather. Dēglūběrě, dēglups, to flay. Lana, ae, wool. Lūděrě, lūs, to play Mălŭs, ă, ŭm, bad. Ovis, is, sheep. Scriběrě, scrips, to write. Uvă, ae,

grape.

red their

207. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius epistölas sua manu scripsit.
2. Puella epistölam sua manu scripsērat.
3. Puĕri lanam carpsērunt.
4. Malus pastor deglupsit oves.

5. Facile est * lanam carpere. 6. Pater meus fidem servaverat. 7. Turpe est fidem suam non servare. 8. Sapientis est * virtūtem magni aestimāre. 9. Virtūtem

magni aestimaverint.

(b) 1. The boy has written a letter in his own hand.
2. The girl had written letters in her own hand.
3. They wrote letters.
4. The girl has plucked a flower.
5. The shepherd's daughter had gathered flowers with her own hand.

6. The boy will pluck the grape. 7. It is easy to pluck the grape. 8. The girls were gathering flowers. 9. They had gathered flowers. 10. It is easy to gather flowers. 11. The slaves will card the wool. 12. They will have carded the wool. 13. In winter the bear will sleep in the cave. 14. In summer the girls will play in the garden.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

208. When a k-sound (c, g, h, qu) stands at the end of the first root, it generally unites, in the second, with the s which is added, and forms x (i. e. cs, gs, hs, or qus becomes x); e. g.,

formed by

have the second

carps. reps.

anged into

is someying the

(adj.). (adv.).

her.

^{*} What is the subject of est? (608, 2.)

Cingĕrĕ, to surround; cing, cinx (cings).
Tĕgĕrĕ, to cover; tĕg, tex (tegs).
Trahĕrĕ, to draw; trah, trax (trahs).
Cŏquĕrĕ, to cook, cŏqu, cox (coqus).

a) In a very few verbs gu and v must be treated as k-sounds in the formation of the second root; e. g.,

Exstinguërë, to extinguish; exstingu, extinx. Vīvere, to live; vīv, vix.

b) Fluërë, to flow, and struërë, to build, together with their compounds, have the second root in x, as if the first ended in a k-sound, as probably it did originally.

c) The k-sound is sometimes dropped before s in the second root; e. g.,

Spargěrě, to scatter; sparg, spars. Mergěrě, to merge; merg, mers. Parcěrě, to spare; parc, pars.

209. VOCABULARY.

food. Cibus, I. to surround. Cingere, cinx, to fill Complere, ev, (complement). to cook, to bake, to ripen. Cŏquĕrĕ, cox, Dīcĕrĕ, dix, to sav (diction). Hăbere, habu, to have (habit). Illustrarě, av, to illuminate, to enlighten. lie, falsehood Mendacium, 1, (mendacious). Multă (neut. pl.) many (things). Multus, a, um, much, pl. many. Pallium, I, cloak (to palliate). Peccare, av, to sin, to do wrong. Prūdentia, ae, prudence. Simulatio, onis, assumed appearance, pretence (dissimulation Stultītiā, ae, folly (stultify).

ings). gs). cahs). oqus).

treated as

extin*x*.

ogether with x, as if the originally. ore s in the

rs. rs. s.

omplement).

iction). abit).

rendacious).

palliate).

issimulation ultify). Summüs, ă, ŭm, highest, greatest (summit).
Tegere, tex, to cover.
Violare, av, to violate, to break (violation).

210. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puer dixit. 2. Caius, homo vita indignus, dixerat. 3. Puellae dixerunt. 4. Flumen urbem cinxit. 5. Flumina urbes cinxerunt. 6. Amīcus amīci corpus suo pallio texit.

7. Prudentiam simulatione stultitiae texerat. 8. Summam prudentiam simulatione stultitiae texerunt. 9. Christiani non est mendacio culpam tegere. 10. Turpe est peccare. 11. Turpe est mendacio culpam tegere. 12. Sol cuncta sua luce illustraverat. 13. Caius leges civitatis violaverit.

(b) 1. The woman has surrounded her head with a garland. 2. The slave has surrounded his head with a garland. 3. They had surrounded their heads with garlands. 4. The boy had said nothing. 5. The girl cooked the food. 6. They had cooked the food.

7. The king had surrounded the city with a wall.
8. They will surround the city with a wall.
9. They covered the fault with a lie.
10. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.
11. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak.
12. The slave had said many (things).
13. The sun fills all things with its light.
14. It is the business of the slave to cook food for his master.
15. It is never useful to lose time.
16. He will lose much pleasure.
17. How much pleasure will he lose?

th

of

th

LESSON XXXIX.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

211. WHENEVER a t-sound (d or t) stands at the end of the first root, it is generally dropped before s in the second, and the preceding vowel, if short, is lengthened; e. g.,

Clauděrě, to shut; claud, claus (clauds). Amittěrě, to lose; āmitt, amīs (amitts). Dīvīděrě, to divide; dīvīd, dīvīs (divids).

212. When a limiting noun denotes some characteristic or quality of the noun which it limits, it is always accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; e. g.,

Puĕr exĭmiae pulchrĭtūdĭnĭs. Puĕr exĭmiā pulchrĭtūdĭnĕ. A boy of remarkable beauty.

213. Combining the above with the rule already given (65), we have the following

RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; as, Lătīnus rex, Latinus the king.

2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; as, Rēgis fīlius, the king's son: except

(a) When it denotes character or quality, it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; as, Puer eximiae pulchritudinis;

cond Root

at the end re s in the is length.

lauds). mitts). ivids).

characteris always her in the

e already

meaning

it denotes tīnŭs *rex*,

different the king's

it is then her in the ritudinis:

or, Puer eximia pulchritudine, a boy of remarkable beauty.

214. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning, and the like, take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g.,

Caium proditionis accusant. (Caius of treachery they accuse.) They accuse Caius of treachery.**

REM.—Here proditionis is in the genitive, by the above rule.

215. (Eng. Id.) To condemn to death.

(Lat. Id.) To condemn of the head (capitis).+

216. VOCABULARY.

Accūsare, av, to accuse. Ambitus, us, bribery. Amittere, amis, to lose. Căpitis (gen.), of the head, to death (capital). Clauděrě, claus, to shut (close). Damnarě, av, to condemn. Făcies, ēī, face, appearance. Furtum, 1, theft (furtive). Ingěniům, I, talent, ability (ingenious). Luděrě, lus, to play. Nunquam. never. Proditio, onis, treachery. Saltarě, av, to dance. Vir,t viri, man, hero.

^{*} This genitive is not properly governed by the verb, but by a noun understood; thus, if we supply crimins with proditions in the example, the sense will not be changed; as, 'They accuse Caius with the charge of treachery.'

[†] We may suppose that it was originally, "to condemn to the loss of the head;" or, "to the punishment of the head."

[†] Homo, G. hominis, and vir are both man: but homo is man as opposed to other animals; that is, a human being. whereas vir is man

fir

217. Exercises.

(a) 1. Portas urbis clausĕrant.
2. Caius multum tempŏris amīsit.
3. Caius, vir summo ingenio, multum tempŏris amīsit.
4. Balbum ambĭtus accusavĕrant.
5. Puĕri in prato lusērunt.

6. Balbum capītis damnābunt. 7. Christiāni est avaritiam damnāre. 8. Caium accusāvit. 9. Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditionis accusaverat. 10. Facile est saltāre. 11. Difficile est iram placāre. 12. Facile est pueri animum dono placāre. 13. Ursus in antro dormīvit. 14. Hieme ursi in antris dormiunt. 15. Nunquam utile est peccāre.

(b) 1. The slave has shut the gates of the city. 2. They will accuse the slave of treachery. 3. Caius had accused the slaves of theft. 4. He will have lost much time. 5. Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, has praised the fidelity of the slave. 6. Balbus, a man endued with the greatest virtue, has accused the boy of theft.

7. They have accused Balbus of bribery. 8. They had accused Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, of bribery. 9. The sun had illuminated all things with its light. 10. The sun will have filled the world with its light. 11. They have written the letters with their own hands. 12. The queen had written a letter with her own hand. 13. He covered his face with his cloak. 14. They had covered their faces with their cloaks.

as opposed to woman.—When men means human beings, men generally (including both sexes), it should be translated by homines.—When man is used contemptuously, it should also be translated by homo, because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a human being.—When man is used respectfully, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by vir

s multum enio, mulaccusavě-

istiāni est 9. Caium, vērat. 10. acāre. 12. . Ursus in dormiunt.

ce city. 2. Caius had lost much virtue, has a man enthe boy of

8. They virtue, of hings with world with their letter with a his cloak.

men generally
.—When man
o, because that
man being.—
aculd he trans

LESSON XL.

Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity— Radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).

218. REGULAR Endings of the Second Root of Verbs.

Conj. I.	Conj. II. u (or ëv).	Conj. III. s, or like 1st root.	Conj. IV.
	4 (0, 0,).	5, 07 IINO 181 1001	***

REM.—The above table presents only the regular endings of the second root; there are, however, several irregularities in the formation of that root which we must notice.

219. Some verbs in each * of the four conjugations form the second root by lengthening the vowel of the first; e. g.,

Juvāre, to assist;	jŭ v ,	jūv.
Vĭdērĕ, to see;	vĭd,	vīd.
Eděrě, to eat;	ĕd,	$\bar{\mathbf{e}}\mathbf{d}$.
Vĕnīrĕ, to come;	vĕn,	vēn.

1) In the third conjugation,

a) If the first root has a, the second will have \(\bar{e}\).

b) Mand n are often dropped before a final mute; e.g.,

Căpĕrĕ, to take; căp, cēp (ă changed to $\bar{\epsilon}$).

Frangĕrĕ, to break; frang, frēg $\begin{cases} (n \text{ dropped, and } a \text{ changed to } \bar{\epsilon}). \end{cases}$ Rumpĕrĕ, to burst; rump, rūp (m dropped).

Vincĕrĕ, to conquer; vinc, vīc (n dropped).

^{*} In the first and fourth conjugations, jūvārē, lūvārē, vēnīrē, and their compounds, are probably the only instances.

(utility).

220. VOCABULARY.

Brāchiŭm.	*	0.000
bracmum.	1,	arm.

Căpĕrĕ, cēp,	to	take.	to	receive.
--------------	----	-------	----	----------

Cibus, I,	food.
Eměrě, ěm,	to buy.
Exercitus, us,	army.
Foedus, ĕrĭs,	treaty
TI WWW.	

r occurs, errs,	licaty	(Jeaeras).
Frangërë, freg,	to break	(fragile).

Gallŭs, i,	s a	Gaul, an	inhabitant	of	Gaul,
Ganus, i,	7	77			

	(
Lăvārĕ, lāv,	to wash	(lave).

Měl, mellis,	honey
mei, meins,	попеу
Mīles, itis.	soldier

,,	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
Quiă,	because.

Sempĕr,	always.	
Utĭlĭs, ĕ,	useful	
Věnīrě vàn	to some	

venne, ven,	ro come.	
Vidērē, vid,	to see	(visible).
Vinculum, I,	chain.	

221. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus manus lāvit. 2. Puĕri manus lāvĕrant. 3. Agricŏla exercĭtum vīdit. 4. Milĭtes vēnērunt. 5. Caius brachium suum frēgĕrat. 6. Quantum voluptātis cēpērunt!

7. Nunquam utile est foedus rumpëre. 8. Nunquam utile est fidem violāre, quia semper est turpe. 9. Facile est puerōrum animos donis placāre. 10. Turpe est foedera negligēre. 11. Galli negligēbant foedera. 12. Nemo semper labōrat. 13. Culpas suas simulatione virtūtis texit. 14. Multurn voluptātis cepērant. 15.

[₩] The gen. nēmīnīs and abl. nēmīnē are not in good use.

Multum voluptātis amisĕrant. 16. Quantum cibi amisērunt!

(b) 1. Caius has broken his arm. 2. They had broken their arms. 3. The king had broken the treaty. 4. The Gauls had broken the treaty. 5. Caesar had seen the army. 6. The girls will have seen the queen. 7. Caesar conquered the Gauls. 8. The Gauls did not conquer Caesar.

9. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. 10. It is difficult to conquer the Gauls. 11. It is not easy to conquer the enemy. 12. He had appeased Balbus. 13. They will break their chains. 14. They had broken their chains. 15. It is easy to break (one's) arm. 16. They are losing much money. 17. They had lost much money. 18. They were losing much pleasure. 19. They will condemn Balbus to death (215). 20. He had conquered his enemies.

LESSON XLI.

Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity— Reduplication.

222. A FEW verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations, form the second root by prefixing to the first their initial consonant, with the following vowel or with e; e. g.,

Dărĕ, to give; d, dĕd.

Mordērĕ, to bite; mord, mŏmord.

Currĕrĕ, to run; curr, cŭcurr.

Rem.—The radical vowel is also sometimes changed; as, cadere, to fall; 2d root cecid (a changed to i).

(federal). (fragile).

(lave).

(military).

(utility).

(visible).

anus lāvē ilītes vēnē . Quantum

Nunquam pe. 9. Fa-. Turpe est edera. 12. simulatione erant. 15.

od use.

223. VOCABULARY.

Ab (prep. with abl.), from. Auctumnus, I, autumn. Barbă, ae, beard. Color, oris, color. Currere, cucurr, to run. Dărĕ, dĕd, to give. Finis, is, m. or f. end. Humerus, I, shoulder. Mordere, momord. to bite. Mūtārě, āv, to change. Nox, noctis, night. Pendere, pepend, to hang (intrans.). Per (prep. with accus.) through. Săgittă, ae, arrow. Tondere, totond, to shear, shave.

224. Exercises.

(a) 1. Equus per urbem cucurrit. 2. Sagittae ab humero pependerunt. 3. Nox proelio (648) finem dedit. 4. Malus pastor oves non totondit. 5. Malus pastor deglupsit oves; non totondit.

6. Boni pastōris est tondēre oves, non deglubēre.
7. Pastōres agricŏlas risērunt. 8. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordĕrit. 9. Boni canis non est oves mordēre. 10. Servus portas urbis clausĕrit. 11. Puĕri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. 12. Lusciniae colōrem mutābunt. 13. Auctumno lusciniae colōrem suum mutavĕrint.

(b) 1. The dog has bitten the sheep. 2. Your dog had bitten the girl. 3. My horses have been running (have run). 4. Balbus has given his dog to your son. 5. They had given their dogs to the shepherd.

6. The wolf had bitten the sheep. 7. The shepherd will shear his sheep. 8. A shepherd does not shear

his sheep in the winter. 9. The wolves have bitten my dog. 10. Caius will shave (his) beard. 11. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. 12. The dog has bitten the wolf. 13. They wrote the letter. 14. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. 15. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. 16. The girls will walk in the garden. 17. The queen was walking through the city. 18. They have surrounded the city with walls. 19. They have offended-against the laws of their country.

ıtrans.).

ave.

Sagittae ab (648) finem 5. Malus

deglubëre.
oni pastöris
oves mor11. Puëri
orem mutaum mutavë-

Your dog en running your son.

shepherd not shear

LESSON XLII.

Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity— Second root after the analogy of other conjugations.

225. A FEW verbs in each conjugation form the second root according to the analogy of one or more of the other conjugations.

1) A few in the first conjugation follow the analogy of the second; e. g.,

Micare, to glitter: 1st root, mic; 2d root, micu.

2) A few in the second follow the analogy of the third; e. g.,

Rīdēre, to laugh; 1st root, rīd; 2d root, rīs (rids). Lūgēre, to mourn; " lūg; " lux (lugs).

3) A few in the third follow the analogy of the second or fourth; e. g.,

Cŏlĕrĕ, to till; 1st root, cŏl; 2d root, cŏlŭ. Pĕtĕrĕ, to seek, "pĕt; "pĕtīv.

 $\mathbf{B}_{\mathbf{i}}$

4.

lu: ca

sei

in

lār

ma

rer

 $_{
m the}$

ter.

mo ing

mo

11.

12.

4) A few in the fourth follow the analogy of the second or third; e. g.,

Aperīre, to open; 1st root, aper; 2d root, aperu. Vincīre, to bind; "vinc; "vinx (cs).

Rem.—Verbs of the third conj. which have the 1st root in sc, together with a few others, generally change the consonant-ending of the 1st root into v in the 2d; as, crescers, to increase; 1st root, cresc; 2d, crev. Most of these verbs are supposed to have been derived from pure roots.

226. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g.,

Caius annum unum vixit. (Caius year one lived.)
Caius lived one year.

227. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a town (91) where any thing is or is done, if of the first or second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive; otherwise, in the ablative; e. g.,

- 1. Caius annum unum Cortonae vixit. Caius lived one year at Cortona.
- 2. Caius annum unum Tīburē vixit. Caius lived one year at Tībur.

REM.—In these examples, Cortonae and Tiburs are names of towns; the first is put in the genitive, because it is of the first declension, and sing. number, and the second in the ablative, because it is of the third declension.

228. VOCABULARY.

Amittere, amīs, Annūs, ī, Apērīrē, apērū, Bienniūm, Castīgārē, av,

to lose.
year.
to open, to uncover.
two years, space of two years.
to chastise.

229.7

logy of the

ăpĕrŭ. vinx (cs).

in sc, together t-ending of the lst root, cresc; e been derived

e is gener-

t town (91) t or second e genitive;

ĭt.

mes of towns; irst declension, because it is of

o years.

Invitus, ă, um,
Lngere, lux,
Mănere, mans,
Matrona, ae,
Romă, ae,
Tibur, uris,
unwilling.
to grieve, mourn, weep for.
matron.
Ratron.
Rome,
a city of Italy, on the Tiber.
Tibur,
a town in Latium, in Italy.

the whole, the entire.

229. Exercises.

Totus, ă, um (g. ius),

(a) 1. Balbus multos annos Romae mansērat.
2. Biennium Carthagine mansērant.
3. Mater luxērit.
4. Matronae luxērunt.
5. Brutum Romānae matronae luxērunt.
6. Pastores agricolas risērunt.
7. Puĕri capita aperuērunt.

8. Dominus servi sui epistolam aperiet. 9. Dominus servi sui epistolas aperuerat. 10. Aliquid temporis invītus (205) amittet. 11. Christiāni est neminem violāre. 12. Neminem violāvit. 13. Biennium Romae manēbit. 14. Biennium Carthagine manēbunt.

(b) 1. They remained at Tibur many years. 2. Caius remained at Carthage for the space-of-two-years. 3. He has opened his father's letter. 4. They had opened the letters at Carthage.

5. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter. 6. He wrote the letters at Rome. 7. They are mourning for 'their son. 8. They have been in mourning two years. 9. The girls wore mourning for 'their mother. 10. My father values industry very highly. 11. Balbus has accused the shepherd's son of theft. 12. They have accused Caius of bribery.

LESSON XLIII.

Subjunctive Mood.

230. The Subjunctive Mood represents the action or state expressed by the verb, not as a fact, but simply as a possibility, wish, or conception of the mind; e. g.,

1.	Scrībăt,	he may write, may he write, let him write.

2. Vēnīt ŭt scrībăt, { he has come that he may write, he has come to write.

REM.—Scribat in the above examples is in the present subjunctive.

231. The present subjunctive, when not preceded by $\tilde{u}t$, generally expresses either a wish (to be translated by may he), or a command (to be translated by let him, &c.).

232. If the wish or command is to be expressed negatively, $n\bar{e}$ (never $n\bar{o}n$) must be used with the subjunc-

tive; e.g.,

Në putët, let him not think.

233. The tenses of the subjunctive mood* are the present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.

234. The endings of the third persons sing. of the

tenses of the subjunctive are as follows:

		Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect	Pluperfect
		(1st root.)	(1st root.)	(2d root.	(2d root.)
Conj.	I.	ĕt,	ārĕt,	ĕrĭt,	issět.
Conj.	II.	ĕăt,	ērĕt,	ĕrĭt,	issět.
Conj.		ăt,	ĕrĕt,	ĕrĭt,	issĕt.
Conj.		ĭăt,	īrĕt,	ĕrĭt,	issĕt.

^{*} The subjunctive has no futures.

REM.—The third persons plural of the several tenses of the subjunctive are formed by inserting n before t in the ending of the third singular

235. The English signs corresponding to the Latin subjunctive are as follows:

> Present, may or can. Imperfect, might, could, would, or should. Perfect, may have. Pluperfect, might, could, would, or should have.

236. Partial Paradigm of the Subjunctive Mood.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Qia.	
wing	ular.

Pres. Am-ět.

he may or can love.

Imp. Am-ārět,

he might, &c. love.

Perf. Amāv-ĕrĭt.

he may have loved.

Plup. Amāv-isset,

he might, &c. have loved.

Plural.

Am-ent, they may or can love.

Am-arent,

they might, &c. love.

Amāv-ĕrint,

they may have loved.

they may advise.

they might, &c. advise.

they may have advised.

they might, &c. have advised.

Amāv-issent.

Mon-eant,

Mŏn-ērent.

Monu-erint,

they might, &c. have loved.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Pres. Mon-eat,

he may or can advise.

Imp. Mon-eret.

he might, &c. advise.

Perf. Monu-erit,

he may have advised.

Plup. Mŏnu-issĕt,

Mŏnu-issent, he might, &c. have advised.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Pres. Rěg-ăt,

he may rule.

Imp. Rěg-ěrět,

he might, &c. rule.

Perf. Rex-ĕrĭt,

he may have ruled.

Plup. Rex-isset,

he might, &c. have ruled.

Reg-ant.

they may rule.

Rĕg-ĕrent,

they might, &c. rule.

Rex-ĕrint.

they may have ruled

Rex-issent,

they might, &c. have ruled.

; e. g.,

action or

ut simply

ray write,

subjunctive. receded by translated

ted by let

ressed nege subjunc-

d* are the

ing. of the

Pluperfect.

(2d root.) issĕt.

issět.

issět.

issět.

PARADIGM-continued.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Singular,

Pres. Aud-iăt, he may hear.

Imp. Aud-īrēt, he might, &c. hear.

Perf. Audīv-ĕrĭt,

he may have heard.

Plup. Audīv-issēt, he might, &c. have heard. Plural.

Aud-iant,
they may hear.

Aud-irent.

they might, &c. hear

Audiv-ĕrint.

they may have heard.

Audiv-issent,

they might, &c. have heard.

237. Exercises.

(a) 1. Scribat. 2. Ne scribant. 3. Servus claudat portas. 4. Puĕri ne claudant portas. 5. Cantet puella.
6. Ludant Puĕri. 7. Pater scribĕret. 8. Scripsissent.
9. Filium suum sepelīret. 10. Sepeliat filium.

11. Placet puĕri anı̆mum. 12. Ne multa discat. 13. Fidem suam servavis. 14. Fidem suam servavissent. 15. Fidem suam invı̇̃ti servavērunt. 16. Puĕrum in urbe sepelivērunt. 17. Patres filios suos docuĕrant.

(b) 1. Let the slaves shut the gates of the city. 2. Do not let the slave see the letter. 3. Let him write a letter. 4. He might have come. 5. They may have read the book. 6. He would have broken his arm. 7. Do not let the dog bite the boy.

8. Balbus has kept his word. 9. He would have broken his word. 10. Let him appease his father's anger. 11. He remained at Carthage many years. 12. They would have remained at Rome two years. 13. They had remained in the city one year. 14. Let fathers teach their sons.

LESSON XLIV.

Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose.

238. The present and imperfect subjunctive in Latin are often used to express a purpose.

239. The infinitive often denotes purpose in English, but never in Latin; accordingly, in expressions of purpose, the idioms of the two languages are entirely distinct from each other, and should be carefully studied.

240. Eng. Id. { I have come to see you. I came to see you.

Lat. Id. { I have come that I may see you. I came that I might see you.

241. When a purpose is to be expressed affirmatively, $\tilde{u}t$ is used with the subj., when negatively, $n\bar{e}$; e. g.,

- 1. Balbum rogat ut puerum doceat.

 (Balbus he asks that the boy he may teach.)

 He asks Balbus to teach the boy.
- Balbum rögät nē puĕrum döccät. He asks Balbus not to teach the boy.

242. The subjunctive expressing purpose must be in the present tense; unless the verb on which it depends is in a past tense (imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect), and then it must be in the imperfect.

REM.—The perfect definite (193, REM.), or perfect with have (which denotes that the action has been done in a period of time still present), is considered a present tense, and followed by the present subjunctive.

ard.

ve heard

tet puella. ripsissent.

iscat. 13. vavissent. verum in cuĕrant.

e city. 2.
him write
may have
his arm.

ould have is father's any years. two years. 14 Let

243. EXAMPLES.

- 1. Věnít ŭt portās claudăt.

 (He is coming that the gates he may shut.)

 He is coming to shut the gates.
- 2. Vēnīt (indef.) ŭt portās claudĕrĕt. (He came that the gates he might shut.) He came to shut the gates.
- Vēnĭt (def.) ŭt portās claudăt.
 (He has come that the gates he may shut.)
 He has come to shut the gates.

REM. 1.—In the 1st example the subjunctive is in the present tense, because the verb věnět, on which it depends, is present; while in the 2d, it is in the imperfect, because its verb, věnět (came), is in the perfect indefinite.

REM. 2.—In the 3d example the subjunctive is m the present, because the verb venit (has come) is in the perfect definite, and, though in form the same as in the 2d example, really expresses different time.

REM. 3.—The Latin perfect, when followed by the present subjunctive, must be translated into English with the sign have, as in example 3.

244. VOCABULARY.

Compărare, av,	to procure, to raise, to levy.	
Discere, didic,	to learn.	
Eděre, ēd,	to eat	(edible).
Evertěre, ēvert,	to overthrow, to pull down.	
Lěgěrě, lēg,	to read	(legible).
Plūrimus, a, um,	very much or great, pl., very me	
Quiescĕrĕ, quiēv,	to rest, be quiet	(quiescent).
Rŏgārĕ, āv,	to ask, to entreat.	
Vivěrě, vix.	to live	(vivid).

245. Exercises.

(Construe ut and the subjunctive by the infinitive.)

(a) 1. Lěgit ut discat. 2. Lēgit* ut discat. Lēgit ut discert (242). 3. Edit ut vivat. 4. Edit ut vivěret.

^{*} See 243, Rem. 3.

t.)

ıt.)

t.)

resent tense, at; while in came), is in

ent. because d, though in les different

subjunctive, example 8.

(edible).

(legible).

(quiescent).

(vivid).

t. Lēgit t vivĕret. Servi veniunt ut portas claudant. 6. Veniat servus ut portas urbis claudat. 7. Caium rogat ut veniat.

8. Venit ut copias compăret. 9. Romee plurimi vivunt ut edant. 10. Cantent puellae. 11. Quiescant servi. 12. Veniat Caius ut epistolam sua manu scribet. 13. Venerat Caius ut Balbi animum donis placaret.

(b) 1. He has come to read (241) your letter. 2. They came to read your book. 3. They will come to accuse the judge of theft. 4. The boy will come to give his sister a garland.

5. Let the slaves shut the gates. 6. Do not let your dog bite the boy. 7. They had come to raise forces. 8. The enemy will think little of your forces. 9. He had come to surround the girl's bead with a beautiful garland. 10. Let boys prize wisdom very highly.

LESSON XLV.

Persons of Verbs. - Indicative Mood. - First Conjugation.

246. It will be remembered that verbs have three persons (12): these are distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *Personal Endings*.

247. The three persons may be formed in the perfect indicative (which is somewhat irregular) by changing *it*, of the third person singular, into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

Singula r.			Plural.		
let Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	lst Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
ī,	istī,		ĭmŭs,	istĭs,	ērunt (or ērē)

248. In all the tenses* of the indicative and subjunctive moods, except the perfect indicative, the three persons may be formed by changing t of the third singular into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

	Singular.		Plural.		
lst Pers. m, ŏ,	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers. mŭs.	2d Pers.	3d Pers. nt.

a) The ending o, for the first person singular, belongs to the indicative present, future perfect, and, in the first and second conjugations, to the future. The vowel which stands before t in the third person is dropped before o in the first person, except in the present of the second and fourth conjugations (and in a few verbs of the third); e. g.,

3d Person.

1st Person.

Pı	res.	1st	Conj.	Amăt, he loves,	ămŏ (ă dropped), I love.
44		2d	"	Monet, he advises,	moneo (e not dropped), Iadvise.
"		3d	46	Rěgit, he rules,	rěgő (i dropped), I rulc.
64	١.	4th	46	Audit, he hears,	audio (i not dropped), I hear.

b) The ending m, for the first person singular, belongs to the indicative imperfect, pluperfect, and, in the third and fourth conjugations, to the future, and to the subjunctive throughout all its tenses. In the future of the third and fourth conjugations, the vowel \check{e} , which stands before t in the third person, is changed into \check{a} before m in the first person; e. g.,

	3d Person.	1st Person.
Imperf.	Amābāt, he was loving,	ămābām, I was loving.
Pluperf.	Amāvērāt, he had loved,	ămāvērām, I had loved.
Elut 2d Comi	D = == 4 1 - == 22 - == 2 -	

Fut. 3d Conj. Rěgět, he will rule,

" 4th " Audiět, he will hear, audiăm, I will hear.

^{*} We of course speak only of the active voice, as the passive has not yet been noticed

and subthe three third sin-

3d Pers.

ongs to the cond conjuore t in the cept in the a few verbs

love. d), I advise. rulc.

), I hear.

ongs to the th conjugal its tenses. vel ĕ, which efore m in

oving. loved. le. ar.

seive has not

c) In the present and future tenses of the indicative, if i stands before t in the third singular, it is changed into iu in the third plura, in the fourth conjugation, and into u in the other conjugations; e. g.,

Singular.

Fut. 1st Conj. Amabit, he will love, " 2d "

Pres. 3d " Regit, he rules,

" 4th " Audit, he hears.

ămābunt, they will love. Monebit, he will advise, monebunt, they will advise.

regunt, they rule. audiunt, they hear.

249. The vowel before the personal endings mus and tis, is long in the imperfect and pluperfect of the indicative, and in all the tenses of the subjunctive, except the perfect, in which it is common* (long or short).

250. Paradigm of the Indicative Mood—First Conjugation.

Amāre, to love: 1st root, am; 2d, amāv.

PRESENT (1st root).

Singular.

1. Am-ö, I love. 2. Am-as, thou lovest.

3. Am-ăt, he loves.

Plural.

1. Am-āmus, we love.

2. Am-ātīs, ye or you love.

3. Am-ant, they love.

IMPERFECT (1st root).

Am-ābăm, I was loving. Am-ābās,

thou wast loving. Am-ābăt, he was loving. Am-abamus, we were loving. Am-abatis.

ye or you were loving. Am-abant, they were loving.

FUTURE (1st root).

Am-abo, I shall love. Am-abis, thou wilt love.

Am-abit, he will love.

Am-abimus, we shall love. Am-ābītīs, ye or you will love.

Am-abunt, they will love.

^{*} The vowel is also generally considered common before these ext ings in the future perfect; the old grammarians, however, make it long.

PARADIGM—continued.

PERFECT	197	moot)
PERFECT	(24	TOOL 1.

Amāv-ī,

I loved or have loved.

Amav-istī,

thou lovedst or hast loved.

Amav-it, he loved or has loved. Amāv-ĭmŭs, we loved or have loved.

Amāv-istis,

ye or you loved or have loved.

Amāv-ērunt (ērĕ), they loved or have loved.

PLUPERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ĕrăm, I had loved.

Amāv-ĕrās,

thou hadst loved. Amav-ĕrăt, he had loved. Amav-ĕramus, we had loved.

Amāv-ĕrātīs, ye or you had loved.

Amav-ĕrant, they had loved.

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root).

Amav-ĕrö,

I shall have loved.

Amāv-ĕrĭs,

thou wilt have loved.

Amay-erit, he will have loved.

Amāv-ĕrīmŭs,
we shall have loved.

Amav-ĕritis,

ye or you will have loved.
Amav-ĕrint, they will have loved.

251. VOCABULARY

Ad (prep. with acc.),

Dūcĕrĕ, dux,

Hesternüs, ă, ŭm, Incolumis, ĕ,

Lēgātŭs, ī, Mittěrě, mīs,

Praemittere, Prīmus a, um,

ă, ŭm,

of yesterday. safe, uninjured.

ambassador to send.

(legate). (mission).

(duke).

to send before.

first

to.

to lead

(prime).

252. Exercises.

(a) 1. Violābas legem. 2. Violavisti leges. 3. Balbum vocāvi. 4. Hesterno die Balbum vocavīmus. 5.
Urbem servāvi. 6. Cives incolūmes servavīmus. 7.
Caium, summo ingenio (213) virum, ambītus accusaverātis. 8. Balbum capītis damnabītis.

9. Legātos ad Caesărem mittunt. 10. Prima luce omnem equitātum praemīsit. 11. Christiānus nemīnem violābit. 12. Nemĭnem violavisti. 13. Multos annos regnābis. 14. Balbus parvo (181) contentus est. 15. Servus multa laude dignus est.

(b) 1. You have kept your word. 2. I will not break my word. 3. You (pl.) have violated the laws of the state. 4. You (pl.) prize money very highly. 5. We shall condemn avarice. 6. I have never accused the queen. 7. We shall accuse the priest of treachery.

8. They appeased the anger of Caesar. 9. We will appease your anger. 10. Caesar thought very highly of his army. 11. We will send ambassadors to the king. 12. It is the duty of a Christian to keep his word. 13. It is the part of a wise man to be content with little.

LESSON XLVI.

Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pronouns.

253. PARADIGM of the Indicative Mood.

PRESENT (1st root), am, is, &c., loving.					
	Am-ās, Am-ăt;	Conj. II. Mŏn-eŏ, Mŏn-ēs, Mŏn-ēt; Mŏn-ēmīs, Mŏn-ētis, Mŏn-ent.	Conj. III. Rěg-ð, Rěg-īs, Rěg-īt; Rěg-ĭmŭs, Rěg-ĭtřs, Rěg-unt.	Conj. IV. Aud-iö, Aud-is, Aud-it; Aud-imus, Aud-Itis, Aud-Itis, Aud-iunt.	

ed. ve loved

oved.

oved.

ved.

loved. ve loved.

e).

).

ıe).

3. Balaus. 5. us. 7. accusar

PARADIGM—continued.

	,					
	IMPERFECT (1st root), was, did.					
			Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
	S.		Am-ābām, Am-ābās,	Mŏn-ēbăm, Mŏn-ēbās,	Rĕg-ēbăm, Rĕg-ēbās,	Aud-iēbām, Aud-iēbās,
1			Am-ābăt;	Mŏn-ēbăt;	Rěg-ēbăt;	Aud-iēbăt;
	P		Am-ābāmus,	Mon-ebamus,	Rěg-ēbamus,	
			Am-ābātīs,	Mon-ebatis,	Rěg-ebatis,	Aud-iebātis,
1		5.	Am-ābant.	Mŏn-ēba <i>nt</i> .	Rĕg-ēbant.	Aud-iēba <i>nt</i> .
			Futu	RE (1st root)	, shall or wi	<i>ill</i> .
1	S.	1.	Am-abŏ,	Mŏn-ēbŏ,	Rĕg-ăm,	Aud-iăm,
1			Am-ābis,	Mŏn-ēbis,	Rěg-ēs,	Aud-ies,
1		3.	Am-ābit;	Mon-ēbit;	Rěg-ět;	Aud-iĕt:
1	Р.	1.	Am-ābī <i>mŭs</i> ,	Mŏn-ēbimus,	Rĕg-ēmŭs,	Aud-iemus,
١			Am-ābĭ <i>tīs</i> ,	Mŏn-ēbĭtĭs,	Rěg-ētis,	Aud-iētīs,
١		3.	Am-ābu <i>nt</i> .	Mŏn-ēbunt.	Rěg-ent.	Aud-ient.
			\mathbf{P}_{1}	ERFECT (2d 1	oot), have.	
	S.	1.	Amav-ī,	Mŏnu-ī,	Rex-ī,	Audīv-ī,
ľ			Amav-istī,	Monu-istī.	Rex-istī,	Audīv-istī.
I			Amāv-it;	Mŏnu-ĭt;	Rex-ĭt:	Audīv-it:
1	P.	1.	Amāv-imus,	Monu-imus,	Rex-imus,	Audīv-imus.
١		2.	Amav-istis,	Mŏnu-istīs,	Rex-istis,	Audīv-istīs,
ı		3.		Monu-ërunt or	Rex-ērunt or	Audiv-ērunt o
ı			ērĕ.	ērĕ.	ērē.	ĕrĕ
١	٠		PLU	JPERFECT (20	d root), had.	
	S.	1.	Amāv-ĕrăm,	Mŏnu-ĕrăm,	Rex-ĕrăm,	Audīv-ĕrăm,
۱		2.	Amāv-ĕrās,	Mŏnu-ĕrās,	Rex-ĕrās,	Audīv-ĕrās,
I		3.	Amāv-ĕrăt;	Monu-erat;	Rex-ĕrăt;	Audīv-ĕrăt;
	P.	1.	Amāv-ĕrāmus,	Mŏnu-ĕrā <i>mus</i> ,	Rex-ĕrāmŭs,	Audīv-ĕrāmus,
1			Amāv-ĕrā <i>tīs</i> ,	Mŏnu-ĕrā <i>tīs</i> ,	Rex-ĕrātis,	Audīv-ĕrā <i>tīs</i> ,
ł		3.	Amāv-ĕrant.	Mŏnu-ĕra <i>nt</i> .	Rex-ĕrant.	Audīv-ĕrant.
			FUTURE PEI	RFECT (2d ro	ot), shall or	will have.
1	S.	1.	Amav-ĕrŏ,	Mŏnu-ĕrð,	Rex-ĕrŏ,	Audīv-ĕrŏ,
-			Amāv-ĕris,	Monu-ĕris,	Rex-ĕrĭs,	Audīv-ĕrīs,
1		3.	Amav-ĕrĭt;	Mŏnu-ĕrĭt;	Rex-ĕrĭt;	Audīv-ĕrĭt;
			Amāv-ĕrīmus,	Monu-erimus,	Rex-ĕrīmŭs,	Audīv-ĕrīmus,
-		2.	Amav-ĕrĭiis,	Monu-eritis,	Rex-ĕrĭtis,	Audīv-ĕrĭtīs,
1		3.	Amāv-ĕrint.	Mŏnu-ĕrint.	Rex-ĕrint.	Audīv-ĕrint.

PRONOUNS.

254. Pronouns are words which supply the place of nouns; as, $\bar{e}g\bar{o}$, I; $t\bar{u}$, thou, &c.

255. Pronouns are divided into two classes; viz.,

1) Substantive Pronouns; as, ěgŏ, tū, &c.

2) Adjective Pronouns; as, hīc, this; ille, that.

256. Substantive Pronouns are three in number, viz.: ego, I (which is of course of the first person); tū, thou (second person); and suī, of himself (third person). These from their signification are often called Personal Pronouns.

257. Substantive Pronouns are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.	
1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person,
N. E gŏ, <i>I</i> .	Tū, thou.	
G. Mei, of me.	Tuī, of thee.	§ Sui, of himself, herself
	me. Tibl, to or for thee.	(itself.
Mē, me.	Ta dan	Sibi, to himself, &c.
7.	Te, thee.	Sē, himself.
1. Mē, with, &c. 1	ne. Te, with thee.	Se, with himself.
	PLURAL.	
Nos, we.	Vos, ye or you.	
Nostrum, of	Vestrum,	~
or Nostri, of	us. or Vestri, of you.	Sui, of themselves.
Nobis, to us.	Vobīs, to you.	Sibf, to themselves.
Nos, us.	Vos, you.	Sē, themselves.
	Vos, O ye or you.	,
Nobis, with us.	Vobis, with you.	Sē, with themselves.

258. As the ending of the verb shows the person of its subject, the nominative of pronouns is seldom expressed as the subject, except for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast*.

ăm, ēs, iĕt; ēmŭs, ētĭs,

mj. IV.

iebăm,

iēbā*s*, iēbă*t* ;

iēbā*mŭs*,

iēbā*tīs*, iēba*nt*.

v-ī, v-istī, v-it; v-īmŭs, v-istĭs, v-ērŭnt or ĕ**r**ĕ.

v-ĕrām, v-ĕrās, v-ĕrāt; v-ĕrāmūs, v-ĕrātīs, v-ĕrant.

v-ėrð, v-ëris, v-ërit; v-ërimus, v-ëritis, v-ërint. To

259. VOCABULARY.

Agĕrĕ, ēg,	to drive, to lead, to do	
De (prep. with abl.)	from, concerning.	
Dēdĕrĕ, dĕdĭd,	to surrender.	
Dēmonstrārě, āv,	to show, to demonstrate	(demonstration).
Egŏ,	I.	
Errarĕ, av,	to err	(error).
Exponěrě, exposů,	to set forth, to explain	(expose).
Făcĕrĕ, (iŏ), fēc,	to make, to do, to act.	
Gratiă, ae,	gratitude, favor, pl. thanks.	
Gratias agere,	to give thanks.	
Iter, itineris, n.	journey, route	(itinerant).
Jūdicarė, av,	to judge	(judicature).
Occultarĕ, av,	to conceal	(occultation).
Poscěrě, poposc,	to demand.	
Rēs, rĕī,	thing, affair, subject.	
Sĕd,	but.	
Sensus, üs.	feeling, perception	(sense).

260. Exercises.

thou, you.

(a) 1. Rem omnem exposui. 2. Errāvi. 3. Ego de meo sensu judico. 4. Ego misi viros: puĕros tu misisti. 5. Hesterno die Balbum ad me vocāvi. 6. Vos judicavistis. 7. Nos judicabimus. 8. Mihi gratias egistis.

9. Caius itinera nostra servābat. 10. Fidem suam invīti servavērunt. 11. Agricolae est laborare. 12. Caius, ut demonstravimus, itinera nostra servābat. 13. Caesar servos poposeit. 14. Nos servos non poposeimus.

(b) 1. We have read your letters. 2. You were playing, but I was writing. 3. He has given me a beautiful book. 4. He will give you (to you) thanks. 5. We shall thank you. 6. I had called the boy to me.

259, 260.

onstration).

r). ose).

erant). icature). Itation).

e).

3. Ego puĕros tu pcāvi. 6. Mihi gra-

are. 12. servābat.

ere playa beautianks. 5. by to me. 261.] SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—FOUR CONJUGATIONS. 123

7. Yesterday you called the girls to you. 8. We have never opened your letters.

9. I have kept my word. 10. You have never broken your word. 11. They have accused you of theft. 12. The judge has condemned us to death (215). 13. We will not accuse you of treachery. 14. We shall not remain in the city.

LESSON XLVII.

Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations.

261. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Mood.

i	PRESENT (1st root), may or can.					
	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.		
	Am-ēm, Am-ēs, Am-ēt; Am-ēmŭs, Am-ētšs, Am-ent.	Mŏn-eām, Mŏn-eās, Mŏn-eāt; Mŏn-eāmūs, Mŏn-eatis, Mŏn-eant.	Rĕg-ām, Rĕg-ās, Rĕg-āt; Rĕg-atis, Rĕg-atis, Rĕg-ant.	Aud-iam, Aud-ias, Aud-iat; Aud-iamus, Aud-iamus, Aud-iant.		
	IMPERFECT (1st root), migi	ht, could, wor	ild, or should.		
	Am-ārēm, Am-ārēs, Am-ārēt; Am-ārēmūs, Am-ārētīs, Am-ārent,	Mön-ērēm, Mön-ērēs, Mön-ērēt; Mön-ērēmüs, Mön-ērētis, Mön-ērent.	Rěg-ěrěm, Rěg-ěrěs, Rěg-ěrět; Rěg-ěremus, Rěg-ěretis, Rěg-ěrent.	Aud-īrēm, Aud-īrēs, Aud-īrēt; Aud-īrēmus, Aud-īrētīs, Aud-īrētīs,		
	PERFECT (2d root), may have.					
	Amav-ĕrim, Amav-ĕris, Amav-ĕrit; Amav-ĕrimus, Amav-ĕritis, Amav-ĕrint.	Mŏnu-ĕrim, Mŏnu-ĕris, Mŏnu-ĕrit; Mŏnu-ĕrimus, Mŏnu-ĕritis, Mŏnu-ĕrint,	Rex-ĕrim, Rex-ĕris, Rex-ĕrit; Rex-ĕrimüs, Rex-ĕritis, Rex-ĕrint.	Audīv-ērīm, Audīv-ērīs, Audīv-ērīs; Audīv-ērīmūs, Audīv-ērītīs, Audīv-ērīnīs.		

PARADIGM-continued.

PLUPERFECT (2d root), might, could, would, or should have.					
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.		
Amav-issēm, Amav-issēs, Amav-issēt; Amav-issēmūs, Amav-issētīs, Amav-issent.	Mŏnu-issēm, Mŏnu-issēs, Mŏnu-issēt; Mŏnu-issēmŭs, Mŏnu-issētīs, Mŏnu-issent.	Rex-issēm, Rex-issēt; Rex-issēmus, Rex-issētis, Rex-issētts, Rex-issent.	Audīv-issēm, Audīv-issēt; Audīv-issēt; Audīv-issēmūs, Audīv-issētīs, Audīv-issent.		

Rem.—It will be observed that throughout the subjunctive the 1st person sing. ends in m.

262. The subjunctive with ut is used to express a result; e. g.,

Tantum est frīgus ut nix non liquescat.

The cold is so great that the snow does not melt.

263. The subjunctive with $\check{u}t$, denoting result, generally depends upon a proposition which contains some word signifying so, such, so great, &c.; thus, in the above example, it depends upon tantum (so great, or such).

264. Hence, in turning English into Latin, that after so, such, so great, &c., must be translated by ŭt, and the verb which follows must be put in the subjunctive. (See example above.)

265. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the present, perfect definite, or future, it must be put in the present tense, unless it represents its action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb; and then it must be in the perfect; e. g.,

1. Tantă est puĕrī industriă ŭt multă discăt.
The boy's industry is so great that he learns much.

or should

Conj. IV. Iv-isačm, Iv-isačs, Iv-isačt; Iv-isač*tis*, Iv-isač*tis*, Iv-isac*tis*,

active the 1st

express a

ot melt.

sult, genetains some the above or such).

, that after it, and the bjunctive.

a verb in be put in on as comverb; and

it. .rns mu**ch**. Nesció quid dixerit.
 I do not know what he has said.

REM.—In the first example, the subjunctive discat (learns) is in the present tense, because the time of its action is the same as that of est (pres.) on which it depends, and in the second example discret (he has said) is in the perfect, because it represents its action as completed at the time denoted by nescio (i. e. pres.).

266. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect, it must be put in the nperfect tense, unless it represents its action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb, and then it must be in the pluperfect, e. g.,

1. Tantă *ĕrăt* puĕrī industriă ŭt multă *discĕrĕt*.

The boy's industry was so great that he learned much.

2. Nescīvī quĭd dixissĕt. I did not know what he had said.

Rem.—The imperf. disceret represents its action as not completed, while the pluperfect dixisset represents its action as completed.

266. A few adjectives in Latin are often used merely to specify some particular part of the nouns to which they belong; e. g.,

In summo on the highest mountain (Lat. Id.).

monte, on the top of the mountain (Eng. Id.).

In medis in the middle waters (Lat. Id.).

aquis, in the middle (or midst) of the waters (Eng. It.).

268. VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, Alpium, Conservare, av.

Alps.

Conservarě, av, i rangěrě, freg,

to preserve to break.

(conservative).

,		_
Frigus, čris,	cold	(frigid).
Гьт,	there.	
Liquescere, licu,	to melt	(liquid).
Mědiŭs, ă, ŭm,	middle, midst of, middle of (267).	
Narě, av,	to swim.	
Nondum,	not yet.	
Placis, is, m.,	fish.	
Summus, a, um,	highest, top (267)	(summit),
Tantus, a, um,	so great.	

269. Exercises.

(a) 1. Venit ut me audiat.
2. Veni ut vos audiam.
8. Venērunt ut nos audiant.
4. Venērunt ut te audīrent.
5. Ne violētis fidem.
6. In summo monte tantum est frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.

7. In summis Alpĭbus tantum erat frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquescĕret. 8. Venit ut patriam auro vendat. 9. Venisti ut patriam auro vendĕres. 10. Avis in summa arbŏre cantābat. 11. Multum voluptātis cepĕram.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow does not melt (265). 2. The cold has been so great that the snow has not yet melted (265). 3. The cold was so great on the top of the mountain that the snow did not melt there (266). 4. The cold was so great on the top of the Alps that the snow did not melt there (266). 5. I have come to learn. 6. You have come to play.

7. Let him keep his word. 8. Do not break your word. 9. Do not sell your country for gold. 10. On the top of the mountain the snow never melts. 11. On the top of the Alps the snow never melts. 12. The fish is swimming in the middle of the water.

(frigid).

(liquid).

(summit).

s audiam. it te audīnonte tan-

ut nix ibi auro ven-10. Avis voluptātis

does not t the snow o great on not melt top of the 5. I have

reak your 10. On nelts. 11. 12. The

LESSON XLVIII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in io of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Prenouns.

270. A FEW verbs of the third conjugation are inflected (i. e. form their tenses, numbers, and persons) in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and in the present subjunctive, like verbs of the fourth conjugation. The following is an example.

REM. In the present, first and second persons plural, the i in the penult is short; as, capimus, capitis.

271. Paradigm of Verbs in i of the Third Conjugation.

Căpere, to take; 1st root, căp; 2d, cep.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Singular

Căp-iő, I take.

Căp-is, thou takest.

Căp-it, he takes.

Plural.

Cap-ĭmŭs, we take. Cap-ĭtĭs, ye or you take. Cap-iunt, they take.

IMPERFECT.

Căp-iebăm, I was taking. Căp-iebās, thou wast taking. Căp-iebăt, he was taking.

Căp-iebāmŭs, we were taking. Căp-iebātīs, ye or you were taking. Căp-iebant, they were taking.

FUTURE.

Căp-iăm, I shall take. Căp-iēs, thou wilt take. Căp-iĕt, he will take.

Căp-iēmŭs, we shall take. Căp-iētis, ye or you will take. Căp-ient, they will take.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Căp-iăm, I may take. Căp-iās, thou mayest take. Căp-iāt, he may take.

Căp-iamus, we may take. Căp-iatis, ye or you may take. Căp-iant, they may take.

Ι

- REM.—The remaining parts of the indicative and subjunctive moods, to verbs in io, are entirely regular.
- 272. It has been stated (255) that pronouns are divided into two classes, viz., Substantive Pronouns and Adjective Pronouns.
- 273. Adjective pronouns are so called, because they are sometimes used as pronouns to supply the place of nouns, and sometimes as adjectives to qualify nouns. These are divided into several classes.
- 274. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer, are $h\bar{i}c$, $ill\bar{e}$, $ist\bar{e}$, is, and their compounds, and are declined as follows:

				c, this.	7071	
		Singular.			Plural.	47
	М.	F.	N.	M.	F.	. N.
	Hīc,	haec,	hōc.	Hī,	hae,	haec.
G.	Hujŭs,	hujŭs,	hujŭs.	Hōrŭm,	hārŭm,	hörüm.
D.	Huic,	huīc,	huīc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
A.	Hunc,	hane,	hōc.	Hōs,	hās,	haec.
V.						
A.	Hōe,	hāc,	hōc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
			2. Illĕ,	he or that	t.	
		Singular.	,	1	Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Illě,	illă,	illŭd.	Illī,	illae,	illă.
	Illiŭs,	illīŭs,	illīŭs.	Illorum,	illārum,	illörüm.
	Illī,	illī,	illī.	Illis,	illis,	illīs.
	Illŭm,	illăm,	illåd.	Illos,	illäs,	illă.
v.	,	,				
Δ	Illo,	illa,	illō.	Illis,	illis,	illīs.

Iste, that, is declined like ille. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

tive moods, to

ns are dinouns and

cause they e place of ify nouns.

cause they they refer, e declined

N.
haec.
hōrŭm.
hīs.
haec.

hīs.

N. illă. illōrŭm. illīs. illă.

bjects which

illīs.

PARADIGMS-continued.

4. Is, he or that.

(Less specific than illa.)

	Singular		1	Plural.	
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	ZV.
N. Is,	eă,	ĭd.	Iī,	eae,	eă.
G. Ejŭs,	ejŭs,	ejŭs.	Eōrum,	earum,	eōrŭm.
D. E1,	eī,	eī.	Its or ets,	its or ets,	its or ets.
A. Eŭm,	eăm,	ĭd.	Eos,	eas,	eă.
V.					
A. Eō,	еа,	eō.	Is or els,	its or els,	ils or els.

5. Idem, the same.

(Formed by annexing dem to is.)

	E	lingula r.		Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Iděm,	eăděm,	ĭdĕm.	Iīděm,	eaeděm,	eădĕm.
G.	Ejusděm,	ejusděm,	ejusděm.	Eōrunděm	,earunděm	,eōrundĕm.
D.	Eīděm,	eīdĕm,	eīděm.	Eisděm, or Iisděm,	eisděm, or iisděm,	eisděm, or iisděm.
A.	Eunděm,	eandĕm	ĭděm.	Eōsděm,	easděm,	eăděm.
V.						
A.	Eōdĕm,	eādĕm,	eōděm.	Eisděm, <i>or</i> Iisděm,	eisděm, or iisděm,	eisděm, or iisděm.

275. VOCABULARY.

Ab (prep. with abl.), from. Castră, ōrum (plur.), camp. Cělěritěr, quickly. Clēmentiă, ae, mildness, clemency Confügere (io), confüg, to flee for refuge. with. Cum (prep. with abl.), dismiss. Dimittěrě, dimis, Ex (prep. with abl.), from. (impetus). Impětus, us, attack Imperata, orum, commands. place, position (local). Locus, I, Mŏvērĕ, mōv, to move, to put in motion.

Postěră, ŭm (mas. not used), next, following.

Postulare, av, to demand. Promittere, promis. to promise.

Promovere, promov, to move forward, to advance.

Vērð, indeed, truly.

276. Exercises.

(a) 1. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent.
2. Idem facit Caesar.
3. Idem faciebant.
4. Ego vero istud non postulo.
5. Veni ut legerem.
6. Haec promisistis.
7. Eōdem die castra promovit.

8. Hi primi (205) cum gladiis impētum fecērunt.
9. Illi imperāta celerīter fecērunt. 10. Ibi me non occidisti. 11. Eum ab se dimittit. 12. Venisti ut eum vidēres. 13. Hunc capītis damnābunt. 14. Illos proditionis invīti accusaverātis.

(b) 1. I will give you this book. 2. We prize these beautiful books very highly. 3. They will think little of those beautiful books. 4. You have condemned this man to death. 5. I will entreat him not to do (that he may not do) this.

6. I have unwillingly condemned him to death. 7. We will not accuse you of treachery. 8. You have accused him of bribery. 9. We entreated him not to accuse his son. 10. We did not make the attack. 11. They asked us to make an attack.

LESSON XLIX.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun.

277. THE Intensive Pronoun, ipse, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object emphatic;

2. Idem

ce.

2. Idem rero istude promis-

fecērunt.

i me non
sti ut eum
Illos pro-

orize these nink little ondemned not to do

death. 7.
You have aim not to tack. 11.

-Intensive

elf, is so emphatic;

it is also called an adjunctive pronoun, because it is usually joined to a noun, or to some other pronoun; as, $R\bar{o}m\bar{u}l\bar{u}s$ $ips\bar{e}$, Romulus himself; $t\bar{u}$ $ips\bar{e}$, you yourself.

278. Ipse, when joined to a noun or pronoun, may sometimes be translated by very; as, hoe ipsum, this very thing.

279. Ipse is declined as follows:

S	Singular.			Plural.		
M. N. Ipsě, G. Ipsĭús, D. Ipsī, A. Ipsŭm, V.	F. ipsă, ipsīŭs, ipsī, ipsām,	N. ipsŭm. ipsīŭs. ipsī. ipsūm.	M. Ipsī, Ipsōrŭm, Ipsīs, Ipsōs,	F. ipsae, ipsarum, ipsas, ipsas,	N. ipsā. ipsērum. ipsīs. ipsā.	
A. Ipső,	ipsā,	ipso.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.	

REM.—The substantive pronouns are rendered intensive by annexing the syllable mēt; as, ĕgömēt, I myself. In the substantive pronoun of the third person, sēsē is used intensively in the accusative and ablative of both numbers.

280. VOCABULARY.

Accēdĕrĕ, access,	to approach	(access).
At,	but, yet.	
Fortūnă, ae,	fortune.	
Fŭgă, ae,	flight.	
Gěnus, gěněris,	kind, nature.	
Justus, a, um,	just, fair.	
Nŭmërŭs, 1,	number	(numerous).
Occultarě, av,	to conceal	(occult).
Respondere, respond,	to answer	(respond).
Usquě,	as far as; usque ad, even to.	

281. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ipse fuga mortem vitavěrat. 2. Ipse ad castra hostium accessit. 3. Ipsi usque ad castra hostium

BC

ca

Q

lik

era

tiv

accessĕrant. 4. Caius sese occultābat. 5. Servi nostri sese occultābunt. 6. Ipse dixit. 7. Hoc ipsum justum est. 8. At te eădem tua fortūna servāvit. 9. Caesar haec promīsit. 10. Ad haec legāti respondērunt.

(b) 1. He himself accused the son of the king. 2. We shall accuse the king himself. 3. You yourself gave me this book. 4. They will read this very (ipse) book. 5. We ourselves will go to see the queen. 6. They have gone to see the queen herself.

7. You promised this. 8. We will ourselves do the same. 9. You have said nothing of (de) the nature of the war. 10. We shall say nothing of the war itself. 11. They had come to condemn me to death.

LESSON L.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

282. The Relative Pronoun, quī, who, is so called, because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows:

	Si	ngular.		1	Plural.	
G. D.	M. Quī, Cujŭs, Cuī, Quĕm,	F. quae, cujŭs, cuī, quăm,	N. quŏd. cujŭs. cuī. quŏd.	M. Quī, Quōrŭm, Quĭbŭs, Quōs,	F. quae, quārŭm, quĭbŭs, quās,	N quae. quōrŭm. quĭbŭs. quae.
A.	Quō,	quā,	quō,	Quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs,	quibus.

ri nostri i justum . Caesar nt.

[282,

ing. 2. yourself $(ips\check{e})$ een. 6.

s do the ature of ar itself.

Relative

called, oun, ex-It is de-

N uae. uōrŭm. uĭbŭs. uae.

uĭbŭs.

283. Rule of Syntax.—The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; as, Puer qui scrībit, the boy who writes.

REM.—Qut is in the masculine singular, to agree with its antecedent puer; but it is in the nominative because it is the subject of scribit, and not because its antecedent is in the nominative.

284. The Interrogative Pronouns, quis and qui, are so called because they are used in asking questions. Qui (which? what?) is used adjectively, and is declined like the relative. Quis (who? which? what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined like the relative, except the forms quis, quid, as follows:

	Si	ngular.		1	Plural.	
G. D.	M. Quĭs, Cujŭs, Cuī, Quĕm,	quae, cujŭs, cuī, quăm,	N. quid. cujus. cut. quid.	M. Quī, Quōrŭm, Quĭbŭs, Quōs,	F. quae,	N. quae. quōrŭm. quĭbŭs. quae.
A.	Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭa.

285. VOCABULARY.

Amplius (comp. adv. from ample),
Cogitare, av,
Cognoscere, cognov,
Coram,
Exspectare, av,
Nuntius, I,
Parvus, a, um,
Perspicere, perspex,
Plane,
Vocare, av,

more, further.
to think, to think about.
to ascertain.
openly, in person.
to await, expect.
messenger.
little, small.
to perceive, to see
plainly.
to call.

Iı

Ir

mu

286. Exercises.

(a) 1. Quis nos vocābit? 2. Quid dixisti? 3. Quid cogītas? 4. Quid times? 5. Quis tibi hunc librum dedit? 6. Eădem quae ex nuntiis cognoverat, coram perspīcit. 7. In qua urbe vivīmus? 8. Illi, quod nemo fecerat, fecerunt. 9. Quid est quod amplius exspectes? 10. Quam urbem habēmus? 11. Quis Caium proditionis (214) accūsat? 12. Quem ambītus accusavisti? 13. Carthagīne invītus manēbo. 14. Biennium Romae invīti manēbant. 15. Summam prudentiam simulatione stultitiae texistis.

(b) 1. Whom do you love? 2. I see the slave whom you punished. 3. Who has sold his country for gold? 4. Who gave the boy this beautiful book? 5. Who will show me the way? 6. I will show you the house which my father built.

7. Which book were you reading? 8. I was reading the book which you gave me. 9. We all read to learn (that we may learn). 10. You have remained at Rome many years. 11. How much time you have lost!

LESSON LI.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles.

287. Ne and num are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun (284) or interrogative adverb, one of these particles must be used.

3. Quid

librum t, coram

li, quod

olius ex-

s Caium

s accusa-

4. Bien-

pruden-

re whom

or gold?

5. Who

he house

ras read-

read to

nained at

ou have

288. If ne is used, it must follow and be joined to some other word; and, if there is a not in the sentence, it must be joined to the non (not), making nonně; e. g.,

- 1. Scrībitne Caiŭs? Is Caius writing? 2. Nonně scribit?
- Is not he writing? 3. Num scrībit Caius? Is Caius writing? [No.]

Resc.—A question with në and without non asks for information (Ex. 1), with non expects the answer yes (Ex. 2), and with num expects the answer no (Ex. 3); thus, Num scribit Caius, means, Caius is not writing, is he?

289. VOCABULARY,*

Aspergěrě, aspers, sprinkle. Ară, ae, altar. Auctumnus, I, autumn. Construĕrĕ, construx, to build, construct. Immergere, immers, to plunge

accus., to, into, against; with abl., in. Nīdŭs, ī, nest. Periculosus, a, um, dangerous. Sanguis, inis, m., blood. Sēměn, ĭnĭs, seed. Spargěrě, spars, to scatter, to sow. In (prep. with accus. or abl.), with Victima, ae, victim.

290: Exercises.

(In construing, omit the no or num, but make the sentence a question.)

(a) 1. Scripsitne Caius? † 2. Num scripserātis? 3. Num rex portas urbis sua manu claudet? rides?

lnterroga-

les; and (284) or must be

^{*} It has been thought unnecessary longer to insert key-words in the Vocabularies, but it is hoped the pupil will still continue to accustom himself to associate with his Latin at least some of the more common English words which have been derived from it.

[†] In construing a question, the auxiliary verb (does, do, did, has, have) must be put before the subject; as, Scripsitne puer, Has the boy written? or Did the boy write?

5. Caius se in flumen immersit. 6. Periculõsum est hiĕme se in flumen immergĕre. 7. Puer se in flumen immergat. 8. Agricolārum est semĭna auctumno spargĕre. 9. Nonnĕ in summis Alpībus tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? 10. Sacerdos victimārum sanguĭne aram aspersit. 11. Nonnĕ boni est pas-

tōris' tondēre oves, non deglubĕre?

(b) 1. Does he live to eat? [No.] 2. Does not he eat to live? 3. The husbandman has scattered seeds.
4. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? 5. He has plunged the body into the middle of the waters. 6. Let fish swim in the midst of the waters. 7. They have come to condemn (239) you to death. 8. Can he swim in the middle of the waters? 10 [No.] 9. The boy's industry is so-great, that he can learn all things. 10. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? 11. Are you shearing the sheep?

LESSON LII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Pronouns, Indefinite and Possessive.

291. Indefinite Pronouns are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., quīdăm, a certain one; ăliquis, some one; quisque, every one; sīquis, if ary, &c.

292. The indefinite pronouns are compounds either of quis or qui, and are declined in nearly the same man-

ner as the simple pronouns.

293. Quain, compounded of qui and dăm, is declined like qui, except in the neuter singular, where it

takes quid (instead of quod) when used substantively and in the accusative singular and genitive plural, where m before d is changed into n; as, quendăm (not quemfrigus, quorundăm (not quorumdăm).

294. Aliquis, compounded of ălius and quis, is declined like quis, except in the neuter singular, nominative and accusative, where it has ăliquid adjective, and ăliquid substantive; and in the feminine singular and neuter plural, where it has ăliqui. It is declined as follows:

		SINGULAR.	
	M.	F.	N.
N.	Alĭquĭs,	ăliquă,	ăliquod or ăliquid.
G.	Alĭcujūs,	alicujus,	ălicujus.
D.	Alĭcuī,	ălicuī,	ălicuī.
A. V.	Alĭquĕm,	ălĭquăm,	ălĭquŏd or ălĭquĭd.
A.	Aliquō,	ăliquā,	ălĭquo.
		PLURAL.	
	M.	F.	N.
N.	Alĭquī,	ăliquae,	ălĭquă.
G.	Alĭquōrŭm,	älĭquārŭm,	ăliquorum.
D.	Aliquibūs,	ăliquibus,	ălĭquĭbŭs.
A.	Alĭquōs,	ălĭquās,	ălĭquă.
V.			
A.	Aliquibus,	ălīquībus,	ăliquibus.

295. The Possessive Pronouns (so called because they denote possession), meŭs, meă, meŭm; tuŭs, tuă, tuŭm, suŭs, suă, suŭm; nostër, nostră, nostrŭm; vestër, vestră, vestrum, are declined, as we have already seen (114, Rem. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declen sion.

not he d seeds.
5. He ters. 6.

est pas-

ney have ne swim oy's ings. 10.

ronouns,

they reme one;

either of me man-

, is dewhere it

296. VOCABULARY

A (prep. with abl.), from. Argentum, I, silver. Coneilium, I, council. Culpă, ae, fault.

Indicere, indix, to declare (as war). Infligere, inflix, inflict. SI, if. Continere, ŭ, to restrain, confine. Ullus, ă, ŭm (113, Rem.), any. Vulnus, ĕris, wound.

297. Exercises.

(a) 1. Alıquid temporis invitus amittes. 2. Non est tua ulla culpa, si te aliqui timuërunt. 3. Aliquis est in horto tuo. 4. Caesar suos a proelio continebat. 5. Legātos ad Caesărem misit. 6. Legāti ad concilium venērunt. 7. Christianorum est fidem suam servāre. 8. Turpe est patriae tuae leges violare. 9. Rex urbi bellum indīcet. 10. Anguis agricŏlae vulnus infligēbat. 11. Tanta est industria tua, ut multa discas. 12. Tanta fuit industria tua ut multa disceres.

(b) 1. Some one has accused you of bribery. 2. They have accused certain persons of theft. 3. He will condemn some one to death. 4. We have lost some time. 5. The shepherd has sold his dog for gold. 6. It is the duty of a father to instruct his sons. has accused you of theft? 8. No one has accused me of theft. 9. Some one has accused you of treachery. 10. Who has accused me of treachery? 11. The king himself has accused you of treachery.

LESSON LIII.

Verb.—Esse.

298. The verb esse, to be, is called a substantive verb, except when used as an auxiliary in the passive (as war).

), any.

Von est

uis est

at. 5.

cilium ervāre. voice (not yet examined) of other verbs. Its conjugation is quite irregular.

299. Paradigm of the verb Esse.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (am).

Singular.

Sum, I am.

Es, thou art.
Est, he is.

Plural.

Sumus, we are.

Estis, you are.

Sunt, they are.

IMPERFECT (was).

Eram, I was.

Eras, thou wast.

Erat, he was.

Erat, they were.

FUIURE (shall or will be).

Erŏ, I shall be.

Erĭs, thou wilt be.

Erĭt, he will be.

Erut, he will be.

Erut, they will be.

PERFECT (have been or was).

Fui, I have been.
Fuisti, thou hast been.
Fuit, he has been.
Fuit, he has been.
Fuit, he has been.
Fuithere, they have been.

PLUPERFECT (had been).

Fuĕrām, I had been.
Fuĕrās, thou hadst been.
Fuĕrāt, he had been.
Fuĕrattis, you had been.
Fuĕrant, they had been.

FUTURE PERFECT (shall or will have been).

Fuĕrĭs, thou wilt have been.
Fuĕrĭt, he will have been.
Fuĕrit, he will have been.
Fuĕrit, they will have been.

x urbi igēbat. Tanta . They

e time, 6. It is Who ded me achery.

e king

antive passive

PARADIGM—continued

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (may or can be).

Sin		
4.54.94	CF34.0	67 m

Sim, I may be. Sis, thou mayest le. Sit, he may be.

Plural.

Simus, we may be. Sitis, you may be. Sint, they may be.

IMPERFECT (might, could, would, or should be).

Essem, I might be. Esses, thou mightest be.

Esset, he might be.

Essemus, we might be. Essetis, you might be. Essent, they might be.

PERFECT (may have been).

Fuěrím, I may have been. Fueris, thou mayest have been. Fuerit, he may have been.

| Fuerimus, we may have been. Fueritis, you may have been. Fuerint, they may have been.

PLUFERFECT (might, could, would, or should have been).

Fuissem, I might have been. Fuisset, he might have been.

Fuissēmus, we might have been. Fuisses, thou mightest have been. Fuissetis, you might have been. Fuissent, they might have been.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.*

Es, or esto, be thou. Esto, let him be.

Estě or estotě, be ye. Sunto, let them be.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PLASENT. PERFECT,

Essě, to be.

Fuissě, to have been.

FUTURE,

Fŭtūrŭs (ă, ŭm) esse, to be about to be.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,

Fŭtūrŭs, ă, ŭm, about to be.

The remaining forms are given here in order to complete the Paradigm of the verb esse, although the nature and use of the imperative and infinitive moods, and of the participles, have not yet been examined; a word of explanation will be sufficient for this place,

300. The *Imperative Mood* denotes a command, and of course is never used in the first person.

301. The *Infinitive Mood*, as we have already seen (9), represents simply the meaning of the verb, without person or number. It has three tenses, present, perfect, and future.

302. The Participle is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective; thus, the participle $f\bar{u}t\bar{u}r\bar{u}s$, \bar{u} , $\bar{u}m$, is declined like the adjective bonus, \bar{u} , $\bar{u}m$ (112).

303. VOCABULARY.

Absolvěrě, absolv, to acquit.
Admīratio, onis, admiration.
Brěvis, ě, short.
Dīgnüs, ä, üm, worthy.
Ferrum, I, iron.
Habitarě, av, to dwell, to inhabit.
Honor, oris, honor

Incertus, a, um, uncertain.
Indignus, a, um, unworthy.
Mens, tis, mind, reasoning faculty.
Opus, eris, work.
Tranquillus, a, um, calm, tranquil.
Utilis, e, useful.

304. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mens sapientis semper erit tranquilla. 2. Est tuum * iter facĕre. 3. Puer in horto fuĕrat. 4. His honorĭbus (181) digni sitis. 5. Caius vita indīgnus est. 6. Ferrum et aurum sunt utilia. 7. Haec opĕra sunt admiratione digna. 8. Vita est brevis et incerta. 9. Improborum est malos laudāre. 10. Venĭmus ut patriae tuae leges violarēmus. 11. Veniant servi ut portas urbis claudant. 12. Multos annos Romae habitaverātis.

(b) 1. The good will be happy. 2. May you be happy. 3. We all might have been happy. 4. It is

ve been. e been. e been.

been).

have been. ave been. ave been.

out to be.

ete the Parerative and camined; a

^{*} Est tuum, it is yours: i. e., your duty.

my duty to keep the laws of my country. 5. May he ever be worthy of this honor. 6. He would have been unworthy of his father.

7. He had been king many years. 8. We will never praise the bad. 9. They will condemn us to death. 10. We will never accuse the good. 11. He had broken his arm at Athens. 12. Virtue is the highest wisdom. 13. We will acquit you of bribery (214.)

LESSON LIV.

Verb Esse, continued.—Comparison of Adjectives.

305. Adjectives in Latin, as in English, may express different degrees of the quality which they denote; e.g.,

Altŭs, altiŏr, altissĭmŭs. High, higher, highest.

REM.—In this example, altis (high) is said to be in the positive degree; altior in the comparative; and altissimus, in the superlative.

306. In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

Comparative.

M. F. N. M. F. N.
ior, iot, ius issimus, issimu, issimum.

Examples. Root. Comparative. Superlative.

Altŭs (high), alt. altiŏr (ĭŏr, iŭs), altissĭmŭs (ã, ŭm).

Mītĭs (mild), mīt. mītiŏr (iŏr, iŭs), mītissīmŭs (ã, ŭm).

REM. 1.—Adjectives in er add rimus (ă, um) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulcher, pulchriör, pulcherrin üs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in its form the superlative by adding itmits to the root of the positive; e.g.,

ay he been

, 306,

never leath, roken sdom.

gress e.g.,

leg**ree ;** ve.

ng to

n. m). im).

o form

limüs

Făcilis (casy), făciliör, făcilimăs.

Difficilis (difficult), difficiliör, difficilimăs.

Similis (like), similiör, similimăs.

Disaimilis (unlike), disaimiliör, disaimilimăs.

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

Bŏnŭs (good), měliŏr, optīmūs.

Mălŭs (bad), pejŏr, pessīmūs.

Māgnūs (great), majŏr, maxīmūs.

Parvūs (little), mĭnŏr, mĭnĭmūs.

Multūs (much), plūs (pl. plūrēs, plūrāmūs.

307. The conjunction quam is generally used with the comparative degree, unless one of the persons or things compared is the subject of the proposition, in which case quam is usually omitted, though sometimes used; e. g.,

- Nihîl est clēmentiā dīvīniŭs.
 Nothing is more godlike than clemency.
- Europă minor est quăm Asia.
 Europe is smaller than Asia.

308. Rule of Syntax.—The comparative degree without quam is followed by the ablative.

REM. 1.—Clementia in the first example is in the ablative by this rule.

REM. 2.—If quam is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes: thus, Asia, which follows quam in the second example, is in the same case as Europa, which precedes.

309. The conjunction quam before a superlative renders it intensive; e.g.,

Quăm plūrimi, $\begin{cases} Eng. \ Id. \ \text{As many as possible.} \\ Lat. \ Id. \ \text{As the most.} \end{cases}$

Quam maximus, $\begin{cases} Eng. \ Id. \end{cases} \begin{cases} \text{As great as possible.} \\ \text{The greatest possible} \end{cases}$ Lat. Id. As the greatest.

3

N.

(c

pr

pr

by

an

ar

CO

be

th

ėle

Rem.—The superlative may often be best translated by very instead of most; as, mons altissimus, a very high mountain.

310. VOCABULARY.

Amplus, ă, um, extensive, great.
Argentum, I, silver.
Celeber, bris, bre, celebrated.
Cicero, onis, Cicero.
Divinus, ă, um, divine.
Futurus, ă, um, future.
Gravis, e, heavy.
Impendere, to overhang, to threaten.

Ignoratio, onis, ignorance.

Mălum, I, an evil.

Pretiosus, ă, um, valuable.

Quăm, than.

Quăm maximus, ă, um, as great as possible.

Rătio, onis, reason.

Scientia, ae, knowledge.

Turris, is, tower.

311. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aurum gravius est argento. 2. Ignorātio futurorum malorum utilior est quam scientia. 3. Difficillimum est iram placāre. 4. In summis montibus 10 acerrimum est frigus.

5. Věniunt ut copias compărent. 6. Vēnit ut quam maximas copias compararet. 7. Turris est altior muro. 8. Quid est in homine ratione divinius? 9. Mons altissimus impendēbat. 10. Cicero erat orator celeberrimus. 11. Romāni ampliores copias exspectābant.

(b) 1. Gold is very heavy. 2. Gold is more valuable than silver. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than gold and silver. 4. You are building a very high wall. 5. You have your wall higher than your tower. 6. We shall raise very large forces. 7. You have raised larger forces than the king himself.

8. We have come to raise as large forces as possible.⁹
9 Let them raise as large forces as possible. 10. It is very easy to keep one's word. 11. It is easier to keep one's word than to appease anger. 12. Who was more celebrated than Cicero? 13. He was a very celebrated orator.

ce.

ble.

as great

LESSON LV

Compounds of Essĕ.—Comparison of Adverbs.—Numeral Adjectives.

312. The compounds of esse (except posse, to be able, which is irregular, and will be noticed hereafter) are conjugated like the simple esse, prodesse, however (compounded of $pr\bar{o}$, for, and esse, to be), inserts d after $pr\bar{o}$ in those parts which in the simple verb begin with e; as,

Pres. Prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt, &c.

313. The compounds of esse (except posse) are followed by the dative, as they take only an indirect object (82 and 643, 2); e. g.,

Mihř profuĭt.

It profited me (did good to me).

Rem.—Here it is plain that mihī (to me) is not a direct, but only an indirect object.

314. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison: the comparative of the adverb being the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective, and the superlative being formed from that of the adjective by changing the ending us into e; as,

Ady. Altūs, altiŏr (iŭs neut.), altissĭmūs. Adv. Altē, altiŭs, altissĭmē.

NUMERALS.

315. Numerals comprise,

(a) Numeral adjectives, consisting of three distinct classes; viz.

o futufficilliacer-

quam muro. ons aleleber-

ant.
valua
than
high
tower.

have

10. It sier to ho was y cele-

31

ind

lik

hur

are

ber

in t

eve

seco

R

Conc Con Děce Děce Duŏ Intě

Măr

Obe:

qua nuo

£

g

1) Cardinals, which denote simply the number of objects; as, ūnus, one; duo, two, &c.

2) Ordinals, which denote the position of any object in a series; as, prīmus, first; secundus, second.

3) Distributives, which denote the number of objects which are taken at a time; as, singula, one by one; bīnī, two by two.

(b) Numerical adverbs; as, semel, once; bis, twice. (See numerals, 583.)

316. Rule of Syntax.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., Mīles fortiter pūgnat, the soldier fights bravely. Haud difficilis, not difficult.

317. (a) The first three cardinals, $\bar{u}n\check{u}s$, $du\check{o}$, and $tr\bar{e}s$, are declined as follows:

1. Paradigm of unus. one.

		0	, , ,		
N. Unŭs, G. Unīŭs. D. Unī, A. Unŭm, V. Unĕ,	ūnă, ūnīŭs, ūnī, ūnăm, ūnă,	ūnŭm. ūnīŭs. ūnī. unŭm. ūnŭm.	Unī, Unōrŭm, Unīs, Unōs,	unae, unarum, unis, unas,	ûnă. ûnōrŭm, ûnīs. ûnă.
A. Unō,	ūnā,	ūnō.	Unīs,	ūnīs,	ünīs.

Rem.—The plural of unus, as a numeral, is used only with nouns which have no singular.

2. Paradigms of duŏ, two, and trēs, three.

N. Duŏ, G. Duōrŭm, D. Duōbŭs,			Trēs (m. & f.), Triŭm, Tribŭs,	triă. triŭm. tribŭs.
A. Duos and duo,			Trēs,	triă.
V. Duŏ, ▲. Duōbŭs,	duae,	duŏ. duōbŭs.	Trēs, Trībūs,	triă. trĭbŭs.

number

of any

: sĕcun-

nber of

as, sin-

, twice.

verbs.

fortiter

eilis, not

uŏ, and

ūnă.

ūnīs.

ūnă.

ūnīs.

ă.

á.

ă. bŭs.

ĭm. bŭs.

ouns which

ūnorŭm.

&c.

REM.—Tres is declined like the plural of tristis (158).

(b) Cardinal numbers, from four to one hundred, are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of bonus (112); e. g., ducentī, ac, a, two hundred.

318. Ordinals are declined like bonus. Distributives are declined like the plural of bonus.

319. Whenever the same noun belongs to both members of a comparison in Latin, it is generally expressed in the first and omitted in the second; in English, however, it is expressed in the first, and represented in the second by the pronoun that or those; e. g.,

Măris superficies major est quam terrae.

The sea's surface is greater than (that*) of the land.

REM.—Hence, in translating English into Latin, that, those, after than, should be omitted.

320. VOCABULARY.

Concertare, av, to contend, quarrel. Continuus, ă, um, successive. Děcěm, ten. Děcimus, a, um, tenth. Duŏ, duae, duŏ, two. Interesse, interfu, to be engaged in.

Măre, is, sea. Obessě, obfu, to be prejudicial to.

Omnīno, altogether, in all. Prodessě, profu, to do good, to profit. Producere, produx, to lead forward or out. Quartus, a, um, fourth. Quinque, five. Superficies, et, surface. Terră, ae, earth.

321. Exercises.

(a) 1. Milites fortiter pugnant. 2. Romāni fortius quam hostes pugnavērunt. 3. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit. 4 Erant omnīno itinēra duo. 5. Caesar quam max-

^{*} Here that stands for the surface.

imas copias comparavěrat. 6. Caius, vir summo ingenio praeditus, Romae habitat. 7. Servus meus proelio interfuit. 8. Fides plurimis profuit. 9. Christianorum est 7 avaritiam damnare. 10. Caius multis proeliis in terfuerat. 11. Terrae superficies minor est quam maris. 12. Caesar decimam legionem misit.

(b) 1. They will fight bravely. 2. You fought more bravely than the Romans. 3. The king himself was engaged in the battle. 4. He fought very bravely. 5. Ten legions were engaged in the first battle. 6. The soldiers of the tenth legion fought more bravely than those b of the fourth. 7. Anger has often been prejudicial to states. 8. It is the part of a Christian to do good to as many as possible. 9. Caesar raised the greatest forces possible. 10. Many states relying on their strength will raise forces.

LESSON LVI.

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for continued Action.

- 322. A TRANSITIVE verb (72) may represent its subject,
 - 1) As acting upon some object; as, Păter fīlium docet, the father teaches his son; it is then said to be in the Active Voice.
 - 2) As acted upon by some other person or thing; as, Fīliŭs ā pătrĕ dŏcētŭr, the son is taught by his father; it is then said to be in the Passive Voice.

mmo ingeeus proelio istianorum proeliis in iam maris

ught more mself was bravely. battle. 6. re bravely often been hristian to raised the elying on

continued

resent its

ër fīliŭm then said

or thing; taught by the Passive REM.—The forms which have been used in the previous exercises all belong to the active voice: we shall now consider the formation and use of the passive.

323. The third persons (singular and plural) of the tenses for continued action (190), both in the indicative and subjunctive moods, are formed in the passive voice, by adding the ending $\check{u}r$ to the corresponding forms of the active.

a) But observe that the vowel before the t in the singular is long, except from t in the third conjugation, and from abt and bt.

324. The following table presents the formation of the third persons of the passive in the moods and tenses just mentioned.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (1st root), is, are loved, &c.

0		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-ăt.	Mŏn-ět,		
		Rĕg-ĭt,	Aud-ĭt.
Am-atur.	Mŏn-ētŭr.	Rĕg-ĭtŭr.	Aud-ītŭr.
Am-ant.	Mon-ent,	Rĕg-unt,	
. ,	Me	Reg-unt,	Aud-iunt,
THE anout.	Mon-entur.	Rěg-untur.	Aud-iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT (1st root), was, were loved, &c.

	(120 2000)	, was, were with	, 020.
Am-abat, Am-abat <i>ŭr</i> . Am-abant, Am-abant <i>ŭr</i> .	Mŏn-ēbātŭr.	Rěg-ebatur.	Aud-iebāt, Aud-iebātur. Aud-iebant,

FUTURE (1st root), shall or will be loved.

Am-ābĭt,	Mŏn-ēbĭt,	Rěg-ēt,	Aud-iĕt,
Am-ābĭtŭr.	Mŏn-ēbĭtŭr.	Rěg-ētŭr.	Aud-iētŭr.
Am-ābunt,	Mŏn-ēbunt,	Rěg-ent,	Aud-ient,
Am-ābuntŭr.	Mŏn-ēbuntŭr.	Rěg-entŭr.	Aud-ientŭr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (1st root), may or can be loved

A 14.	(180 1000)	may or can be	e toved.
Am-ĕt,	Mŏn-eăt,	Rěg-ăt.	Aud-iăt,
Am-ētŭr.		Reg-atur.	
Am-ent,	Mon-eant,	Rĕg-ant.	Aud-iatur.
Am-entur.			Aud-iant,
	Mŏn-eantŭr.	Rĕg-antŭr.	Aud-iantur.

328

10.

11.

Pass

32 voice

perfe

(299)

of th

called

(ă, ŭr

33

32

by in accurate brib. The be c

PARADIGM-continued.

IMPERE	ECT (1st root),	might, could, &c.	, be loved.
Am-ārēt, Am-ārēt <i>ŭr</i> . Am-ārent, Am-ārent <i>ŭr</i> .	Mŏn-ērēt, Mŏn-ērēt <i>ŭr</i> . Mŏn-ērent, Mŏn-ērent <i>ŭr</i> .	Rěg-ěrět, Rěg-ěrēt <i>ŭr</i> . Rěg-ěrent,	Aud-Irët, Aud-Irët <i>ŭr</i> . Aud-Irent, Aud-Irent <i>ŭr</i> .

325. Rule of Syntax.—Passive verbs are followed by the same cases as the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive (322); e. g.,

Act. Illī Balbum furtī accūsant.
They accuse Balbus of theft.

Pass. Balbus ab illīs furtī accūsātur.
Balbus is accused of theft by them.

Rem.—Observe that the agent is put in the ablative with ab (ab illis); a, however, is often used before a consonant.

326. VOCABULARY.

Cŏlĕrĕ, ū, to cultivate, to practise.
Dēmonstrārĕ, āv, to show.
Interfīcĕrĕ (iŏ), interfēc, to kill, to slay.

Mttĕrĕ, mīs, to send.
Prō (prep. with abl.), for, before.

Rhēnŭs, I, Rhine, a river.
Rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm, the rest, the other.
Sex, six.
Sŭpra, above.
Tangĕrĕ, tĕtĭg, to touch, reach.
Unŭs, ă, ŭm, one, single, single one.

327. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius filios docet. 2. Filii a Caio docentur. 3. Legātos ad Caesărem mittent. 4. Legāti ad Caesărem mittentur. 5. Mittantur legāti. 6. Relĭquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituet. 7. Caium capĭtis damnābunt. 8. Caius capĭtis damnabĭtur. 9. Hacc civĭtas Rhenum tangit. 10. Hacc civĭtas Rhenum, ut supra demonstravĭmus, tangit. 11. Virtus ab omnībus colātur.

ett, ent, ent*u*r.

followed rect obe (322);

m. (ab illis);

r. the ot<mark>her</mark>.

reach. ingle one.

centur.
Caesănas sex
capĭtis
Hace
nenum,

omni

(b) 1. Balbus will kill Caius. 2. He will be killed by Balbus. 3. Caius accuses me of theft. 4. He is accused of theft by Caius. 5. Let him be accused of bribery. 6. Let them be condemned to death. 7. They are killed in the first battle. 8. Let not the king be condemned to death. 9. The law will be broken. 10. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 11. Let not the laws of the city be broken by us.

LESSON LVII.

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action.

328. The tenses for completed action in the passive voice are called *Compound Forms*, and consist of the perfect participle with certain parts of the verb esse (299). We must accordingly notice here the formation of this participle.

329. The perfect participle is formed from what is called the *third root*, by the addition of the ending *us* (ă, um), and is declined like bonus.

330. The third root is formed from the first,

1) In the first, second, and fourth conjugations by the addition of the respective endings āt, it, and īt; e.g.,

Amāre, am, amāt.

Monēre, mon, monit.

Audīre, aud, audīt.

2) In the third conjugation, by the addition of t, or sometimes s (especially to the t-sounds).

833.

S. | P. |

S. | P. |

38

Aest

Cons spe Dece cre Dice:

Făcă per Fran vic

a) Any p-sound before t is p (i. e., pt or bt becomes pt).

b) Any k-sound before t is c (i. e., ct, gt, or qut becomes ct).

c) D, and sometimes g, is dropped before s (see 208, c, and 211).

Scrīběrě, scrīb, script (b changed to p).

Rěgěrě, rěg, rect (g changed to c).

Clauděrě, claud, claus (d dropped).

331. The third persons singular of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the passive indicative are formed respectively from the third singular of the present, imperfect, and future* of the indicative of the verb esse and the perfect participle; and the plural is formed in the same way, by using the plural of the participle and verb.

332. The third persons of the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive, are formed by a similar combination of the perfect passive participle with the third persons of the present and imperfect subjunctive of esse.

PARADIGM.

Conj. I. Amārě. 1st root, ăm, 3d " ămāt.	Conj. II. Mŏnērě. 1st root, mŏn, 3d " mŏnĭt.	Conj. III. Rěgěrě. 1st root, rěg, 3d " rect.	Conj. IV. Audīrē. 1st root, aud, 3d " audīt.			
	INDICATIV	VE -MOOD.				
Perfect (has been or was loved, &c.).						
S. Amatust est, Monitus est, Rectus est, Auditus est, P. Amatit sunt. Monitus unt. Rectus unt. Auditus est,						

* Instead of the present, imperfect, and future, the perfect, plupertect, and future perfect are sometimes used.

† Instead of the present and imperfect, the perfect and pluperfect are sometimes used.

† These participles, which, it must be remembered, are declined like bonus (302), are always of the same gender and number as the subject of the verb, thus:

pt).

9).

c).

mes ct). c, and 211).

fect, plu-

cative are f the pre-

the verb

is formed

participle

luperfect

 ${f combina}$ the third

ojunctive

y. IV.

ıdīrĕ.

t, aud,

ŭs est,

ī sunt.

audit.

833.7

PARADIGM—continued.

PLUPERFECT (had been loved, &c.).

S. Amatus erat, Monitus erat, Rectus erat, Audītus erat, P. Amati ĕrant. Moniti ĕrant. Recti erant. Auditi erant.

FUTURE PERFECT (shall or will har been loved, &c.).

S. Amatus ĕrit, Monitus ĕrit, P. Amatı ĕrunt. Moniti ĕrunt. |Rectus erit, |Auditus erit, Recti ĕrunt. Auditi ĕrunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT (may have been loved, &c.).

S. Amātus sit, Monitus sit, Rectus sit. Audītus sit. P. Amati sint. Moniti sint. Recti sint. Audītī sint.

PLUPERFECT (might have been loved, &c.).

S. Amātus essēt, Monitus essēt, Rectus esset, Audītus esset, P. Amati essent. Moniti essent. Recti essent. Auditi essent.

333. VOCABULARY.

Aestimare, av, at, to value, to prize. Interficere (io), fec, fect, to kill. Colloquium, I, conference, meeting.

Conspicere (io), conspex, conspect, to see, discover.

Decernere, decrev, decret, to de-

Dīcere, dix, dict, to say, speak, name.

Făcĕrĕ (ið), fēc, fact, to do, make, perform.

violate.

Interim, in the mean time, meanwhile.

Lēnĭs, ĕ, *mild, merviful*.

Literae, arum (pl.), letter, epistla Mittere, mis, miss, to send.

Părare, av, at, to prepare. Quintŭs, ă, úm, *fifth*.

Secundus, a, um, second.

Sententiă, ae, sentiment.

Frangere, freg, fract, to break, to Supplicatio, onis, thanks ziving. Viginti, twenty.

ect, pluper.

iperfect are

eclined like the subject Amātus est, he has been loved. Amātă est, she has been loved. Amätum est, it has been loved. Amātī sunt, they (men) have been loved. Amātae sunt, they (women) have been loved. Amata sunt, they (things) have been loved.

n

ac

re th

CO

th

334. Exercises.

(a) 1. Supplicătio decrēta est. 2. Mors omnībus parāta est. 3. Dies colloquio dictus erat ex eo die quintus. 4. Multa ab Caesăre in eam sententiam dicta sunt. 5. Faciam id quod est lenius et utilius. 6. Mituntur ad Caesărem a Balbo literae. 7. Interim milites legionum duarum ab hostibus conspiciebantur. 8. Milites legionum duarum conspecti sunt.

(b) 1. A thanksgiving had been decreed to Caesar.

2. Twenty soldiers of the tenth legion had been killed in the second battle.

3. Money has ever been valued very highly.

4. Has not money always been valued very highly?

5. Were not the laws broken at Athens?

6. The laws had been broken at Rome.

7. We will appoint the tenth day for a conference.

8. Messengers had been sent to the king.

9. A soldier was sent to the king.

LESSON LVIII.

Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice.

335. The persons of the tenses for continued action in the indicative and subjunctive moods may be formed from the corresponding parts of the active, as follows:

a) The first persons, by dropping the final consonant (when there is one), and adding r; e.g.,

Amo (act.), amor (pass. r added).

Amābam (act.), amābar (pass. m dropped, r added).

b) The second persons, by changing s (sing.) into ris (or re), and tis (plur.) into mini; e.g.,

omnībus o die quiniam dicta

. 6. Mit-Frim miliantur. 8.

to Caesar.
een killed
en valued
en valued
t Athens?
We will
lessengers

as sent to

ed action be formed follows:

r; e. g.,

ing.) into e. g.,

Amās (act.), ămāris (or rē) (pass. s changed to ris or rē). Amātis (act.), ămāmīnī (pass. tis " mīnī).

c) The third persons, by adding $\tilde{u}r$ (323); e.g.,

Amăt (act.), ămătŭr (pass. ŭr added). Amant (act.), ămantŭr (pass. ŭr added).

336. The personal endings of the tenses for continued action, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, active and passive, are as follows:

	A	Singula r.			Plural,	
Act. Pass.	1. ő, m, r.	2. s, rĭs, rĕ.	t, tŭr.	1. mŭs, mŭr,	2. tĭs, mĭnī.	3. nt, ntŭr

337. The first and second persons of the passive may accordingly be formed directly from the third (as already obtained), by changing its ending into those of the first and second, and observing the same principles for vowel changes as apply to the active (248); e. g.,

Sing. Amātŭr, amāmŭr, amāmir.

338. The first and second persons of the tenses for completed action may be obtained directly from the third person, by simply changing the third person of the proper tense of esse into the first and second; e. g.,

Sing. Amātūs est, amātūs sum, amātūs es Plur. Amātī sunt, amātī sumus, amātī estīs.

840

Ai Ai Ai Ai Ai

Ace Adn w Běn Cart ni Clíp Dam Dise Don Exe

2. I laud et h ris, sun mār Am

339. Paradigm of the Indicative Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), am loved, &c.						
Conj I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.			
Am-ŏr,	Mŏn-eŏr,	Rěg-ŏr,	Aud-ior.			
Am-aris (re),	Mon-ēris (re),	Rěg-ěris (rě),	Aud-Iris (re),			
Am-atur;	Mon-ētur;	Rěg-ĭtŭr;	Aud-Itur;			
Am-amur,	Mon-ēmur,	Rěg-imur,	Aud-Imur,			
Am-amini,	Mon-emini.	Rěg-imini,	Aud-īmīnī,			
Am-antur.	Mon-entur.	Rěg-untur.	Aud-iuntur.			
Iz	MPERFECT (1st ro	ot), was loved, &	zc.			
Au-abăr,	Mon-ebar.	Rěg-ēbăr,	Aud-iebar.			
Am-abaris (re)		Rěg-ebaris(rě)				
Am-abatur;	Mon-ebatur;	Rěz-ebatur:	Aud-iebatur:			
Am-abamur.	Mŏn-ēbā <i>mŭr</i> ,	Rěg-ebamur,	Aud-iebāmur.			
Am-abamini,	Mon-ebamini,	Reg-ebamini,	Aud-iebamini.			
Am-abantur.	Mon-ebantur.	Rěg-ebantur.	Aud-iebantur.			
	,	, ,	•			
F'U'	TURE (1st root),	shall or will be le	red.			
Am-ābŏr,	Mŏn-ēbŏr,	Rěg-ăr,	Aud-iăr,			
Am-ābě <i>ris</i> (rĕ)	, Mon-eberis (re)	Reg-eris (re),	Aud-iēris (re),			
Am-ābĭ <i>tŭr</i> ;	Mon-ebitur;	Rěg-ētur;	Aud-iētur:			
Am-ābi <i>mŭr</i> ,	Mŏn-ēbĭmŭr,	Rěg-ēmur,	Aud-iemur,			
Am-ābi <i>minī</i> ,	Mon-ēbiminī,	Rěg-ēminī,	Aud-iemini,			
Am-ābu <i>ntūr</i> .	Mŏn-ēbuntŭr.	Rĕg-entŭr.	Aud-ientur.			
PERFECT (3d r	oot, perf. part. an	ıd sŭm*), <i>was</i> or	have been loved.			
Amat-ŭs sŭm,*	Monit-us sum,	Rect-us sum,	Audīt-ŭs sŭm,			
Amat-ŭs ĕs,	Monit-us es,	Rect-ŭs ĕs,	Audīt-ŭs ĕs.			
Amat-us est;	Monit-us est;	Rect-us est:	Audīt-ŭs est;			
Amat-ī sumus,	Monit-i sumus,	Rect-I sumus,	Audīt-ī sumus.			
Amat-ī estis,	Monit-I estis,	Rect-T estis.	Audīt-ī estis,			
Amāt-ī sunt.	Mŏnĭt-ī sunt.	Rect-I sunt.	Audīt-ī sunt.			
PLUPERFECT	(3d root, perj. pa	rt. and ĕrăm†), h	and been loved.			
Amāt-ŭs ĕrăm,		Rect-us eram,	Audīt-ŭs ĕrām,			
Amāt-ŭs ĕrās,	Monit-us eras,	Rect-us eras,	Audīt-ŭs ĕrās,			
Amat-us erat;	Monit-us erat;	Rect-us erat;	Audīt-ŭs ĕrăt;			
Amat-ī ĕrāmus			Audīt-ī ĕrāmus			
Amat-I ĕratĭs,	Monit-i eratis,	Rect-i ĕrātis.	Audīt-ī ĕrātīs,			
Amat-I ĕrant.	Monit-i erant.	Rect-ī ĕrant.	Audīt-ī ĕrant.			

Ful is sometimes used instead of sum (331, N.).

, Fučrăm is sometimes used instead of črăm (331, N.).

IV.

(rě),

ir, ni, tur.

ăr,

āris(rě),

atur;

amur,

amini.

antur.

s (rĕ),

ir;

ŭr,

in**i,** ur.

loved.

sŭm.

sŭmŭs.

estĭs, sunt.

oved.

ĕrām, ĕrās,

ĕrăt:

ērāmus, ērātis,

ĕrant.

est;

PARADIGM-continued.

FUTURE	PERFECT	(3d	root,	perf.	part.	and	ĕrŏ*),	shall	or	will
			ive be							

340. VOCABULARY.

Accusare, av, at, to accuse.

Admonere, u, it, to admonish, warn.

Bene, well.

Carthaginiensis, is, a Carthaginian.

Clipeus, I, shield.

Damnare, av, at, to condemn.

Discere, didic, to learn.

Donare, av, at, to give, present.

Excitare, av, at, to excite, arouse.

Finire, Iv, It, to finish.
Graeci, orum, the Greeks.
Hasta, ae, spear.
Laudare, av, at, to praise.
Mensis, is, m., month.
Mutare, av, at, to change.
November, bris (abl. I), November
Pugnare, av, at, to fight.
Punire, Iv, It, to punish.
Superare, av, at, to surpass, ixpaper, to go over.

341. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Tempŏra mutantur et nos mutāmur in il is-2. Finītur labor agricŏlae mense Novembri. 3. Vos laudamĭni, puĕri qui bene didicistis. 4. Donābor clipeo et hasta, si bene pro patria pugnavĕro. 5. Admonebĕris, ne iram excĭtes. 6. Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt. 7. Eōdem anno Carthaginienses et Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt 8. Proditiōnis accusāti estis. 9. Ambĭtus accusāti sumus.
- (b) 1. You will be punished. 2. Has he not been punished? 3. We have been admonished not to ac-

^{*} Fuĕrő is sometimes used instead of ĕrő (331, N.).

cuse the king. 4. Has the queen been condemned to death? (No.) 5. Who will be condemned to death? 6. Who have been accused of treason? 7. We shall be presented with two beautiful books. 8. Have you not been presented with a very fine dog? 9. Had not the Greeks been conquered by the Romans? 10. By whom were the Romans conquered? 11. We shall be conquered by the enemy.

LESSON LIX.

Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice.

342. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), may or can be loved, &c.					
Conj. I.	Conj. IL.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.		
Am-ĕr,	Mŏn-eăr,	Rěg-ăr,	Aud-iăr,		
Am-ēris (re),	Mon-earis (re),	Reg-aris (re),	Aud-iāris (re),		
Am-ētur;	Mon-eatur;	Rěg-atur;	Aud-iatur;		
Am-ēmur,	Mon-eamur,	Rĕg-āmŭr,	Aud-iamur,		
Am-ēminī,	Mon-eamini,	Rěg-amini,	Aud-iaminī,		
Am-entur.	Mŏn-eantŭr.	Rěg-antur.	Aud-iantur.		
IMPERFECT	(1st root), migh	ht, could, &c., be	e loved, &c.		
Am-arĕr,	Mon-ērēr,	Răm-ĕrĕr,	Aud-irěr,		
Am-ārēris (re),		Reg-ereris(re)	Aud-īrērīs (re),		
Am-ārētur;			Aud-īrētur;		
Am-ārēmur,	Mŏn-ērēmŭr,	Rĕg-ĕrēmŭr,	Aud-īrēmur,		
Am-aremini,	Mon-eremini,	Rěg-ěrēminī,	Aud-īrēmīnī,		
Am-arentur.	Mŏn-ērentŭr.	Rěg-ěrentur.	Aud-īrentur.		
PERFECT (3d	root-perf. part.	and sim or fue	erim), may have		
	been lov	ed, &c.			
Amat-us sim,	Monit-us sim	Rect-us sim,	Audīt-us sim,		
Amāt-ŭs sīs,	Monit-us sis,	Rect-us sīs,	Audīt-ŭs sīs,		
Amāt-ŭs sĭt,	Monit-us sit;	Rect-us sit;	Audīt-us sit;		
Amat-ī sīmus,	Monit-I simus,	Rect-ī sīmus,	Audīt-ī sīmŭs,		
Amat-I sitis,	Monit-i sitis,	Rect-I sītīs,	Audīt-ī sītīs,		
Amat-I sint.	Monit-i sint.	Rect-ī sint.	Audīt-ī sint.		

An An

P

348

An An An

from diti

Adū Con Dēci de Frau Fŭge Gran

3

pr Nēq Pauj Perfi Prae

Impi

deci

this :

 \mathbf{nned} to

death?

ve you

Had not

10. By

shall be

IV.

ŭr,

ĭnī,

ŭr.

c.

ĭs (rĕ),

ŭr;

nŭr,

nĭnī,

ıtur.

y have

sim,

sīs,

s sīt; sīmŭs, sītĭs,

sint.

s (rĕ), r;

PARADIGM-continued.

Pluperfect (3d root—perf. part. and essem or fuissem), might have been loved, &c.

Amāt-us essēm, Monīt-us essēm, Rect-us essēm, Audīt-us essēm, Amāt-us essēt; Amāt-us essēt; Amāt-ī essēmus Amāt-ī essētīs, Amāt-ī essētīs, Amāt-ī essent.

Monīt-us essētīs, Rect-us essēt; Audīt-us essēt; Audīt-ī essēmus Rect-ī essēmus Audīt-ī essēmus Rect-ī essētīs, Audīt-ī essētīs, Audīt-ī essētīs, Audīt-ī essent.

343. Rule of Syntax.—Verbs signifying to separate from, or deprive of, are followed by the ablative in addition to the accusative of the direct object; e. g.,

Mē *lūcĕ* prīvant. They deprive me *of light*.

344. VOCABULARY.

Adulatio, onis, flattery.

Contra (prep. with acc.), against. Dēcīpērē (iŏ), dēcēp, dēcept, to

deceive.

Fraudārē, āv, āt, to defraud.

Fugere (ið), fug, fugit, to flee. Granum, I, grain, grain of corn.

Imprūdens, tis, inconsiderate, imprudent.

Nëquidëm,* not even.

Pauper, eris, a poor man.

Perfügium, I, refuge.

Praebēre, ŭ, ĭt, to furnish, offer.

Praepărăre, av, at, to prepare.

Princeps, principis, chief, leader. Prīvārē, av, at, to deprive.

Sancīrě, sanx, sanct, to enact, con-

firm.

Sĕnectūs, ūtis, f. old age.

Servare, av, at, to observe, keep.

Spēciosus, a, um, plausible, specious.

Tăm, so.

Verbum, I, word.

Vīvěrě, vix, vict, to live.

345. Exercises.

(a) 1. Non sum tam imprūdens ut verbis speciōsis decipiar. 2. Bonae leges a principībus sanciantur. 3.

^{*} The emphatic word is generally written between the two parts of this word; thus, $n\bar{s}$ $gr\bar{a}n\bar{s}$ $qu\bar{t}d\bar{s}m$, not even a grain.

Praeparētur animus contra omnia. 4. Praebeātur senectūti perfugium. 5. Ne me luce privētis. 6. Ne grano quidem uno paupēres fraudētis. 7. Paupēres ne grano quidem uno fraudentur. 8. Invitus te furti accusaverat. 9. Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romae vivit.

(b) 1. Be not deceived 2. Let him not be deceived.

3. I was so imprudent as to be deceived (that I was deceived) by specious words. 4. You will not be so imprudent as to be deceived by flattery. 5. Let all good laws be observed by the citizens. 6. The boys fled that they might not be punished. 7. Do not defraud the poor. 8. Let not the poor be defrauded.

9. May they, never be defrauded by you. 10. You shall never be defrauded of even a single grain by us.

LESSON LX.

Imperative Mood -Active and Passive.

346. The *Imperative* mood expresses a *command*, an *exhortation*, or *entreaty*. It is used only in the present tense, and in the second and third persons.

347. If a negative accompanies the imperative, it must be expressed in Latin by $n\bar{e}$ (instead of $n\bar{o}n$); e.g.,

Në peccatë, do not sin.

REM.—It will be remembered that a command or exhortation may also be expressed by the present subjunctive (231).

348. The imperative is formed from the first root by the addition of the following endings:

eātur se-6. Ne

upĕres ne te furti nae vivit. deceived. at I was not be so . Let all The boys o not de-

efrauded. 10. You n by us.

ACTIVE

	AC	TIVE.	
S. 2. a or atŏ, r. 2. atĕ, antŏ,	stotě, etě, etot	ĭtŏ.	Conj. IV. I or Itŏ. Itŏ. Itĕ, Itōtè. iuntŏ.
	PA	SSIVE.	
S 2 5r8 0	w stan . sud on st	X= 1 X== VAV	

- 1	,	and 0	
- 1	ētor, ēmīnī,	itor,	irë <i>or</i> īt ŏr. ītŏr. īmĭnī. iuntŏr.

349. Paradigm of the Imperative Mood.

		CONJUGAT	TION I.				
		Active.	Passive.				
8.	2.	Am-ā or ăm-ātŏ,	Am-are or am-ator,				
	0	love thou, do thou love.	be thou loved.				
D		Am-ātŏ, let him love. Am-ātĕ or ăm-ātōtĕ,	Am-ātor, let him be loved.				
	di.	love ye, do ye love.	Am-āmĭnī, be ye loved.				
	3.	Am-anto, let them love.	Am-antor, let them be loved.				
		CONJUGAT					
			ION II.				
S.	2.	Mŏn-ē or mŏn-ētŏ,	Mŏn-ērē or mŏn-ētŏr,				
		advise thou.	be thou advised.				
m	3.	Mon-ēto, let him advise.	Mon-ētor, let him be advised.				
P.	2.	Mon-ētě or mon-ētote, advise ye	Mon-emini, be ye advised.				
	3.	Mon-ento, let them advise.	Mon-entor, la: them be advised.				
	CONJUGATION III.						
S.	2.	Rěg-ě or rěg-itě,	Rěg-ěrě or rěg-ĭtor,				
		rule thou.	be thou ruled.				
	3.	Rěg-itő, let him rule.	Rěg-ĭtŏr, let him be ruled.				
P	2.	Rěg-itě or rěg-itotě, rule ye.	Rěg-iminī, be ye ruled.				
	3.	Reg-unto, let them rule.	Reg-untor, let them be ruled.				
	CONJUGATION IV.						
S.	2.	Aud-I or aud-Itŏ,	Aud-īrē or aud-ītor,				
		hear thou.	be thou heard.				
	3.	Aud-Ito, let him hear.	Aud-ītŏr, let him be heard.				
F,	2.	Aud-ītě or aud-ītōtě, hear ye.	Aud-imini, be ye heard.				
	3.	Aud-iunto, let them hear.	Aud-iuntor, let them be heard.				

nand, an present

ative, it n); e.g.,

tation may

root by

in

of

ea

11

12

pr

en

te

ar

di

ăn

REM.—The second forms of the imperative (to, tot., nto, &c.) are used in laws, rules, and other formal expressions of duty or permission.

350. VOCABULARY.

Ac, and. Aměricanus, a, um, American.

Audīrě. Iv, It, to hear, listen to. Castīgarě, av, at, to chastise.

Cogitare, av, at, to think about. Compescere, compescu, to re-

strain, repress.

Conjux, ŭgis, m. or f., husband, wife, spouse.

Conservare, av, at, to preserve. Consilium, I, advice, instruction. Corrumpere, corrupt, to mislead, corrupt.

Dēfenděrě, dēfend, dēfens, to defend.

Dēglūběrě, dēglupt, to flay, to skin.

Exorare, av, at, to supplicate. Liberi, orum (pl.), children. Nomen, inis, name. Pernicies, el, destruction.

Populus, I, people.

Quě (joined to the word it connects), and.

Ruěrě, ru, ruit (or rut), to rush. Sălūs, ūtis, f., safety.

Scriběrě, scrips, script, to write. Sěpělíré, iv, sěpult, to bury, inter. Tonděrě, totond, tons, to shear, shave.

Vestěr, tră, trům, your. Víděrě, víd, vís, to see.

351. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Caium ne accūsa. 2. Balbum ne accusāte. 3. Tonde oves: ne deglūbe. 4. Tondēte oves: ne deglubīte. 5. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium. 6. Audīte, pueri, consilia sapientium, et vidēte, ne in perniciem ruātis. 7. Exorāre, mi (115) pater, compesce iram. 8. Nemo in urbe sepelītor. 9. Lex erat his verbis scripta: "Nemo in urbe sepelītor." 10. Audi, mi fili (103, N.), ab improbis ne corrumpītor. 11. De vobis ac de libēris vestris cogitāte. 12. Conservāte vos, conjūges, libēros, fortunasque vestras. 13. Populi Romani nomen salutemque defendite.
- (b) 1. Do not accuse me of theft. 2. Let him shear the sheep. 3. Let no one break the laws. 4. Let the laws be observed. 5. Do not chastise the slave. 6.

2) are used

permission.

plicate.

ldren.

n.

Let not the slaves be chastised. 7. Let him be buried in the city. 8. Defend (ye) the name and the safety of the American people. 9. Defend (ye) the American eagle. 10. Let the American eagle be defended by all. 11. Boys, listen to (hear) the instruction of your fathers. 12. Do not break your word.

LESSON LXL

Infinitive Mood.

352. The *Infinitive* mood (as already stated, 9) represents the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number.

353. The infinitive mood has in each voice three tenses; viz., the present, perfect, and future.

REM.—We must here give the formation of the supine and future act. participle (both of which we shall soon notice), as they are used in forming the future infinitive.

354. The future active participle and the active supine are formed from the third root; the former by the addition of ūrūs (ă, ŭm); as, ămāt (3d root), ămātūrūs (ă, ŭm); and the latter by the addition of ŭm; as, ămāt, ămātūm.

355. The infinitives are formed as follows:

1) The present, from the first root by the addition of the endings:

Conj. I. Conj. II. Conj. III. Conj. IV. Act. ārĕ, ērĕ, ĕrĕ, īrĕ. Pass. ārī, ērī, ī, īrī.

2) The perfect active, from the second root by

ury, inter. , to shear,

rd u con

), to rush.

to write.

ves: ne um. 6. o in perompesce erat his D. Audi, 11. De

m shear Let the

Populi

np

by ing

Cla Cla

Cŭ

Div

Dŏ Oe

the addition of the ending isse; and the per fect passive from the perfect participle and esse.

3) The future active, from the future active participle and esse; and the future passive from the supine and $\bar{\imath}r\bar{\imath}$.

356. Paradigm of the Infinitive Mood.

	CON	J. I.
	Active.	Passive.
Pres. Perf.	Am-are, to love. Amav-isse, to have loved.	Am-arī, to be loved. Amat-us essē, to have been loved.
Fut.	Amat-urus esse, to be about to love.	Amāt-um īrī, to be about to be loved.
	CONJ	т. н.
Pres. Perf.	Mŏn-ērē, to advise. Mŏnu-issē, to have advised.	Mŏn-ērī, to be advised. Mŏnĭt-ŭs essĕ, to have been advised.
Fut.	Monit-urus esse, to be about to advise.	Mŏnĭt-ŭm iri, to be about to be advised.
	CONJ	. III.
Pres. Perf.	Rěg- ěrě , to rule. Rex-issč, to have ruled.	Rěg-I, to be ruled. Rect-ŭs essě, to have been ruled.
Fut.	Rect-ūrūs essē, to be about to rule.	Rect-um īrī, to be about to be ruled.
	CONJ	IV.
Perf.	Aud·īrē, to hear. Audīv-issē, to have heard. Audīt-ūrūs essē, to be about to hear.	Aud-īrī, to be heard. Audīt-ūs essē, to have been heard. Audīt-ŭm īrī, to be about to be heard.

357. Rule of Syntax.—The subject of an infinitive must be put in the accusative; e. g.,

Videt të essë beātum. He sees that you are happy. he per ind esse. ive par-

rom the

56, 357

d. loved.

sed. advised.

ruled.

reard

initive

REM. 1.—The accusative to is the subject of esse,

REM. 2.—The use of the infinitive, as the subject of a finite verb, has been already considered (184).

INFINITIVE MOOD.

358. Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive, either alone or with other words connected with it, may depend upon another verb; e. g.,

- 1. Cupit săpere. He desires to be wise.
- 2. Spērăt sē victūrum esse. He hopes that he shall live.

REM. 1.—In most cases the infinitive is really the direct object of the verb on which it depends; thus săpěrě (to be wise) is really the object desired. He desires (what i) to be wise.

REM. 2.—In the compound infinitives (i. e., those which are made up of two words) the participles must agree in gender, number, and case with the subject of those infinitives; but of course the supine remains unaltered. Thus, in the second example, victūrum is in the accusative masculine singular, to agree with sē, the subject of the infinitive.

359. Two or more English sentences, joined by the conjunction that, are often made one Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the following nominative into the accusative and the verb into the infinitive.

360. VOCABULARY.

Certus, a, um, certain. Clemens, tis, mild, merciful. Convertere, convert, convers, to turn, convert. Cupere (id), cupiv (or i), cupit, to desire. Dividere, divis, divis, to divide. Docere, u, doct, to teach. Oculus, I, eye.

Pars, partis, part. Peccare, av, at, to an. Praedă, ae, booty. Săpěrě, Iv, i, or u, to be wise. Spērare, av, at, to hope. Timere, u, to fear. Tres, tria, three. Venděrě, vendíd, vendít, to sell.

801

361. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Balbi est omnia in tres partes dividère. 2. Nunquam utile est peccare. 3. Omnes homines beati esse cupiunt. 4. Cupio me esse clementem. 5. Docēmus pueros ut sapere discant. 6. Video in me omnium vestrum oculos esse conversos. 7. Sperant se victuros esse. 8. Certum est Balbum patriam auro vendidisse.
- (b) 1. He is said to have divided the booty into ten parts. 2. They are said to have lived at Rome five years. 3. We desire to be happy. 4. You all desire to be happy. 5. He is said to have been very happy. 6. He says, that all eyes were turned upon him. 7. He sees that you are happy. 8. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. 9. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. 10. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors very highly. 2 11. It is certain, that the avaricious value money very highly. 12. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned to death.

LESSON LXII.

Participles .- Ablative Absolute.

362. The participle is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective.

363. A verb may have four participles, viz.: the present and future in the active voice, and the perfect and future in the passive.

364. The participles are formed as follows:

1) The present active in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings:

ictūros

lidisse.

nto ten

e five

all de-

very

upon ertain,

ertain, n, that

. It is

highly.

death.

ire. 2.
s beāti
Docēmnium

2.
s beāti
Amans (loving), mŏnens, rĕgens, audiens.

2) The future active, from the third root, by to

- 2) The future active, from the third root, by the addition of the ending ūrūs (ā, ŭm) (302); as, Amātūrūs (about to love), monitūrūs, rectūrūs, audītūrūs.
- 3) The perfect passive, from the third root, by the addition of the ending ŭs (ă, ŭm) (302); as, Amātŭs (loved), mŏnĭtŭs, rectŭs, audītŭs.
- 4) The future passive in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings:

andus, endus, endus, iendus, to the first root; as,

Amandus (deserving to be loved), monendus, regendus, audiendus.

365. The participle in ns answers to the English participle in ing.
The participle in us answers to the English participle in ed, en, t, &c.

The participle in dus must be translated by the present infinitive passive, as used with a substantive. (A termination to be desired; a crime to be abhorred.)

The participle in rus must be translated by 'about to (write);' or, 'going to (write).'

366. Rule of Syntax.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence are put in the ablative (called absolute); e.g.,

Caesar, victīs $\begin{cases} Eng. \ Id., \ \text{Caesar naving conquered} \\ \text{his enemies.} \end{cases}$ hostībūs, $\begin{cases} Lat, \ Id. \ \text{Caesar his enemies being} \\ \text{conquered.} \end{cases}$

which

: the

tions,

367. The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the ablative absolute, or by quum (when) with the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive. The perfect subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the present tense; e. g.,

Caesar having conquered Caesar, quum vicisset hostes, his enemies, Caesar, victis hostibus.

368. VOCABULARY.

Acquitas, atis, equity, justice. Angustiae, arum (pl.), a narrow pass, defile.

Căněrě, cěcin, cant, to sing. Compellěrě, compůl, compuls, to

drive, compel.

Constituere, constitu, constitut, to arrange, constitute.

Deprěhenděrě, deprěhend, deprěhens, to seize, catch. Dēvincērē, devic, devict, to conquer.

Exclamare, av, at, to cry out, exclaim.

Immergěrě, immers, immers, to plunge into, immerse.

Lūděrě, lūs, lūs, to play, to sport. Mănērě, mans, mans, to remain. Quum, when.

Viŏlārē, av, at, to violate, to break.

369. Exercises.

- (a) 1. In via ludentem puĕrum vidi. 2. In via ludentes deprehendĭmus. 3. Caesar fugientes hostes in angustias compŭlit. 4. Fracto puĕri brachio, Romae manēbit. 5. Violātis patriae legĭbus, vita indignus est. 6. Puer, quum manus in aquam immersisset, exclamāvit. 7. Caesar, quum devicisset hostes, summa aequitāte res constituit.
- (b) 1. Did you hear the nightingales singing in the grove? 2. I saw the fishes swimming on the surface (top) of the water. 10 3. Did you see the girls playing in the garden? 4. Have you not seen the boys playing in the street? 5. Caius, having broken his arm, remained at Rome. 6. The slave, having killed his

(when)
perfect
in the

hostēs, is.

, to con-

y out, exmers, to

to sport.

to break.

via luostes in Romae dignus set, ex-

summa

in the surface playing s plays arm,

ed his

master, was condemned. 7. They say that the slave has been condemned to death. 8. You are said to have been accused of treason. 9. Having violated the laws of the state, we shall all be punished.

LESSON LXIII.

Gerunds and Supines.

370. THE Gerund is that part of the verb which corresponds to the participial substantive in ing in English.

371. The gerund is really a verbal substantive of the neuter gender, und only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

REM.—The infinitive supplies the place of the nominative of the gerund, as that is sometimes used as the subject of a verb (184).

372. The genitive of the gerund ends, in the four conjugations, respectively in

1. 2. 3. 4. andī, endī, iendī.

Amandī (of loving), monendī, regendī, audiendī.

373. The gerund is declined in the parts in use precisely like a neuter noun of the second declension; e. g.,

Gen. Amandī, of loving.

Dat. Amande, to or for loving.

Acc. Amandum, loving.

Abl. Amando, by loving.

Rem.—The gerund, being a part of the verb, of course governs the same case.

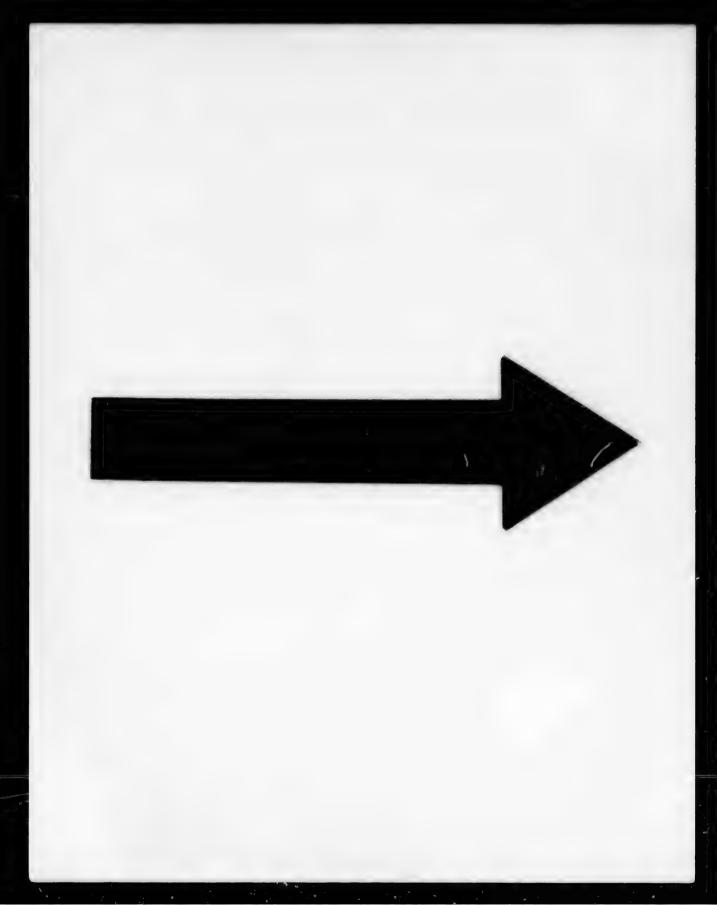
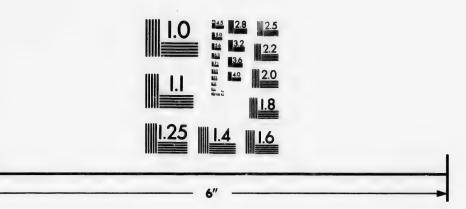


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580 (716) 872-4503 SIM STATE OF THE S



Ji

d

16

tı

 \mathbf{D}

9. te

le

ir

ir

n

to

1

w

874. Rule of Syntax.—The gerund is governed like a noun in the same case; e. g.,

Inter ludendum.
(During playing.)
While they are playing.

375. The Latin verb has two supines; one in $\bar{u}m$ and one in \bar{u} .

376. The supines are formed by adding the above endings to the third root; e.g.,

Amātum (to love), monitum, rectum, audītum. Amātu (to be loved), monitu, rectu, audītu.

REM.—The supine in $\check{u}m$ is generally Englished by the present infinitive active, and that in a by the present infinitive passive, though it may be translated by the active, if that gives better English. Both supines are really active; thus, $fact\check{u}m$ means $for\ doing$, and $fact\check{u}$ in doing.

377. Rule of Syntax.—The supine in $\tilde{u}m$ follows verbs of motion, to express the purpose or object of that motion; e.g.,

Mittit lēgātōs pācĕm pĕtītūm. He sends ambassadors to sue for peace.

378. Rule of Syntax.—The supine in \bar{u} is used after adjectives signifying good or bad, easy or difficult, agreeable or disagreeable, &c.; e. g.,

Difficile est dictū. It is difficult to say.

379. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives signifying desire, knowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fulness,

erned

and the like, together with their contraries, govern the genitive; e.g.,

Cŭpĭdŭs laudĭs, desirous of praise.

380. VOCABULARY.

Aquari, at, to bring water.
Aquatum (sup.), to bring water.
Auxilium, I, aid, help.
Cupidus, a, um, desirous, desirous of.
Jucundus, a, um, pleasant, delightful.
Mirabilis, e, wonderful.
Pabulari, at, to forage.

Pabulatum (sup.), to forage.
Petere, Iv (i), It, to seek, ask, sue for.
Rogare, av, at, to ask.
Sumptus, us, expense.
Supervacuus, a, um, unnecessary.
Venari, at, to hunt.
Venatum (sup.), to hunt.
Vitare, av, at, to avoid, shun.

381. Exercises.

(a) 1. Cupidi sunt docendi. 2. Num puĕri ludendo discunt? 3. Puer cupidus est discendi. 4. Misērunt legātos pacem petītum. 5. Legātos ad Caesărem mittunt rogātum auxilium. 6. Jucundum est audītu. 7. Difficile est factu. 8. Mittantur legāti pacem petītum. 9. Quantum tempŏris ludendo amisērunt! 10. Multum temporis ludendo amittēmus.

(b) 1. He learns by teaching. 2. Have we not learned by teaching? 3. Is there not much pleasure in learning? 4. How much pleasure (there) is in learning! 5. There is much pleasure in teaching. 6. Do not boys learn while playing? 7. The boy has been sent a hunting. 8. Caesar has sent the fourth legion to forage. 9. Ambassadors have been sent to ask peace. 10. It is difficult to say. 11. It is wonderful to tell. 12. Has not Caesar sent the fourth legion to bring water?

n and

pose

infinithough

doing,

llows ct of

used icult,

ying ness,

Cŭ

El Er

Ex

Gĕ

Hă

arı

ru

fui

5.

a (

tu

ha

Wa

op.

for

for

pe

lav

the At

sta

LESSON LXIV.

Participle in dus.

382. Instead of a gerund governing its case, we may use a participle in dus agreeing with a noun; e.g.,

(Eng.) The intention of writing a letter.

(Lat.) Consilium scrībendi epistolam.

(or) Consilium scribendae epistolae.*

383. Thus, then, *ĕpistŏlă scrībendā* may be declined throughout.

Sing.

N. Epistöla scribenda, a letter to be written.

G. epistŏlae scribendae, of writing a letter.

D. epistolae scribendae, to or for writing a letter.

Acc. (ad) epistolam scribendam, to write a letter (or for writing a letter).

Abl. epistŏlā scribendā, by writing a letter

Plur.

N. epistŏlae scribendae, letters to be written.

G. epistölārum scribendārum, of writing letters.

D. epistŏlis scribendis, to or for writing letters.

Acc. (ad) epistolas scribendas, to write letters (or for writing letters).

Abl. epistölis scribendis, by writing letters.

384. VOCABULARY.

Adjumentum, I, aua, help. Arripere (io), arripu, arrept, to snatch, seize. Athenae, arum, Athens, city of Greece. Augere, aux, auct, to increase.

^{*}The real meaning of 'consilium scribendae epistolae' is 'the design of (— about) a letter to be written.'

Cŭpĭdiŏr, ōrĭs (comp.), fonder. Elĕgantiă, ae, elegance.

Emere, em, empt, to buy, purchase.

Exercere, exercu, exercit, to practise, exercise.

Gěrěrě, gess, gest, to carry on, to wage.

Hăbere, ŭ, ĭt, to have, enjoy.

Lěgěrě, lēg, lect, to read.

Obtinere, obtinu, obtent, to obtain, acquire.

Occasio, onis, opportunity.

Peritus, a, um, skilful, skilled

Rěgěrě, rex, rect, to govern

Studiosus, a, um, very fond.

385. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Balbus omnem occasionem exercendae virtūtis arripiēbat. 2. Multi cupidiores sunt emendorum librorum quam legendorum. 3. Caesar belli gerendi perītus fuit. 4. Omnis occasio exercendae virtūtis arripiātur. 5. Certum est, omnem occasionem exercendae virtūtis a Christiāno arripi. 6. Omnis dicendi elegantia augētur legendis oratorībus et poētis. 7. Homo magna habet adjumenta ad obtinendam sapientiam.
- (b) 1. The boy is very fond of writing letters. 2. He was very fond of hearing the orator. 3. Seize every opportunity of practising virtue. 4. The Romans were fond of waging war. 5. Ambassadors are sent to beg for peace. 6. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for peace. 7. The law will be broken. 8. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 9. It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked at Rome and at Athens. 10. Let your word be kept. 11. Let the state be ruled by the wise.

lined

may

etter. er (ot

ers. s. or for

ity of

design

ease.

D

Ír

Ji

n

v

d

n

LESSON LXV.

First Conjugation.

386. VOCABULARY.*

Adeo, so, in such a manner. Cantare, av, at, to sing. Certamen, inis, contest. Crabro, onis, wasp. Inter, between, during.

Interambulandum, while walking. Irrītare, av, at, to trouble, irritate. Ornare, av, at, to adorn. Robustus, a, um, robust, strong. Spoliare, av, at, to rob of, despoil.

387. Exercises.

(a) 1. Sapientis est supervacuos sumptus vitāre. 2. Crabrōnem ne irrītes (232). 3. Crabrōnem ne irrītāte (347). 4. Irrītasne crabrōnes? 5. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? 6. Inter ambulandum cantābant. 7. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut nemo eum in certamīne superavērit. 8. Prata et agri pulcherrīmis florībus ornantur. 9. Oculisne me, judīces, privabītis? 10. Violātis patriae legībus (366), mea me laude spoliātis. 11. Num mea laude spoliābor?

(b) 1. It is the duty of a Christian' to avoid unnecessary expense. 2. Did they not themselves violate those laws? 3. Let not the laws be violated by Christians. 4. We hope we shall never be accused. 5. Have you ever been accused? 6. Let your laws be kept. 7. Is it not certain that the laws are broken by the wicked? 8. Did they not condemn him to death? 9. Balbus is so strong that he has never been surpassed in a contest. 10. Have I not been deprived of my eyes?

^{*} Preparatory to this exercise, the pupil is expected to review thoroughly the Paradigm of the First Conjugation. See 588.

walking, irritate.

strong.

despoil.

re. 2.

rritate

legem

nt. 7.

amine

oribus

2 10.

oliātis.

unne-

violate

Chris-

d. 5.

ws be

cen by

leath?

passed

of my

iew tho-

LESSON LXVI.

Second Conjugation.

388. Rule of Syntax.—Many verbs which signify to ask, demand, or teach, together with $c\bar{e}l\bar{a}r\check{e}$ (to conceal), take two objects, one of a person and another of a thing; e.g.,

Caesar frümentüm Aeduös flägĭtābăt. Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

389. VOCABULARY.*

Divitiacus, I, Divitiacus, man's name.
Imperare, av, at, to command, give commands.
Jubere, juss, juss, to direct, order.

Mordere, momord, mors, to bite Parere, ŭ, it, to obey. Propensus, ä, ŭm, inclined to. Sanare, av, at, to cure, reform. Tacere, ŭ, it, to be silent, to pass over in silence.

390. Exercises.

(a) 1. Hostes non timēmus. 2. Nonne respondēbis?
3. Docendo docēmur. 4. Ego multa tacui: multa sanāvi. 5. Ad docendum propensi sun 6. Pareat anīmus: non impēret 7. Caesar Divitiācum ad se vocāri jubet. 8. Te haec docēbo. 9. Puĕros haec docēbant. 10. Puĕri haec docti sunt. 11. Canis puĕrum momordit. 12. Nonne oves totondistis?

(b) 1. Do you not fear the enemy? 2. Do not fear the enemy. 3. Who taught the boy this? 4. Did you teach those boys this? 5. Who sheared this sheep? 6. Let no one shear my sheep. 7. Did the dog bite you? 8. I have been bitten by your dog. 9. We

^{*} The pupil will, of course, review Paradigm. See 589.

ne

lit lit re 1(

rĭ

bε

bε

ne

V

ar

be

th

fa

Aı

Ca

Cl

Fu

H

In

Ita

do

have ourselves been taught by teaching. 10. Did you not laugh at your father?

LESSON LXVII.

Third Conjugation.

391. Rule of Syntax.—After verbs of motion:

1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is put in the accusative without a preposition; e. g.,

Romam venīre, to come to Rome.

2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is put in the ablative without a preposition; e. g.,

Romā věnīrě, to come from Rome.

REM.—Before other names of places the preposition is generally expressed.

(Review Paradigm 590.)

392. VOCABULARY.

Agĕrĕ, ēg, act, to do, act. Committĕrĕ, mīs, miss, to engage.

Curare, av, at, to attend to, cause, &c.

Dărě, děd, dắt, to give. Eques, itis, horseman. Gratia, ae, favor; pl., thanks. Gratias agere, to give thanks, to thank.

Injuria, ae, injury, wrong done. Pons, tis, m., bridge.

Responsum, I, answer, reply.

Těgěrě, tex, tect, to cover, con-

ceal. Unquăm, ever.

393. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium Athēnas mittat. 2. Servum Athēnas miserat. 3. Mihi gratias egistis. 4. Sicut vixi, ut

d you

-898

n: ed, if sative

eds, if lative

enerally

anks, to

done.

ply.

hēnas xi, ut

nemo unquam me ullīus injuriae accusaverit. 5. Pontem in flumine faciendum curāvit. 6. Equites proelium committunt. 7. Hoc responso dato, equites proelium committunt. 8. Certum est, Caesarem belli gerendi perītum fuisse. 9. Legātos ad eum misērunt. 10. Omnis dicendi elegantia augētur legendis oratoribus (382).

(b) 1. He has sent an ambassador to Rome. 2. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for (377) peace. 3. Ambassadors have been sent to sue for peace. 4. He has never been sent to Athens. 5. He is said to have been very desirous of (379) learning. 6. They say that you are desirous of engaging battle. 7. They are said to be skilful in waging war. 8. Having made this reply they engage battle. 9. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

LESSON LXVIII.

Fourth Conjugation.

(Review Paradigm 591.)

394. VOCABULARY.

Antea, before. Captīvus, a, um, captive. Clauděrě, claus, claus, to shut. Fundus, I, estate, farm. Hannibal, ălis, Hannibal. Intra (prep. with accus.), within. Ităliă, ae, Italy.

Praeceptum, i, precept, instruction Praesens, tis, present. Succurrere, curr, curs, to aid, succor. Tărentum, I, Tarentum, a town

in Italy.

Větustůs, ž, ŭm, old, ancient.

395. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec ex captīvis audiverat. 2. Vēnit sacer. dos ut aram sanguine aspergat. 3. Miles Tarentum

Ars

Bea

Crē

Cŭp

Făv

Ign

[nvi

(

anĭ libi

par

 Im_{I}

bus

tiār

bea

hav

nob

I w

Yo

pas wei

tiar

(

vēnit. 4. Hunc audiēbant anteā, nunc praesentēm vident. 5. Fundo in tres partes divīso, Romam vēnit. 6. Veni ut mihi succurras. 7. Hannibal, Alpībus superātis, in Italiam venit. 8. Lex erat Romanōrum vetustissīma, ne quis intra urbem sepelirētur.

(b) 1. Have not the boys been sent to bring water?
2. They have come to shut the gates of the city. 3. Will you come to shut the gates? 4. Let them come to shut the gates. 5. Let all come to hear the instructions of the wise. 6. Let the instructions of the wise be always heard. 7. By hearing the instructions of the wise we shall learn wisdom. 8. He has buried his father. 9. Has he buried him within the city? 10. Do not bury him within the city.

LESSON LXIX.

Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object.

396. The use of the indirect object has been already illustrated; but as some verbs in Latin are followed by the dative (the case of the indirect object) where we use no preposition, and should therefore be led by the English to put the accusative, it may be well to notice a few instances of this. The verbs of this class are principally such as signify:

To command or obey, please or displease, favor or in jure, serve or resist, together with to indulge, spare, pardon, envy, believe, persuade.*

entěm

vēnit.

us su-

m ve

vater?

y. 3.

come

struc-

e wise

ons of

ed his

? 10.

lreadv

red by

ere we

oy the

notice

ss are

or in-

e, par-

REM. 1.—Văcară (to have leisure) and nuberă (to marry, used of females), also take the dative.

REM. 2.—It will be readily perceived, in most cases, that the dative after the above verbs is really the *indirect* and not the *direct* object; thus, *imperate* (to command) means to give a command to; placere (to please) to give pleasure to; and so of most, if not all, of the others.

397. VOCABULARY.

Ars, artis, art.
Beate, happily.
Crēdere, crēdid, crēdit, to believe, put confidence in.
Cupiditas, atis, desire, passion.
Favere, fav, faut, to favor.
Ignoscere, nov, not, to pardon.
Indulgere, induls, indult, to indulge.
Invidere, vid, vis, to envy.

Nocere, nocu, nocit, to hurt.
Parcere, peperc, parcit, to spare.
Persuadere, persuas, persuas, to persuade.
Resistere, stit, stit, to resist.
Servire, iv (i), it, to serve, be a slave to.
Stüdere, u, to study, strive for.
Văcare, av, at, to have leisure for.

398. Exercises.

(a) 1. Irae multos annos serviĕras. 2. Regendis animi cupiditatibus studeāmus. 3. Caesar legendo libro vacābit. 4. Christiāni est patriae suae legibus parēre. 5. Ignosce mihi. 6. Nemo tibi credet. 7. Improbus patriae legibus non parēbit. 8. Num legibus parēbunt improbi, violāta fide? 9. Discant Christiāni animis suis imperāre. 10. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

(b) 1. I would have favored Caius. 2. You would have resisted anger. 3. You (pl.) would have hurt nobody. 4. We would have indulged the desire. 5. I was hurting myself. 6. You were hurting me. 7. You had hurt Caius. 8. You had been-the-slave-of passion. 9. Do not be-the slave-of passion. 10. You were sparing the enemies. 11. It is the duty of a Christian to envy nobody. 12. Do not envy the good. 13.

It is pleasant to succor the miserable. 14. Nobody will believe the wicked. 15. Death spares nobody. 16. They had spared the gate of the city. 17. He spares himself in the winter. 18. He does not spare even himself. 19. You will never have persuaded me. 20. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

LESSON LXX.

Deponent Verbs.

899. A DEPONENT verb is one which has a passive form, but an active meaning.

400. Deponent verbs have all the four participles; e. g.,

Loquens, speaking;
 locutus, having spoken;
 locuturus, about to speak;
 loquendus, to be spoken.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the perfect active, which other verbs do not have.

401. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The deponent verbs, ūtŏr, fruŏr, fungŏr, potiŏr, vescŏr, dīgnŏr, and their compounds, usually take the ablative; e. g.,

Völuptātĕ fruĭtŭr, he enjoys pleasure.

REM.—The ablative after the above is not strictly the object, but the ablative of means; thus, to enjoy pleasure, is to be delighted with pleasure.

402. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of reminding, remembering, forgetting, and pitying, usually take the genitive of the object remembered, forgotten, &c.; e. g.,

Reminiscor beneficii tui, I remember your kindness

Alī Běi Fla

40

Fur Loc Mă Mis

Obl

Ho ōru 4. est

vit

dis

life des

the que spa Wi

nor

tive

Nobody

nobody.

17. He

t spare

ded me.

f.

REM.—Most of these verbs, except those signifying to pity, sometimes take the accusative instead of the genitive.

403. VOCABULARY.

Aliquando, some time or other.
Beneficium, I, benefit.
Flagitium, L. crime.
Fungi, funct, to discharge.
Loqui, locut, to speak.
Male, badly.
Misereri, miserit, or misert, to pity.
Oblivisci, oblit, to forget.

Odium, I, hatred.
Officium, I, duty.
Post (prep. with accus.), after.
Potiri, potit, to get possession.
Recordari, at, to remember, 2
recall to mind.
Sempiternus, a, um, eternal.
Uti, as, to use.

passive 404. Exercises.

(a) 1. Christianōrum est miserēri paupērum. 2. Homo improbus aliquando cum dolore flagitiorum suorum recordabĭtur. 3. Multi beneficiis male utuntur.
4. Vincāmus odium, pacēque potiāmur. 5. Christiāni
est injuriārum oblivisci. 6. Beātus est, qui omnībus
vitae officiis fungĭtur. 7. Elegantiam loquendi legendis oratoribus et poētis auxĕrant.

(b) 1. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. 2. Let us use our horses. 3. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. 4. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? 5. Is the life that we now enjoy eternal? 6. Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life. 7. Have you not spared the conquered?* 8. Spare (pl.) the conquered. 9. Let us spare the conquered. 10. We will resist anger. 11. Will you not resist anger? 12. Let Caius, who sold

spoken ; ndus, to

es; e. g.,

iple of the

bs, *ūtŏr*, ir com•

ct, but the ghted with

, rememgenitive

kindness

^{*} Participles as well as adjectives (117) are sometimes used substantively.

his country for gold, be condemned to death. 13. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treason.

LESSON LXXI.

Irregular Verbs.

405. The irregular verbs are those which deviate from the ordinary rules, not only in the formation of roots, but also in the inflection of some of their

temas.

406. The irregular verb possě (to be able), compounded of pot (potis, able) and essě (to be), is conjugated like the simple essě, except,

1) T before s becomes s; as, possum (potsum).

- 2) The f in the second root is dropped; as, pŏtu (potfu).
- 3) In the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive there is a contraction; as, possě (for potessě), possěm (for potessěm).

407. Paradigm.

Possě, to be able; 2d root, potu.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. Possum, potes, potest, possumus, potestis, possunt.

Imp. pŏtěrăm; Fut. pŏtěrŏ; Perf. pŏtu-ī; Pluperf. pŏtu-ĕrăm; Fut. Perf. pŏtu-ĕrŏ.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. possim; Imp. possem; Perf. potu-erim; Pluperf. potu-issem.

INFINITIVE

Pres. possě; Perf. potu-issě.

PARTICIPLE.

Potens (used as an adjective, powerful).

late

408

R

40
poun
to wi
conju

4:

٧č

3. Let

ccused

408. The various forms of posse are often best translated by the auxiliaries, can, could, &c.; e. g.,

Egŏ făcĕrĕ possum, I can do (am able to do).

Rem.—When a past tense of posse is thus translated by could, any present infinitive depending upon it must be translated by the English perfect; e. g.,

Egŏ făcĕrĕ pŏtuī, I could have done.

409. The irregular verb vellě, to will, or be willing, and its compounds, nollě, to be unwilling (from non and vellě), and mallě, to wish rather, to prefer (from mag [magis, more] and vellě), are conjugated as in the following:

410. Paradigms.

Vellĕ.		Nollĕ.		Mallĕ.
2d root, võlu.		2d root, nõlu.		2d root, mālu.
		INDICATIVE.		
		PRESENT.		
Vŏlð,	1	Nolö,	1	Malŏ,
Vis,		Nonvis,		Māvīs,
Vult;		Nonvult;		Mavult;
Volumus,		Nolumus,	-	Malumus,
Vultīs, Võlunt.		Nonvultis, Nolunt.		Mavultĭs, Malunt.
volunt.	1	Molulit.	'	Dialunt.
		IMPERFECT.		
Văl-ēbăm, bās, &c	. [Nõl-ēbăm, b ās, & c	. [Mal-ēbăm, bas, &
		FUTURE.		
Vŏl-ăm.		Nol-ăm.	- 1	Māl-ăm.
	•		•	
		PERFECT.		
Vŏlu-ī.	1	Nolu-ï.		Mālu-ī.
		PLUPERFECT.		
Vŏlu-ĕrām.	1	Nolu-ĕrăm.	1	Malu-ĕrăm.
		FUTURE PERFECT		
Volu-ĕrö.	1	Nolu-ĕrŏ.	1	Malu-erő.

deviate tion of I their

, comconju-

ŭm). as, *pŏtu*

j*unctive* ŏtessĕ),

t. ĕrăm;

pŏtu-

5.

ma Dis tāti anī vol vār

not the tha be you lear 11.

as f

act.

100

PARADIGMS-continued.

	SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.		
Věl-ĭm, is, &c.	Nol-im, is, &c.	i	Mal-im, is, &c.
Vell-ĕm, ēs,&c.		1	Mall-ĕm.
	PERFECT.		
Vŏlu-ĕrĭm.	Nolu-ĕrĭm.	1	Malu-ĕrĭm.
	PLUPERFECT.		
Vŏlu-issēm.	Nolu-issem.	1	Mālu-iss ĕm.
	IMPERATIVE.		
₹	Nol-ī or ītŏ, Nol-ītĕ,ītōtĕ.		
	INFINITIVE.		
Pres. Vellě. Perf. Vŏlu-issĕ.	Nollě. Nolu-issě.		Mallě. Malu-issě.
	PARTICIPLES.		
Vŏlens.	Nolens.	1	

411. VOCABULARY.

Animal, alis, animal. Occiděrě, occid, occis, to kill. Corrigërë, correx, correct, to cor-Possě, potu, to be able. rect, reform. Praeteritus, a, um, past; prao Cor, cordis, n., heart. terită (neut. pl.), the past. Mallě, malu, to prefer wish ra-Probus, a, um, honest, upright. ther. Scīpio, onis, Scipio, a distin-Nollě, nolu, to be unwilling. guished Roman. Nullus, ă, um (113, R.), no, not Sině, without. Vellě, volu, to wish. any.

412. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec facere possumus. 2. Haec facere potusti. 3. Multum discere vult. 4. Nolui hoc facere.

s, &c.

1, 412

u.

m.

o kill. t; prae

past. pright. t distin

potufacĕre.

5. Praeterīta mutāre non possumus. 6. Nullum anīmal quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest. 7 Discat ut possit docēre. 8. Num puĕri regendae civi tātis (382) perīti esse possunt? 9. Si vis beātus esse, animo impera. 10. Probi semper vitam corrigere volunt. 11. Scipio dicēbat, malle se unum civem servare, quam mille hostes occidere.

(b) 1. Do you wish to change the past? 2. We do not wish to change the past. 3. You (pl.) cannot change the past. 4. We cannot shun death. 5. Let us learn, that we may be able to teach others. 6. They wish to be happy. 7. We all wish to be happy. 8. Could you not have seen the king? 9. We might have learned much. 10. We were unwilling to accuse you. 11. Were you not unwilling to accuse the king?

LESSON LXXII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

413. The irregular verb, ferrě, to bear, drops e between two r's, as ferre for ferere, and i in the endings of the second and third sing act., and of the third sing. pass. It borrows its second and third coots from other verbs.

414. Paradigm.

Ferre, to bear; 2d root, tul; 3d, lat. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Passive.

Fěr-ö, fer-s, fer-t, fěr-imus, Fěr-ör, fer-ris, fer-tur, fěr-imur, fer-tis, fer-unt.

fer-imini, fer-untur.

th

th

PARADIGM-continued.

IMPERFECT.

Active. Fěr-ēbăm, bās, &c.

Passive. Fer-ebar, baris, &c.

FUTURE.

Fěr-ăm, ēs, &c.

Fer-ar, eris, &c.

1 PERFECT

Tul-ī, istī, &c.

Lat-us sum, es, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Tul-eram, as, &c.

Lat-us ĕram, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Tul-ero, &c.

Lat-us čro, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Fĕr-ăm, ās, &c.

Fer-ar, aris, &c.

IMPERFECT

Fer-rem, res, &c.

Fer-rer, reris, &c.

PERFECT.

Tul-erim, &c.

Lat-us sim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Tŭl-issem.

Lat-us essem, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Fĕr, or fertő,

Fer-to; Fer-tě, or fer-totě. Fer-unto.

Fer-re, or fer-tor, Fer-tor:

Fer-imini. Fer-untor.

INFINITIVE.

Fer-re, Pres.

Perf. Tul-isse.

Fer-rī.

Lat-us esse, Lat-um īrī.

Fut.

Lat-urus esse.

PARADIGM-continued.

PARTICIPLES. Active. Pres. Fěr-ens, Fut. Lat-ūrŭs (ă, ŭm). GERUND. Fěr-endi, do, dŭm, do. SUPINE. Lat-ŭm. Lat-ū.

REM.—The compounds of ferre are conjugated like the simple verb.

415. The irregular verb, fiers, to become, be made, is used as the passive of facere, and, in the tenses for completed action, has the regular forms of the passive of that verb.

416. Paradigm.

Fiĕrī, to	become, be made.				
1	PRESENT.				
Indicative.	Subjunctive.				
Fið, fis, fit, &c.	Fī-ăm, fī-ās, fī-ăt, &c.				
IM	PERFECT.				
Fī-ēbăm, ēbās, &c.	Fi-ĕrĕm, ĕrēs, &c.				
1	FUTURE.				
Fi-ăm, čs, &c.	1				
P	ERFECT.				
Fact-ŭs sŭm, &c.	Fact-us sim, &c.				
PLUPERFECT.					
Fact-us ĕram, &c.	Fact-ŭs essĕm, &c.				
FUTURE PERFECT.					
Fact-us erd, &c.	I				
IMPERATIVE.					
Sing. F1, or î 1-tő, F1-tő.	Plur. Fitë, or fi-totë, Fi-untŏ.				

PARADIGM-continued

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fierī; Perf. Fact-us esse; Fut. Fact-um Iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-us (ă, ŭm); Fut. Făciendus (ă, ŭm).

417. VOCABULARY.

Afferre, attul, allat, to bring, to bring to.

Auctor, oris, author.

Călămitas, atis, misfortune, calamity.

Creber, bra, brum, frequent, numerous.

Ferre, tul, lat, to carry, bear, endure. Fieri, fact, to become, be made. Inferre, intul, illat, to bring a gainst, to wage. Iterum, again.

Rěferrě, rětůl, rělat, to bring back, to relate.

Rūmor, oris, report, rumor. Tertius, a, um, third.

Utilitas, atis, profit, advantage.

418. Exercises.

(a) 1. Quid fers manu, mi fili? 2. Is labor utīlis est qui auctōri laudem fert, aliis utilitātem. 3. Tertio die auxilium tulērunt. 4. Crebri ad eum rumōres afferebantur. 5. Dixit Gallos sibi bellum intulisse. 6. His responsis ad Caesărem relātis, itĕrum ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 7. Brutus consul factus est.

(b) 1. He has been made king. 2. Do you wish to become king? (No.) 3. Many reports will be brought to you. 4. What reports have been brought to you? 5. Your father has become poor. 6. Shall you not bring us aid? 7. Do you not wish to carry aid to your brother? 8. Caesar waged many wars. 9. Caesar is said to have waged many wars. 10. He has endured many misfortunes. 11. Do you wish to wage war against your father? (No.) 12. We were unwilling to wage war against our country.

LESSON LXXIII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

419. THE irregular verb, īrĕ, to go, is regular in the parts from the first root.

PARADIGM.

Ire, to go; 2d root, v; 3d, vt. PRESENT. Indicative. Subjunctive. Eŏ, īs, ĭt; īmŭs, ītīs, eunt. Eăm, eas, &c. IMPERFECT. Ibam, ības, &c. Irem, īres, &c. FUTURE. Ibo, ībis, &c. PERFECT. Iv-ī, īv-istī, &c. Iv-ěrim, ěris, &c. PLUPERFECT. Iv-ĕrăm, ĕrās, &c. Iv-issem, isses, &c. FUTURE PERFECT. Iv-ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, &c. IMPERATIVE. Sing. I, or Ito, Plur. Itě, or Itotě, Euntő. INFINITIVE. Pres. Ire; Perf. Iv-isse; Fut. Itūrus, esse. PARTICIPLES. Pres. Iens (gen. euntis); Fut. Itūrus, a, um. GERUND. SUPINE. Eundi, do, dum, do. Itum, ita.

made. bring a

to bring

nor.

intage.

utilis Tertio es affese. 6.

ish to ought you? u not

Caee has wage

ınwil

b

h

88

e

b

W

W

R

is

h

in

r

CO

T as

 $b\epsilon$

u

0

ã

k

REM.—The compounds of tre are conjugated like the simple verb, but generally contract the perfect in into it, and most of them want the supine.

420. Eděrě, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of essě. These are as follows:

Regular.

Pres. Edő, &c.

Imperat. Edĕ, &c.

Subj. Imp. Edĕrĕm, &c.

Infin. Edĕrĕ.

Irregular
Es, est, estĭs.
Es, estŏ, estĕ, estŏtĕ.
Essĕm, 'essēs, &c.
Essĕ.

421. Rule of Syntax — The words domus and $r\bar{u}s$, together with the genitives $h\bar{u}m\bar{\imath}$, $bel\bar{\imath}\bar{\imath}$, and $m\bar{\imath}l\bar{\imath}tiae$, are construed like names of towns (see 227); e. g.,

Domum rediit, he returned home.

422. VOCABULARY.

Abīrě, i, ĭt, to go away, depart. Dŏmī (gen. of dŏmŭs), at home. Eděrě (essě), ēd, ēs, to eat. Et—ět, both—and. Evŏlarě, šv, āt, to fly away, to flee. Ire, Iv, it, to go.

Militiae (gen. of militia), on ser vice, in the field.

Nec—nec, neither—nor.

Redire, i, it, to return.

Rus, ruris, field, country.

423. Exercises.

(a) 1. Fracto puĕri brachio, abit. 2. Fundo in tres partes divīso, redit Athenas. 3. Puĕri venātum¹³ ivērunt. 4. Est (edit) ut vivat. 5. Nonne estis ut vivātis? 6. Abeat Romam. 7. Scriptis epistŏlis, abiērunt. 8. Balbus, quum manus in aquam immersisset, abiit. 9. Caius rus ex urbe evolavĕrit. 10. Caius nondum rure rediit. 11. Et Caesar et Balbus Romam rediērunt. 12. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram floribus cingĕret.

(b) 1. Caesar has not yet returned to Rome. 2. The

erb, but m want

423.

he third These

d *rūs*, *e*, are

on ser

n tres
ivēvātis?

rure 12,

The

boys have gone a hunting. 11 3. Do you wish to go a hunting? 4. They say he has gone a hunting. 5. He says that he wishes to go a hunting. 6. Do you not eat to live? 7. He says that he eats to live. 8. Balbus, having crowned the boy's head with a garland, went away. 9. Caesar, having conquered his enemies, will return to Rome. 10. They all wish to return to Rome. 11. Do you wish to return home? 12. Balbus as at his own house. 13. He was with me both at home and on service. 14. You have lived many years in the country.

LESSON LXXIV.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

424. There are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in rus and dus, combined with the various tenses of the verb esse. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as future, or as one that is about to be done; e.g., Scriptūrus sum, I am about to write.

425. The second periphrastic conjugation expresses duty or necessity; e. g., Virtūs cŏlendă est, virtue must be cultivated.

426. Rule of Syntax.—The agent, or person by whom, is put in the dative with the part. in dus; with other words it is generally governed in the ablative by \tilde{a} or $\tilde{a}b$.

427. Rule of Syntax.—Many adjectives are followed by the dative of the object to hich the quality

the

sul

ral

ma

alk

ma

is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., Pax mihī grātissīmā ĕrāt, peace was very acceptable to me.

428. VOCABULARY.

Bīběrě, bīb, bībīt, to drink.
Delērě, ev, et, to destroy.
Ignarůs, ă, ŭm, ignorant.
Inutilis, ě, useless, unfit for.
Mărīmŭs, ă, ŭm, marine, of the sea.

Propior, us (comp.), nearer.
Putare, av, at, to think, regard.
Simplex, iois, simple.
Subvenire, ven, vent, to go to the
assistance of, to aid.

429. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Tondendae sunt oves, non deglubendae. 2. Exercenda est virtus. 3. Nonně claudendae sunt urbis portae? 4. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. 5. Puer Romam mittendus est. 6. Pauperĭbus qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus. 7. Quid factūri estis? 8. Simplex cibus puĕris utilissĭmus est. 9. Luna terrae propior est quam sol. 10. Aqua marīna inutĭlis est bibendo. 11. Inutĭles sunt libri ignāro legendi.
- (b) 1. They must be sent to Athens. 2. They must be sent into the country. 3. We must be taught by the wise. 4. The city must be destroyed. 5. The gates must be shut. 6. Must not virtue be learned? 7. Must not virtue be practised? 8. Every opportunity of practising virtue¹⁴ must be seized. 9. The poor must not be defrauded of even a single grain. 10. Has he not defrauded the poor? 11. Let not the poor be defrauded of a single grain. 12. Is not the moon nearer the earth than the sun?

grā-

429

gard,

to the

2. irbis

rano Quid

est. manāro

nust by The ned?

ortupoor Has

toon

LESSON LXXV.

Impersonal Verbs.

430. IMPERSONAL verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I*, thou, he). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun it; e. g.,

Oportet, it behooves.

Taedet me, it disgusts me (I am disgusted with).

431. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used impersonally; e. g.,

Constăt, it is known. Juyăt, it delights.

432. The impersonal verb licet, it is lawful, or is allowed, denotes permission, and may be translated by may and might; e. g.,

Licet, may (it is allowed). Licuit, might (it was allowed).

Mihř īrĕ lĭcĕt, I may go. Tibi īrē licēt. You may go. Illī īrĕ lĭcĕt, He may go. We may go. Nōbīs īrĕ lĭcĕt. You may go. Võbīs īrĕ lĭcĕt. Illīs īrĕ lĭcĕt, They may go. Mihř īrĕ lĭcuĭt, I might have gone. Tibi īre licuit, You might have gone.

REAL 1.—The dative in these examples is the indirect object after Nova.

The present infinitive must be translated by the English perfect after Novat, might, as in the above examples. (See also 408, Rem.)

Mis

Opc

Pig

Poe

Pra

fac

hal

qua

ser

citi

me

ade

No

SOI

the

801

5.

do

to be

let

my

us

(Eng.) I may go. (Lat. Id.) It is allowe me to go. (Eng.) I might have gone. (Lat. Id.) It was allowed me (then) to go.

433. The impersonal verb oportet, it behooves, denotes duty or propriety, and may be translated by ought; e.g.,

> Mē īrē oportet. I ought to go. Tē īrĕ ŏportĕt, &c. You ought to go. Mē īrē oportuit, I ought to have gone. Tē īrē oportuit, You ought to have gone.

REM. 1.—Observe that here, too, the present infinitive is to be translated by the perfect after a past tense.

REM 2 — The infinitive after oportet takes a subject accusative.

434. English. (a) I repent of my folly, I am vexed at my folly, I am ashamed of my folly, I pity the poor, I am weary of life,

(b) Me meae stultitiae poenitet, I repent of my folly. Mē meae stultītiae pīgĕt, Mē meae stultītiae pūdēt, Miseret me pauperum, Taedět mē vītae,

Latin Idiom,

It repents me of my folly. It vexes me of my folly. It shames me of my folly. It pities me of the poor. It irks me of life.

I am vexed at my folly. I am ashamed of my folly. I pity the poor. I am weary of life.

435. Rule of Syntax.—The impersonal verbs of feeling, miseret, poenitet, pudet, taedet, and piget, take accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling. (See examples above.)

436. VOCABULARY.

Adesse, adfu, to be present. Amteitia, ae, friendship. Constăt, it is known, is an admitted fact.

Diligens, entis, diligent. Hăbitare, av, at, to inhabit, dwell Immortalis, ĕ, immortal. Licet, it is lawful, is permitted.

go. owed

, de l by

trana

OF 1.3 of

les

pell.

rět, I pity you.

Oportet, it behooves, one ought. Piget, one is grieved at; me piget, I am grieved.

Poenitet, it repents, one repents. Praestat, it is better.

Miseret, one pities; tut me mise- | Recipere (id), cep, cept, to receive.

Saepe, often.

Sonus, I, sound, noise. Tardus, a, um, slow.

·Velox, ocis, swift.

437. Exercises.

(a) 1. Constat sonum luce tardiorem esse. 2. Saepe facere praestat quam loqui. 3. Nonne licet Romae habitare? 4. Nonne licuit Athēnis habitare? 5. Nunquam licet peccāre. 6. Num licet Christiānis gloriae servire? 7. Puĕros oportet diligentes esse. citiam immortālem esse oportet. 9. Tui me misĕret; mei piget. 10. Sapientia semper eo contenta est quod adest. 11. Ne multa loquere. 12. Miserere nostri. 13. Natūra omnes propensi sumus ad discendum.

(b) 1. It is well known that light is swifter than sound. 2. Is it not well known that the moon is nearer the earth than the sun? 3. Is it not well known that sound is slower than light? 4. He repents of his folly. 5. I repented of my folly. 6. Ought not Christians to do good to as many as possible? 7. Ought not Balbus to have kept m his word? 8. Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? 9. I have received many letters from you. 10. The bird has flown away from my hands.

LESSON LXXVI.

Impersonal Periphrastic.

438. The second periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; e.g.,

N

es

N

di

si

re

th

m

ou

7.

hi

W

an

12

pa

lie let

a.c

Mihř scrībendům est, J mu
Tibř scrībendům est, you m
Illī scrībendům est, he ma
Nōbīs scrībendům est, we ma
Vōbīs scrībendům est, you m
Illīs scrībendům est, they m

I must or should write.
you must or should write.
he must or should write.
we must or should write.
you must or should write.
they must or should write.

439. Here too the agent is put in the dative (see 426) when expressed. It is omitted.

- When it means every body or people in general, though
 it may be translated by we or you; e g.,
 Edendum est, we or you (every body) must eat.
- 2) When the persons meant are not likely to be mistaken.

440. In the impersonal periphrastic construction, if the verb is one which governs a dative (396), its agent (the person by whom) must not be expressed; e.g.,

Crēdendum est Caio.

We must believe Caius (not, Caius must believe).

REM.—If, in any instance, it is necessary to express the agent, it must either be done by means of the ablative with a or ab, or the form of the expression must be changed. The two datives would leave it doubtful which was the agent.

441. VOCABULARY.

Etiăm, even. Lăborare, av, at, to labor, toil. Mětuěre, u, to fear.

Sĕnex, sĕnĭs, an old man; pl. the

442. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mihi discendum est. 2. Etiam senībus discendum est. 3. Improbis metuendum est. 4. Tibi evolandum est ex urbe. 5. Manendum est Romae. 6. Totam hiemem manendum est Carthagine. 7. Ambulandum est per urbem. 8. Laborandum est, ut discass. 9. Nonne laborandum est, ut discāmus? 10.

rite. write. write. write. write.

though

hen ex-

on, if agent

eve).

t must
form
leave

ol. the

disl'ibi

nae. Amdis-10. Num semper ludendum est? 11. Nonne resistendum est irae? 12. Num credendum est imprŏbis? 13. Nonne resistendum est animo? 14. Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. 15. Discendum est, ut possis docere. 16. Edendum est, ut possimus vivere.

(b) 1. We must dwell in the country. 2. We must remain at home. 3. We must fly from the city (into) the country. 4. The unlearned must labor, that they may learn. 5. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. 6. The girls must walk through the city. 7. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price. 8. We should spare the conquered. 9. We should resist anger. 10. Should we not resist anger? 11. We should obey the laws of our country. 12. We must not spare even Balbus. 13. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. 14. We must not believe even Caesar himself. 15. Having written his letter, he will go a-hunting.

LESSON LXXVII

Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions.

443. Those verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used impersonally in the passive; e.g.,

Mihř crēdĭtŭr,
Tibř crēdĭtŭr,
Ilī crēdĭtŭr,
Nōbīs crēdĭtŭr,
Vōbīs crēdĭtŭr,
Ilīs crēdĭtŭr,
Thou art believed.
We are believed.
You are believed.
They are believed.

in

tā

pi

cä

in

 sl

ST

6.

be

th

ci

ci

W

et

th

lc

444. Prepositions, as we have already seen (200), show the relation of objects to each other; e. g., in urbe habitat, he dwells in the city.

445. Rule of Syntax.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., Ad, adversus, antě, ăpud, circā or circum, cis or citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, intěr, intrā, juxtā, ŏb, pěněs, pěr, pōně, post, praetěr, prŏpě, proptěr, sěcundum, súprā, trans, ultrā, versus (rare).

446. Rule of Syntax.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., A (ăb or abs), absquĕ, cōrăm, cum, dē, ē or ex, pălăm, prae, prō, sinĕ, tĕnus.

447. Rule of Syntax.—The five prepositions, clam, in, sub, subter, and super, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

Rem.—In and sub govern the accusative in answer to whither (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to where (i. e. after verbs of rest). Subter generally takes the accusative. Super takes the accusative after verbs of motion and also when it signifies upon, and the ablative when it signifies on or of (as of a subject spoken or written about).

448. VOCABULARY.

Cis, on this side.
Coelum, I, heaven, the heavens.
Coram, before, in the presence of.
Erga, towards.
Firmus, a, um, firm, sure.
Infra, below.

Intra, within.
Paucus, ă, um, few, little.
Pietas, atis, loyalty, faithfulness.
Prae, before, in comparison with.
Supra, above.
Terră, ae, the earth.

449. Exercises.

(a) 1. Vobis non creditur.
2. Bonis creditur.
3. Gloriae tuae invidētur.
4. Irae resistitur.
5. Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem.
6. Nulla est firma amicitia

ı (200), ĭn urbĕ

enty-six versŭs, i, ergā, ponĕ, trans,

en preos), abō, sĭnĕ,

, clăm, ccusa-

her (i. e. i. e. aften Sŭpër it signif a sub-

lness. with.

auci citia inter malos. 7. Piĕtas erga patriam conservanda est. 8. Galli cis Rhenum habitant. 9. Intra muros habitābat. 10. Coram populo loquētur. 11. Argentum prae auro contemnĭtur. 12. Caecus de coloribus judicāre non potest. 13. Supra nos coelum conspicimus; infra nos terram.

(b) 1. The good are always envied. 2. The wicked should never be believed. 3. The conquered must be spared. 4. We are envied. 5. They will be envied. 6. He was buried within the walls. 7. They wish to be buried on-this-side-of the Rhine. 8. Let us walk through the city. 9. They have returned from the city into the country. 10. Do you wish to go into the city? 11. My father will remain in the city the whole winter.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Conjunctions.

450. Conjunctions are merely connectives; as, păter et filius, the father and son. Certain combinations of these require some attention.

451. Et followed by another et; tum or quum followed by tum, are both—and.

452. Non solura—sed etiam, not only—but also.

453. Tăm—quăm, $\begin{cases} so—as; as—as. \\ as well—as. \\ both—and. \end{cases}$

454. Etiăm, even, also; ĕtiăm atquĕ ĕtiăm, again and again; quŏquĕ, also, too (follows the word it belongs to).

de

les

an th

at

so: bu

ac

11

ma

cor

the

ım do

455. Aut, or; aut—aut, věl—věl, either—or. Sīvě—sīvě, seu—seu, either—or, whether—or.

456. Něc-něc, něquě-něquě, neither-nor. Věl, or, sometimes even; with superlatives, very, extremely, possible.

457. At, sĕd, autĕm, vērum, vēro, but.
Attamen, tamen, vēruntamen, yet, but, but yet.

458. Atqui, but, now (as used in reasoning).

459. Năm, namquĕ, ĕnĭm, for.
Ergŏ, therefore, then.
Igĭtŭr, ĭdeō, therefore.

Ităque, accordingly, and so, there-

Quārē, fore. wherefore.

460. VOCABULARY.

Amphibium, I, amphibious animal. Nascī, nat, to be born.

Audax, acīs, audacious, daring.
Dēterrērē, u, it, to deter.
Inceptum, I, purpose, undertaking.
Impēdīrē, Iv, It, to impede, hinder.
Somnus, I, sleep.

461. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Et discet puer et docēbit. 2. Et Romae vixi et Carthagine. 3. Lupus quum ovem tum canem momorderat. 4. Ovem non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. 5. Nec timidus est, nec audax. 6. Nimius somnus neque animo, neque corpori prodest. 7. Non deterreor ab incepto, sed pudore impedior. 8. Nihil laboras; ideo nihil habes. 9. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est. 10. Amphibia et in aqua et in terra vivunt.
- (b) 1. We shall go both to Rome and to Carthage.
 2. Will you also accuse me? 3. Will they even con-

461.

yet.

there-

too

iame.

vixi moiam ius

Ton ihil vit, rra

ge. n462-466.] SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD WITH UT, NE, QUO. 201

demn the king to death? [No.] 4. We must both learn and teach. 5. Do you not wish both to learn and to teach? 6. We might have condemned not only the father, but also the son. 7. He will either remain at Rome, or go to Athens. 8 Dogs as well as wolves sometimes bite sheep. 9. He sent his son to Rome. but was unwilling to go himself. 10. Caius has been accused of treason, but he will never be condemned. 11. He will not go a hunting, for he has buried his son.

LESSON LXXIX.

Subjunctive Mood with ut, ne, and quo.

1. in order that, that, so that.
2. the infin. (expressing purpose)

462. UT with subj. 3. as, with infinitive.

4. granting that, although. 5. that, after to fear that not.

463. When *ut* introduces a purpose, the subjunctive may be rendered by may, might; when it introduces a consequence (as after so, such), it may be rendered by the indicative or infinitive.

464. Ut with the indicative is as, when, since, after, how

465. Nē with subj. $\begin{cases} 1. \text{ lest, that not.} \\ 2. \text{ not with the infinitive.} \\ 3. \text{ not with the imperative.} \\ 4. \text{ after to fear that.} \end{cases}$

466. No with the imperative or subjunctive used imperatively, is simply not; as, ne scribas, or ne scribe, do not write.

me

pra

tha

BO I

to a

fath

ten

the

10.

Sub

com

rall

the

R

467. After verbs of fearing, $\tilde{u}t$ and $n\tilde{e}$ appear to change meanings; $\tilde{u}t$, that—not; $n\tilde{e}$, that or lest.

468. After verbs of fearing, the subjunctive present must generally be rendered by the future; as, věreŏr ŭt făciăm, I fear that I shall not do, věreŏr nē făciăm, I fear that I shall do.

469. Quō with the subjunctive is used to express purpose in sentences containing a comparative degree; as, mĕdīcō ālīquīd dandūm est, quō sīt stūdiōsiōr, something should be given to the physician, that he may be the more attentive.

For the use of tenses in the subjunctive, see 265 and 266.

470. VOCABULARY.

Căvere, cav, caut, to take care, be careful.

Cognitus, a, um, known.

Efficere (io), fec, fect, to effect, accomplish.

Fămēs, is, hunger.

Incognitus, a, um, unknown.

Mědícůs, I, physician.

Mŏnērē, mŏnu, mŏnĭt, to advise, warn,

Multitūdo, inis, multitude.

Numerare, av, at, to number. Quo, that, in order that.

Sătis (substantively), enough.

Stellă, ae, star.

Sustinēre, tinu, tent, to sustain, to endure.

Věrerī, věrit, to fear.

471. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi alios laudant, ut ab aliis laudentur. 2. Stellārum tanta multitūdo est, ut numerāri non possint. 3. Medĭcis alĭquid dandum est, quo sint studiosiōres. 4. Cave ne incognĭta pro cognĭtis habeas. 5. Ne tentes quod effĭci non possit. 6. Vereor, ne labōres tuos augeam. 7. Vereor ne brevi tempŏre fames in urbe sit. 8. Timeo ut labōres tantos sustineas. 9. Avārus semper verētur, ut satis habeat. 10. Verebamĭni ut pax firma esset.

ear to

present reŏr ŭt I fear

xpress egree; someay be

ber. ugh.

ustain,

2. sint.

ntes tuos urbe

irbe īrus i ui (b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow will not melt. 2. He praised us, in-order-that he might be praised by us. 3. The multitude of men was so great that it could not be numbered. 4. The multitude is so great that it cannot be numbered. 5. He has come to aid you. 6. They have gone to Rome to aid their father. 7. I sent him home, that he might not be bitten by the dog. 8. He warned his sons not to break the laws. 9. We fear we shall increase your labors. 10. They feared that he would not be acquitted.

LESSON LXXX.

Subjunctive with quominus, quin, and other Conjunctions.

472. AFTER verbs of hindering, quōmĭnŭs is more common with the subjunctive than nē. It may generally be translated by from, the verb being turned into the participial substantive.

Rem.—Quōminus (quō and minus) means literally, by which the less, or, so that the less; e. g.,

Caiō nihĭl obstăt quōmĭnŭs sĭt beātŭs.

473. Quīn with subj.

(Nothing opposes Caius by which he should be the less happy.) Nothing prevents Caius from being happy.

- 1. but (as used after negatives).
- 2. the relative with not.
- 3. as not with infinitive.
- 4. that after doubt, deny in negative sentences.
- 5. from or without with the participial substantive, after prevent, escape, &c.

474. Quin coincides very nearly with but; it is, however, generally better translated by some of the other forms given above; e.g.,

1) There is nobody, quin putet but thinks. who does not think

2) No one is so mad, quin putet, as not to think.

3) I do not deny, quin turpë sit, that it is disgraceful.
4) They never saw him, quin ridërët, without laughing.

REM.—Quin with the subjunctive is generally used after negative expressions and those which imply doubt.

475. The following conjunctions are used with the subjunctive; viz.,

Dum, mödö, dummödö, provided, if only

Lĭcĕt, although.

O sī (O if), ŭtĭnăm, would that. Quamvīs, however much, however.

Quăsĭ, tanquăm, as if.

REM.—Not after provided, &c., is expressed by ne.

476. Rule of Syntax.—Verbs signifying to abound, or be destitute of, take the ablative; e.g., Nēmo aliorum ope carēre potest, no one can be (do) without the assistance of others.

17. VOCABULARY.

Dübitarë, av, at, to doubt. Interdum, sometimes. Obstarë, stit, stat, to oppose, prevent.

Providus, a, um, prudent, cautious. Terrere, terru, territ, to terrify.

478. Exercises.

(α) 1. Nihil impĕdit, quomĭnus id facĕre possīmus.
2. Quid obstat, quomĭnus Caius sit beātus?
3. Non

479 me

est

O si sit.

Not thin doul that does battl

ing s

obse

479 quest 486

and a 483 the q

when

tions,

; it is, of the

1-478

t think think. raceful. without

ative ex-

th the

ound, örüm stance

l, cau-

rrify.

mus. Non me terrēbis, quomīnus illud faciam. 4. Sapiens nunquam dubitābit, quin immortālis sit anīmus. 5. Nemo est tam bonus ac providus, quin interdum peccet. 6. O si sapiens virtūtem colat! 7. Utīnam hoc verum sit. 8. Sic agis, quăsi me ames.

(b) 1. Nothing prevents you from being happy. 2. Nothing prevents him from doing this. 3. Does any thing prevent you from doing this? 4. We have never doubted that the soul is immortal. 5. Do you doubt that the soul is immortal? 6. There is no one who does not think (473, 2) that you were engaged in the battle. 7. He never saw the shepherd without laughing at kim (474, 4). 8. Would that all citizens would observe the laws.

LESSON LXXXI.

Interrogative Sentences.

479. All interrogatives take the indicative when the question is put directly; as, num crēd is, do you believe?

480. Num and ne are merely interrogative particles, and are not construed in direct questions.

481. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when the question is put *indirectly* or *doubtfully*, especially when it depends upon another verb.

482. Double questions take two different constructions, viz.:

1) The first clause is introduced by num, utrum, or ne, and the second by an.

pa

2) The first clause has no interrogative word, and the second has an or ne.

483. VOCABULARY.

Enumerare, av, at, to enumerate, Miser, era, erum, unhappy, miser. to count up. Ignis, is, m., fire, heat. Immobilis, ě, immovable, fixed. Locuples, etis, rich. Major, us, oris (comp. of magnus), larger, greater. Minor, us, oris (comp. of parvus), smaller. Mobilis, ě, movable.

able. Mortalis, ĕ, mortal. Nescīre, Iv, It, to be ignorant, not to know. Olim, formerly. Quaestio, onis, question. Rotundus, a, um, round, Undě, whence.

484. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Estne animus immortālis? 2. Visne miser 3. Quis enumeret artium multitudinem? 4. Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. 5. Quid dicam nescio. 6. Olim quaestio erat, num terra rotunda esset. Utrum major est sol, an minor, quam terra? 8. Num sol mobilis, an immobilis? 9. Sumusne immortales, an mortales?
- (b) 1. Who has come? 2. I do not know who has come. 3. Do not all men wish to live? 4. Do you fear that the king will be conquered? 5. Do you not fear that we shall be condemned to death? 6. What did he say? 7. We do not know what he said. 8. Are they rich or poor? 9. You do not know whether we are rich or poor. 10. Whence does the moon derive (habere) her light? 11. He does not know whence the moon derives her light. 12. Who knows whence the sun derives his light?

ord, and

LESSON LXXXII.

Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Chauses and with Quum.

485. EVERY conditional sentence consists of two parts, the condition and the consequence; e. g.,

Sī quid habeat, dabit.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

REM.—Here at quid habeat is the condition, and dabit the consequence,

486. Conditional sentences are of three kinds:

1) Those which assume the condition to be true; e. g.,

Sī quid hăbět, dăt.

If he has any thing, he gives it.

2) Those which represent the condition as possible; e. g.,

Sī quǐd hăbeăt, dăbĭt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

3) Those which represent the condition as impossible; e. g.,

Sī quid hābērēt, dārēt.
 If he had any thing, he would give it.

2. Sī quĭd hăbuissĕt, dĕdissĕt.

If he had had any thing, he would have given it.

487. It must be observed:

1) That the condition is expressed in the first of the above classes by the indicative, in the second by the subjunctive present or perfect, and in the third by the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect.

py, miser.

orant, not

miser

nescio. set. 7.

. Num ortāles,

ho has
o you
ou not
What

id. 8. hether on dethence

hence

fe

C

d

n

h

1

Ι

d

- 2) That the consequence is expressed in the first two of these classes by the indicative (or some times by the imperative), and in the third by the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect.
- 488. The relative clause takes the subjunctive:
 - 1) When it expresses a purpose or result; e. g.,
 - Lēgātōs mīsērunt, quī dīcĕrent.
 They sent ambassadors to say (that they might say).
 - 2. Něquě ěním tū is ěs quī nesciās.

 Nor indeed are you such an one as not to know (who may not know).
 - 2) When it defines or explains some indefinite antecedent, whether affirmative or negative; e.g.,
 - 1. Sunt qui putent.

 There are (some) who think, or some persons think.
 - Nēmö est, qui haud intēlligăt.
 There is no one who does not understand.
- 489. Quum (cum) takes the subjunctive when it introduces a cause or reason, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g.,

Quae cum ita sint.

Since these things (lit. which things) are so.

490. Quum, as an adverb of time (when), takes the indicative; e. g.,

Iter faciebam quum Balbum videbam. I was travelling when I saw Balbus.

The use of quum with the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive to supply the place of a perfect active participle, has already been noticed (367)

491. VOCABULARY.

Consulere, sulu, sult, to consult, ask advice.

Natio, onis, nation.

Pertimescere, timu, to fear greatly.

Suadērē, suas, suas, to advise. Sustinērē, tinu, tent, to sustain withstand. Vulnērārē, av, at, to wound.

492. Exercises.

(a) 1. Peccāvit, si id fecit. 2. Peccābit, si id faciat. 3 Peccārent, si id facĕrent. 4. Peccavissent, si id fecissent. 5. Si vis beātus, impĕra anīmo. 6. Si me consūlis, suadeo. 7. Patriam auro, si potuisset, vendidisset. 8. Sunt qui rideant. 9. Erant qui saltavissent. 10. Caesar equitātum, qui sustinēret hostium impĕtum, misit. 11. Nulla est enim natio quam pertimescāmus.

(b) 1. If he is alive (lives), he is now at Athens. 2. If he remains at Athens, he will learn much. 3. If he had gone to Rome, he would have been killed. 4. They would have sold their country, if they could. 5. If the king had been in the city, he would have pardoned you. 6. There were some who were wounded. 7. Since we cannot remain at Rome, we will go to Athens. 8. Caesar had sent two legions to attack (make an attack upon) the enemy.

LESSON LXXXIII.

Participles.

493. Participles assume an assertion which may be formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary or convenient to do so; thus, puer rīdens, may be vari

e. g.,

might

-490.

ne first

r some

ird by

not to

ite an-;; e.g.,

ersonp

ind. it inhe de-

so. es the

to supnoticed

re

re

pi

Ad

Di

Dű Ex

Fē

Im

Int

Pe

Pi ni

pě

ex

ously translated, according to the connection; as, the boy who laughs, the boy when he laughs, &c.

494. Participles may sometimes be translated by a relative clause; e. g.,

- 1. Puer ridens \{ the boy who laughs. the boy who was laughing.
- 2. Puer rīsūrus, { the boy who is going to laugh. the boy who will laugh.
- 3. Puer amatus, the boy who is (or was) loved.
- 4. Puer amandus, the boy who ought to be loved.
- 495. If no substantive is expressed, supply man, men, he, she, or those, &c.; e. g.,
 - 1. Ridentis, of him who laughs.
 - 2. Rīdentium, of those who laugh.
- 496. With a neuter plural participle, supply things; e. g.,

Praeteritūra, { things that will pass away. what will pass away.

Rem.—Participles, being parts of verbs, of course govern the same cases.

497. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with when or while; e. g.,

Rīdens, when (or while) he is (or was) laughing.

REM.—In a sentence with when or while, we often omit the auxiliary verb; e. g.,

Ridens, when laughing.

- 498. If the participle stands alone, he, they, a man, men, or one, &c., must be supplied as the subject of the verb; e. g.,
 - 1. Rīdens, when he (or one) is laughing.
 - 2. Rīdentēs, when men (or they) are laughing.

as, the

l by a

h.

men,

ings:

same

cor-

iliary

ran, the

499. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with if; e. g.,

- 1. Rīdens, if a man (he or one) laughs.
- 2. Amātus, if a man (he or one) is loved.

500. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with because, for, since, or by partici pial substantives with from or through.

1. because I doubt.

2. for I doubt.

501. Dübitans, $\{$ 3. since I doubt.

4. from doubting.
5. through doubting.

502. VOCABULARY.

Adulator, oris, flatterer. Disjungërë, junx, junct, to sepa-Dūrārě, av, at, to last. Expellere, pul, puls, to expel, banish. Felīcītās, ātīs, happiness Immensus, a, um, immense. Innoxius, a, um, harmless. Intervallum, I, distance, space. Perfidia, ae, perfidy.

Perpetuo, for ever. Pervenīre, ven, vent, to arrive at, reach. Piŭs, ă, ŭm, pious. Plăcere, plăcu, plăcit, to please. Rěvertěrě, vert, vers, to return, turn back. Sătiare, av, at, to satisfy. Vidērī, vīs, to seem. Vituperare, av, at, to reprove, criticise.

503. Exercises.

(a) 1. Sapiens bona semper placitūra laudat. Pii homines ad felicitatem perpetuo duratūram pervenient. 3. Adulator aut laudat vituperanda, aut vitupĕrat laudanda. 4. Leōnes satiāti (497) innoxii sunt. 5. Equum emptūrus (499) cave ne decipiāris. 6. Roma expulsus Carthagine pueros docebit. 7. Respondent

se perfidiam veritos (501) revertisse. 8. Stellae nobis parvae videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis disjunctae.

(b) 1. He who does wrong (494) is never happy. 2. Those who read this book will learn much. 3. There are some who think (488, 2) little of happiness which will not last. 4. The wise prize very highly the happiness which will last for ever. 5. They learned much while remaining at Rome (497). 6. If you love your parents (499), you will obey them. 7. We shall pardon him if condemned. 8. He fled from the city, because he had been accused of bribery (501).

LESSON LXXXIV

Participles—continued.

504. Participles may sometimes be translated by verbs with though or although; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, though he laughs.

2. Amātus, though he is (was, &c.) loved.

505. We often omit the auxiliary verb after though; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, though laughing.

2. Amātus, though loved.

506. Participles may sometimes be translated by verbs or participal nouns, with after; e.g.,

1. Passus (Act.), { 1. after he has (had) suffered. 2. after suffering.

2. Amātus, \begin{cases} 1. after he was (has been) loved \\ 2. after he had been loved

2. Amātus, { 2. after he had been loved. 3. after having been loved.

ne nobis junctae. py. 2.

There which he hap-

e your pardon

ecause

ed by

ough;

l by

oved

507. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs followed by the conjunction and; e.g.

1. Rīdens exclāmăt.

He laughs and exclaims (lit. laughing he exclaims).

2. Rīdens exclāmāvĭt.

He laughed and exclaimed.

Rem.—In the above examples the participle is construed by the same tense as the accompanying verb; sometimes, however, a different tense must be used; e. g.,

Correptum leporem lacerat. He has seized the hare and is mangling it.

508. Participles with $n\bar{o}n$ may be translated by participal substantives depending upon the preposition without; e. g.,

- 1. Non ridens, without laughing.
- Non amātus, { 1. without being loved.
 without loving him.
- 3. Vĭtŭpĕrăt lĭbrōs nōn intellectōs. He censures books (not understood) without understanding them.

509. Participles in the ablative absolute may be construed like participles in any other construction, the Latin substantive being translated either by the nominative or the objective; e. g.,

Tarquiniō rēgnantĕ, when Tarquin was king. Tē sĕdentĕ, as you were sitting. Captā Tỹrō, after Tyre was taken.

510. Participles may often be translated by substantives of kindred meaning; e. g.,

 \mathbf{fr}

110

di

iă

na

e. T

de

SU

st. ti

50

Lēgēs viŏlātae, the violation of the laws (lit. the violated laws).

Vēre appropinquante, on the approach of spring.

511. VOCABULARY

Adventus, us, approach.

Ante (prep. with accus.), before.

Appropinquare, av, at, to approach.

Coena, ae, supper, feast.

Cognoscere, nov, nit, to ascertain.

Comprehendere, hend, hens, to arrest, comprehend.

Intelligere, 1ex, lect, to understand.
Ponere, posu, posit, to place.
Proficisci, profect, to set out, to start.
Transire, i, it, to pass over. Ver, veris, n., spring.

512. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ad coenam vocātus, nondum venit. 2. Multa transīmus ante oculos posita. 3. Oculus, se non videns, alia videt. 4. Cum legionibus profectus celeriter adero. 5. Comprehensum hominem Romam ducēbant. 6. Non petens regnum accēpit. 7. Multi vitupērant libros non intellectos. 8. His responsis datis, iterum ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 9. Cognito Caesaris adventu, legātos ad eum mittunt.

(b) 1. He will not be condemned, although he has been accused of treason. 2. Although invited to the feast, they will not come. 3. They were accused and (507) condemned. 4. He will receive the government without seeking it (508). 5. We censure these boys without knowing them. 6. They were put to death without having been condemned. 7. Having ascertained the approach of our army, the enemy fled. 8 Birds will return on the approach of spring.

e vio-

ınder.

ut, to

ulta

ens,

ĕro.

oros

eum

ntu

has

the

and

ent

oys

ath

er-

8

6.

LESSON LXXXV.

Derivation of Nouns.

513. Words may be formed in two ways; viz.,

- 1) By derivation, i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the roots of other words; e. g., moeror, sadness, formed by the addition of or to moer, the root of moerer, to be sad.
- 2) By composition, i. e., by the union of two or more words, or their roots; e. g., běněvolens, benevolent, well-wishing, from běně, well, and völens, wishing.

514. Nouns may be derived from other nouns, and from adjectives and verbs.

515. The endings, lus, lum, added to the root of nouns, with a connecting vowel (sometimes i or ö, but generally u, which sometimes takes c before it), form diminutives; e. g., hortulus (hortus), a little garden.

516. The masculine endings, ides (or ides), ades, and iddes, and the feminine as and is, added to the root of names of persons, form patronymics or names of descent; e.g., Priamides (Priamus), a son or descendant of Priam; Tantalis (Tantalus), daughter of Tantalus.

517. Atŭs, itās, and ūră, added to the root of nouns, denote office, rank, or body of men; e.g., consŭlātŭs (consul), consulship; cīvitās (civis), state, body of citizens.

518. Iŭm, added to the root of nouns, denotes the state or condition of the objects expressed by the primitive; sometimes an assemblage of those objects; e. g., servitium (servus), either servitude or domestics.

519. The endings, itas, ia, itia, itudo, and tus (gen.

C

C

8

tūtis), added to the root of adjectives, form abstract nouns; e. g., bŏnĭtās (bonus), goodness; dīligentiā (diligens), diligence; multītūdŏ (multus), multitude; virtūs (vir), virtue, manliness.

520. The endings, ă and ŏ, added to the first root of verbs, and ŏr (fem. rix) to the third, denote the agent or person who; e. g., scrībă (scrībĕre), a scribe; bĭbo (bibĕre), a drunkard; victŏr (vincĕre), a conqueror.

521. Or and iŭm, added to the first root, and iŏ, ŭs, and ūrā to the third, denote the action or state expressed by the verb; e. g., pāvŏr (pavēre), fear; gaudiŭm (gaudēre), joy; actiŏ (agĕre, act), an action, &c.

522. Ido and īgo, added to the first root, denote the abstract of the primitive; e. g., cŭpīdo (cupere), desire.

523. Měn and mentům, added to the first root, denote the thing done, that by which it is done, or that which does; e. g., tēgměn (tegěre), a covering; flūměn (fluěre), a stream, river.

524. Um, added to the third root, denotes the action of the verb, or the means or result of it; e. g., tectum (tegere), roof, covering; scriptum (scribere), a writing.

525. VOCABULARY.

Adjuvare, juv, jut, to aid, help. Adventus, us (adventre), approach, arrival.

Circumdăre, ded, dat, to sur-

Civitas, atis (civis), state.

Diligentia, ae (diligens), diligence.

Fügare, av at, to put to flight. Hortulus, I (hortus), a little gar-

den.

Imperator, oris (imperare), commander.

Multitūdo, inis (multus), multi-

Nuntiare, av, at, to announce, report.

Pastor, oris (pascero), shep herd.

Senatus, us (senex), senate.

ibstract iă (di-

-525.

; vir-

oot of agent; bĭbo

iö, *ŭs*, ressed (gau-

te the esire. enote does; re), a

action ectŭm ing.

), com-

mult**i**ice, re-

shep

526. Exercises.

(a) 1. Hortŭli nostri multos flores habent. 2. Imperātor quam maximas copias comparāvit. 3. Diligentia tua labōrem patris adjūvit. 4. Hic nuntius adventum tuum nuntiavērat. 5. Cicerōnem magna populi multitūdo circumdedit. 6. Pastor fugāvit lupum qui ovem unam momorderat.

(b) 1. Have you seen the shepherd's dog? 2. We went to see the boy's little garden. 3. Let them not come into the senate. 4. He has announced the arrival of the king. 5. Did you not announce the arrival of the leaders? 6. Caesar said that he would put to flight the forces of the enemy. 7. The commander has sent messengers to Rome. 8. The leaders will collect as large forces as possible. 9. The laws of the state have been violated by the commander.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Derivation of Adjectives.

527. Adjectives may be derived from nouns and verbs.

528. The endings, ālīs, ārīs, icūs, īlīs, and iūs, added to the root of nouns = of, belonging to, related to; e. g., rēgālīs (rex), regal; popularis (populus), popular; cīvī- īs (civis), civil, &c.

529. Aceus, icius, eus, and inus, denote the material; the first two sometimes origin, and the last two sometimes similarity; e. g., pătricius (pater), patrician; aureus (aurum), golden, &c.

Gi

In

Nε

Nε

in

 $d\epsilon$

cr

be

ве

L

ra

go

T

7.

 \mathbf{T}

T

in

ti

g

530. Osus and lentus (often with connecting vowel u), denote fulness, abundance; e. g., ăquōsŭs (aqua), watery: lŭtŭlentŭs (lutum), full of mud.

531. Acus, ānus (iānus), iensis, and īnus, added to the root of proper names of places, denote native of, occupant of; e. g., Rōmānus (Roma), a Roman; Athēniensis (Athenae), an Athenian, &c.

532. Ariŭs (generally used substantively), denotes occupation, sometimes pertaining to; e. g., consiliāriŭs (consilium), counselling, or a counsellor.

533. Atus, ītus, and ūtus — furnished with, &c.; e. g., aurātus (aurum), gilt; turrītus (turris), turreted, &c.

534. Stus — being in, having in one's self; e. g., rō-bustus (robur), robust.

535. Adjectives may be derived from verbs by the use of the following endings:

1) $Ax = having \ a \ propensity$ to perform the action of the verb; e. g., $\check{e}dax$ (edĕre), voracious.

2) Bundus and cundus = the strengthened meaning of the present participle used adjectively; e.g., mīrābundus (mirāri), full of admiration, &c.

3) Idus (and sometimes uus) — the quality indicated by the verb; e. g., algidus (algēre), cold.

4) Itis and bilis — capable of being, easy to be; e.g., dŏcilis (docēre), easy to be taught, docile; crēdibilis (credĕre), capable of being believed, credible.

536. VOCABULARY.

Anulus, I, a ring.

Athēniensis, ĕ (Athēnae), Athe-

Carthaginiensis, ĕ (Carthago), Carthaginian. Cīvīlis, ĕ (civis), civil.

Fallax, acis (fallere), false, deceptive.

Fābūlosus, ă, um (fabula), fabulous.

rel u). tery:

ed to ve of

Athē-

notes āriŭs

e. g.,

., *rō*the

tion

ning . g., 3.

icald. · g.,

crēed.

de-

fa

Gallicus, a, um (Gallia), Gallic, pertaining to Caul. Incredibilis, ě (in and credere), incredible. Narrare, av, at, to relate.

Narratio, onis (narrare), narrative, story.

Octo, eight.

Popularis, e (populus), popular. Socrătes, is, Socrates, a celebrated Athenian philosopher Spěciosus, a, um (species), spo-

cious, plausible.

Vincīre, vinx, vinct, to bind.

537. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec narratio est fabulosa. 2. Non su 1 tam imprūdens, ut verbis speciosis decipiar. 3. Spe iallāci decepti estis; cavēte ne iterum decipiamini. 4. Quis credat illud quod incredibile est? 5. Caesar octo libris bellum Gallicum, tribus civile narravit. 6. Athenienses Socrătis damnāti (506) pedem ferro vinxērunt.

(b) 1. Many have been deceived by false hopes. 2. Let us not be deceived by false words. 3. These narratives are incredible. 4. He has given his sister two gold rings. 5. The Romans waged many wars. The Carthaginians were conquered by the Romans. 7. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. They cannot deceive the judge by specious words. The senator wishes to be popular. 10. They are waging a civil war.

LESSON LXXXVII.

Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs.

538. VERBS may be derived from nouns and adjectives, and from other verbs.

539. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives are generally called denominatives.

C

 \mathbf{F}

 \mathbf{F}

 \mathbf{F}_{i}

G

L

N

no

 $\mathbf{n}\mathbf{i}$

ho

 $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{l}}$

H

ha

12

wi

540. Transitive denominatives end in ārē (dep. ārī) or īrē; e. g., cūrārē (cura), to take care of; fīnīrē (finis), to finish.

541. Intransitive denominatives end in ērē or scērē; c g., flōrērē (flos), to bloom; mātūrescērē (maturus), to become ripe.

REM.—The ending scere is joined to the root by means of a connecting vowel; e is the connecting vowel in the above example.

542. Verbs derived from other verbs comprise four distinct classes, viz.: frequentatives, inchoatives, desideratives, and diminutives.

543. Frequentatives denote repeated or continued action, and are formed by the addition of ārĕ or itārĕ to the third root, except in the first conjugation, where they add itārĕ to the first root; e. g., hābītārĕ (habēre), to inhabit; vŏlītārĕ (volāre), to fly often, to flit.

544. Inchoatives denote the beginning or increase of an action, and are formed by the addition of scere to the first root with a connecting vowel; e.g., clarescere (clarere), to grow bright, or clear.

545. Desideratives denote a desire to do the action of the primitive, and are formed by adding *urīrē* to the third root; e.g., ēsurīrē (edēre), to desire to eat.

546. Diminutives denote a feeble action, and are formed by adding illārē to the first root; e.g., cantillārē (cantāre), to sing in a feeble voice.

547. Derivative adverbs generally take one of the following endings, viz.:

- 1) When derived from nouns, tim, itis; e. g., gregātim (grex), in flocks; funditus (fundus), from the foundation.
- 2) When derived from adjectives, \bar{e} , \bar{e} , o, $t\bar{e}r$ (con-

p. ārī

(finis),

scere :

us), to

mecting

four

idera-

inued

ārĕ to

 \mathbf{vhere}

bēre),

use of

o the

(cla-

ction

o the

are

llārĕ

the

. g.,

lus),

con-

necting vowel i except after n); e. g., vērē (verus), truly; facile (facilis), easily; cito (citus), quickly; fortiter (fortis), bravely.

3) When derived from verbs, im added to the third root; e. g., stătim (stare, stat), imme-

diately.

548. VOCABULARY.

Cantare, av, at (canere), to sing. Curare, av, at (cura), to take care of. guard. Custodire, Iv, It (custos), to Fīnīrē, īv, It (finis), to finish. Florescěrě (florerě), to begin to bloom. Fortiter (fortis), bravely. Germania, ae, Germany. Hăbitare, av, at (habere), to inhabit, dwell. Ludus, I, play, sport, pl. games. Nuntiare, av, at (nuntius), to announce, report.

Occu.tare, av, at (occulere), to hide, conceal. Provincia, ae (pro and vincere), province. Pugnarě, av, at (pugna), to fight. Saevīrē, īv or i, īt (saevus), to rage, to be cruel. Spectare, av, at (specere), to see, look at. Stătim (stare), immediately. Tectum, I (tegere), a covering, roof, house, Vigilare, av, at (vigil), to watch, remain awake.

549. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Laborem nostrum finivimus. 2. Canes tecta nostra custodivērunt. 3. Bellum saevit per Germaniam. 4. Dormivistīne, an vigilāsti? 5. Puellae in horto cantābant. 6. Corpŏra nostra curaverāmus. 7. Puĕri ludos spectavērunt. 8. Arbŏres florescunt. Hic ad summam gloriam florescēbat. 10. Decrevīmus habitāre in provincia. 11. Consilia sua occultavērunt. 12. Si te vidĕrit, statim curret ad te.
- (b) 1. Have they announced your arrival? 2. Who will announce the arrival of the king? 3. Caesar sent

ub ag

oc

(aı

to ref

(v

běr

(m

ing

int

pĕ:

e. ;

res

bei

very large forces to guard the city. 4. They have gone into the country to witness the games. 5. They have finished the war. 6. We wish to finish the work. 7. The enemy are said to have fought bravely. 8. The flowers are beginning to bloom in our garden. 9. Do you wish to live (dwell) in the city? 10. We wish to live in the country.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Composition of Words.

550. Prepositions often enter into composition with other words, as prefixes.

Rem.—Many prepositions undergo no change of form on entering into composition, and merely impart to the simple word their own force. These, of course, require no special notice; others, however, present some peculiarities.

 A, ăb, abs — away from; e. g., abstinere (abs and ténere), to abstain from. In substantives and adjectives, it denotes privation; e. g., amens (ā and mens), without mind, mad.

 Ad — to (d often assimilated before consonants, except d, j, m, and v); e. g., accipere (ad and capere), to accept.

3) Cŏn (cŭm) — with, together, sometimes completely (co before h and vowels; com before b, p, and sometimes before a vowel; n assimilated before l, m, and r); e. g., condūcĕrĕ (con and dūcĕrĕ), to lead together, collect.

 Dē — from, down; e. g., dēdūcērē (dē and dūcērē), to deduce. In substantives and adjectives, privation; e. g., dēmens (de and mens), mad.

5) E,ex — out of, thoroughly (e before liquids and b, d, g, and v; ef before f); e. g., expugnare (ex and pugnare), to vanquish, storm.

6) In — into, on, against (im before b and p; i before gn; n assimilated before l, m, and r); e.g., incurrere (in and currere).

have

They

work.

7. 8.

rden.

. We

to attack. In adjectives, not; e. g., indignus (in and dignus), unworthy.

Ob — against (b assimilated before c, f, and usually p); e. g, opponere (ob and ponere), to place against, to oppose.

 Pro — for, forth (prod before vowels); e. g., proponere (pro and ponere), to set forth, propose.

9) Sub—under, from below, somewhat (b assimilated before c, f g, and sometimes m, p, and r; sus in a few words); e. E. subjicere (sub and jacere), to throw under, to subject.

551. The inseparable prepositions, amb, around, about; dis or di, asunder; rë (rëd before vowels), back, again, away; së, without, apart from; and vë, not, often occur as prefixes in compound words; e. g., ambirë (amb and ire), to go round; disponere (dis and ponere), to put asunder, to distribute; redire (red and ire), to return; sēdūcērē (se and ducere), to lead apart; vēsānūs (ve and sanus), not sane, insane.

552. Adverbs are sometimes used as prefixes; e. g., běněvělens (bene and volens), benevolent; mälěvělens

(male and volens), wishing ill, malevolent.

553. Certain vowel-changes often take place in forming compound words; thus, a, e and ae are often changed into i (a sometimes into e); e. g., accipere (ad and capere), abstinere (abs and tenere), occidere (ob and caedere).

Rem. 1.—Having examined the prefixes, we pass to notice a few terminations of frequent occurrence in compound words.

Rem. 2.—When the first part of a compound is a noun, the connecting vowel is generally short i, as in agricola (ager and colere), a husbandman.

554. From făcĕrĕ, to do, are derived, (1) fex, agent; e. g., artifex (ars and facĕre), an artist; (2) fīciŭm, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., artificiŭm, an art; (3) fīcŭs, he who does (adjectively) e. g., bĕnĕfīcūs, beneficent.

with

r own how-

enotes nad. pt d, j,

fore A owel; n and

educe, ss (de

nd v; quish,

n asrĕrĕ), 555. From căpĕrĕ, to take, are derived, (1) ceps, agent; e. g., princeps (primus and capĕre), one who takes the first (place), a prince, a leader; (2) cĭpiŭm, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., princĭpiŭm, a beginning.

556. From dīcērē, to speak, are derived, (1) dex, agent, one who speaks: e. g., index, an informer; (2) dīciŭm, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., indiciŭm, a disclosure; (3) dĭcŭs (adj.), speaking; e. g., mălĕdĭcŭs, slanderous.

557. From cănere, to sing; cen, agent; e.g., tubicen (tuba and canere), a trumpeter.

558. From vellě, to wish; vŏlens and vŏlūs (adj.), wishing; e. g., běněvŏlens and běněvŏlūs (bene and velle), benevolent.

559. From ferrë and gërërë, to bear; fër and gër, one who bears; e.g., Lūcĕfër (lux and ferre), Venus as morning star, the bearer of light; armĕgĕr (arma and gerĕre), armor-bearer.

560. From cŏlĕrĕ, to cultivate; cŏlă, one who cultivates, or dwells in; e. g., ăgrĭcŏlă (ager and colĕre), a field-tiller, a husbandman.

561. VOCABULARY.

Adducere, dux, duct (ad and ducere), to bring to.

Attingere, tig, tact (ad and tangere), to reach, attain.

Condere, did, dit (con and dare), to found.

Convenire, ven, vent (con and venire), to assemble, convene.

Expugnare, av, at (ex and pugnare), to take by storm.

Incertus, ă, um (in and certus), uncertain.

Incolă, ae, m. & f. (in and colěre), an inhabitant.

Invadere, vas, vas (in and vadere), to go against, invade.

Ităliă, ae, Italy.

Obsěs, idis, m. & f., hostage.

Occidere, cid, cas (ob and cadere), to fall, set.

562.

dě Phili Poss

> Rex terr mar occi Inco

вĭde

pŏro (linva yea: dero 4.]

at v

Cai

ceps,

who

nŭm.

iŭm.

gent. riŭm,

m, a

ĭcŭs,

bicĕn

vish-

elle),

one s as

and

ulti-

e), a

562.7

Occidere, cid, cis (ob and caedĕre), to kill. Philosophus, I, philosopher. Possidērē, ēd, ess, to possess.

Princeps, ĭpĭs (primus and capere), the first, a leader, chief. Vērum, I, truth.

562. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi philosophi verum non attigerunt. 2. Rex portas urbis clausit hostibus invadentibus. 3. Has terras possidēmus; illas expugnabīmus. 4. Galli Romam expugnavērunt. 5. Sol post montes illos in mare occidit. 6. Hic unus miles duos aut tres occidit. Incolae ad eum legatos miserunt. 8. Caesar omnem senātum ad se convenīre, principumque liberos obsĭdes ad se addūci jussit. 9. Incertum est quo tem-

pore Dido Carthaginem condiderit.

(b) 1. The commander will collect large forces and invade Italy. 2. After having waged war for many years, they took the city by storm. 3. Caesar had ordered all the inhabitants to assemble in his presence. 4. Let us put the invading enemy to flight. 5. Romulus is said to have founded Rome. 6. It is uncertain at what time Carthage was founded. 7. I do not know at what time he returned home. 8. They say that Caius was killed in the first battle.

tus), d co-

d va. $d\epsilon$.

l cı-

sign M I

PARADIGMS.

Nouns.—Five Declensions.

563 Endings of the Genitive Singular.

Dec. I. Dec. II. Dec. III. Dec. IV Dec. V. ae, I, is, üs ël.*

REM.—Some Greek nouns are exceptions.

564. Gender in Latin is,

- Natural, when determined by sex, as in English; as, homo, a man, masc.; mulier, a woman, fem.
- 2) Grammatical, when not determined by sex; as, sermo, a discourse, masc.; laurus, a laurel, fem.

565. Natural Gender.

Masculine. Feminine. Common.

Names of males. Names of females. Names applicable to both sexes.

566. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined partly by their signification, but principally by their endings.

567. Grammatical Gender, when not determined by nom. ending.

Most names of rivers, winds, and months.

Feminine.

Feminine.

Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.

Neuter.

Indeclinable nouns and clauses used as nouns.

REM.—Grammatical gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

568. First Declension.

- 1. Characteristic ae.
- 2. Nominative endings Latin a; Greek e, as, and es.
- 3. Grammatical gender: a and e, fem.; as and es, masc.

Ram.—Cases coming under previous rules (565 and 567) are, of course, excepted.

^{*} In this ending e is long, except in spěl, flděl, and rěl

er, o

forn

Roo

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abi.
Sing. Plur.	ae,	ae, ārŭm,	ae, īs,	ăm,	ă, ne.	ā. īs.

REM.—The declension of Greek nouns presents some exceptions.

5. Paradigms.

G. Mūs-ac, M D. Mūs-ac, M A. Mūs-am, M V. Mūs-a, M	use. Piur. Iŭs-ae. Iŭs-arŭm. Iŭs-as. Iŭs-ae. Iŭs-ae.	Sing. N. Epitóm-i G. Epitóm-i D. Epitóm-i A. Epitóm-i V Epitóm-i	ne, Epitom-is. Epitom-as. Epitom-as.	
3. Aenēas (a man's name). N. Aenē-ās. G. Aenē-ae. D. Aenē-ae. A. Aenē-am (ān). V. Aenē-ā. A. Aenē-ā.		A. Epitom-ē, Epitom-īs. 4. Anchīsēs (a man's name). N. Anchīs-ēs. G. Anchīs-ae. D. Anchīs-ae. A. Anchīs-ēn. V. Anchīs-ē (ā). A. Anchīs-ē (ā).		

569. Second Declension.

- 1. Characteristic .
- 2. Nominative endings: Latin, er, ir, us, um; Greek, os and on.
- 3. Grammatical gender: um and on, neut., the rest masculine, except,
 - Alvus, domus, humus, and vannus, which are feminine; pelagus and virus, neuter; and vulgus, generally neuter, but some times masculine.
 - 2) Such as come under previous rules.

4. Case-endings.

	Nom. end.		ō,	Acc.	Voc. ĕ (or like nom.),	Abl. Ö,
win.	ī (neut. ă),	ōrům,	īs,	ös (neut. ă),	ī (neut ă).	Ta.

Ram.-A few Greek nouns are exceptions

ment

ae. Ārūm Is. Ās. Ae. Is. ame).

d on.

pělă-

Abl.

ö, Ta

5. Paradigms.

Servüs, slave.	Regnum, king-	Gěněr, son-in-	Ager, field.
----------------	---------------	----------------	--------------

SINGULAR

	-9-21/	- A married	
Serv-ŭs, Serv-ī. Serv-ō. Serv-ĕ. Serv-ō.	Rēgn-ŭm. Rēgn-L Rēgn-ö. Rēgn-ŭm. Rēgn-ŭm. Rēgn-ö.	Gĕnĕr. Gĕnĕr-ī. Gĕnĕr-ō, Gĕnĕr-ŭm, Gĕnĕr- Gĕnĕr-ō,	Agĕr. Agr-ī. Agr-ō. Agr-ŏm. Agĕr. Agr-ō.

PLURAL

	PLU	KAL.	
Serv-ī. Serv-ōrŭm. Serv-īs. Serv-īs. Serv-īs.	Rēgn-ă. Rēgn-ōrŭm. Rēgn-īs. Rēgn-ă. Rēgn-ă. Rēgn-īs.	Gěněr-I. Gěněr-örům. Gěněr-is. Gěněr-ös. Gěnér-I. Gěněr-is.	Agr-ī. Agr-ōrŏm, Agr-īs, Agr-ōs, Agr-ī. Agr-īs,

REM.-VIr, a man, is declined like giner.

6. Paradigms of Greek nouns.

1. Ilion, n. (name of a city).	12. Delos f (name of m. 11 .
N. Ili-ŏn.	2. Dēlos, f. (name of an island) N. Dēl-os,
G. Ili-L	
D. Ili-ō.	G. Del-L
A. Ili-ŏn,	D. Dēl-ō.
V. Ili-ŏn.	A. Dēl-ŏn.
	V. Del-ĕ.
A. Ili-ŏ.	A. Dēl-ō.

570. Third Declension.

1. Characteristic is.

2. Nominative endings \cdot a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

3. Table of gender in the third declension.

is, ys, aus, es not ingen. and x.	at,
U.	not in- ur, and us

For exceptions, see 579.

4. Classification of nouns of the third declension, according to the formation of root from nominative ending.

Class I. Root like Nom.	Class II.	Class III.	Class. IV:	
	Root adds a let- ter.	Root drops nom, ending.	Root changes nom ending.	

fe

5. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing. Plur.	ës,	ĭs, ŭm (ičm),	ī, ĭbŭs,	ĕm, (ĭm), ēs,	ěв,	ĕ (I), ĭbŭa.

Rum. 1.—The inclosed endings im and i belong only to a few words.

REM. 2.—The ending fam of the genitive plura. occurs in the following classes of nouns; viz.,

1) Neuters in e, al, and ar; as, mars, mariam, animal, animalium.

2) Nouns in is and se of Class III.; as, hostis, hostium; nubes, nubium.

 All monosyllables in s or s preceded by a consonant; as, urbs, urbiam; ars, arcium.

 Nouns in ns and rs (though in these um is sometimes used); as, cliens, clientium; cohors, cohortium.

6. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing. Plur.	ă (iă),	ĭs, ŭm (iŭm),	ī, ĭbŭs,	ă (iă),	ă (iă),	ĕ (ī), ĭbŭs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong to neuters in e, al, and ar.

571. CLASS I. comprises nouns in c,*l, n, r, t, and y. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel-changes:

1) Nouns in ter and ber generally drop e in the root: as, pater, a father; root, patr.

2) Nouns in ĕn generally change ĕ into ĭ in the root; as, flumĕn, a river; root, flumĕn.

Nouns in ŭt change ŭ into i in the root; as, căpŭt, a head; root, căpĭt.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in al and or, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

572. Class II. comprises nouns of the third declension in a, o, and a few in i. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

1) Nouns in a, and a few in i, add t; as, poēmă, a poem; root, poēmăt: hydroměli, mead; root, hydromělit.

2) Nouns in o add n; as, leo, a lion; root, leon.

REM. 1 .- O is long in the root.

Ram. 2.—Nouns in do and go change o into I, before n in the root; as, virgo, a virgin; root, virgin.

^{*} There are only two nouns of this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

Abl.

ibua.

573. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in bs. ms, ps, x (= cs or gs), is, ys, e, a few in i,* and a few in es. They ĕ (ī), form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

1) Nouns in bs, ms, ps, and ys, drop s; as, urbs, a city; root,

urb; hiems, winter; root, hiem.

2) Nouns in x = cs or gs drop the s in x; as, vox (cs), a voice; root, voc; rex (gs), a king; root, reg.

3) Nouns in is, e, and a few in es, drop those endings; as, hostis, an enemy; root, host: nubes, a cloud; root, nub: măre, a sea; root, măr.

574. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in as, os, us, ls, ns, rs, and most of those in es. These form the root by changing s into r, t, or d.

1) Nouns in as, ls, ns, rs, and most of those in es, generally change s into t; as, pietas, piety; root, pietat: mons, a mountain; root, mont: ăbiēs, a fir-tree; root, ăbiet: mīles, a soldier; root, milit. (See Rem. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in as, of Greek origin, insert n before t in the root; as, disphas, an elephant ; root, ēlēphant.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in es change e into i, before i, in the root; as, mile; root, mīlīt.

2) Nouns in os and us generally change s into r or t; as, flos, a flower; root, flor: săcerdos, a priest; root, săcerdot: virtūs, virtue; root, virtūt: genus, a kind; root, gener: tempus, time; 100t, tempor.

Rem.—Most nouns in us change s into r_1 and u of the nominative becomes s or s in the root, as in these examples.

575. Paradigms.

Mŭliër, f., (root, same as Singular. N. Mŭliër, G. Mŭliër-ïs, D. Mŭliër-ī, A. Mŭliër-ĕm,	a woman. s nom. [126].) Ffural. Mŭliër-ës. Mŭliër-tim, Mŭliër-lbŭs. Mŭliër-ës.	Virgŏ, f., (root, virgin [1: Singular. N. Virgŏ, G. Virgŏn-ĭs, D. Virgŏn-ōn, A. Virgŏn-ŏm,	Plural, Virgin-ës. Virgin-im. Virgin-ibus.
A. Mŭliër-ëm,	Mŭliër-ës.	A. Virgin-ěm,	Virgin-ēs,
V. Mŭliër,	Mŭliër-ës.	V. Virgö,	Virgin-ēs,
A. Mŭliër-ë,	Mŭliër-ĭbŭs.	A. Virgin-ě,	Virgin-ībūs,

^{*} Nouns in i are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping i, and a few by adding t (572, 1).

biam. , urbiam ;

g clamos of

as, cliens,

Abl. (I), bŭs.

These r form it hanges: s, păter,

oot; as.

a head;

he case in

in a, o, to the

poem;

gn. u vir.

longs to

Rex (gs), m., a king. (root, rig [134, 2].)		Corpus, n., a body. (root, corpor [137, 2].)			
Singular.	Plural.	Singular. Plur			
N. Rex,	Rēg-ēs.	N. Corpus,	Corpŏr-A.		
G. Rēg-ĭs,	Rēg-ŭm.	G. Corpor-is	Corpor-um.		
D. Rēg-ī,	Rēg-ĭbŭs.	D. Corpŏr-ī,	Corpor-ibus		
A. Rēg-ĕm,	Rēg-ēs.	A. Corpus,	Corpor-a.		
V. Rex,	Rēg-ēs.	V. Corpus,	Corpor-a.		
A. Rēg-ĕ,	Rēg-ĭbŭs.	A. Corpŏr-ĕ,	•		

GREEK NOUNS.

Pēriclēs (a man's name).	Hēros, a hero.
	Singular. Plural.
N. Pěricl-ës.	N. Hērō-s, Hērō-ēs.
G. Pericl-is.	G. Hērō-ĭs, Hērō-ŭm.
D. Péricl-L	D. Hērō-ī, Hērō-ībŭs.
A. Pěricl-ěm (eă).	A. Hērō-ĕm (ă), Hērō-ēs (ās),
V. Pěrřcl-ēs (ē).	V. Hērō-s, Hērō-ēs.
A. Pěrřel-ě.	A. Hērō-ĕ, Hērō-ĭbŭa

576. Fourth Declension.

- 1. Characteristic us.
- 2. Nominative endings: us and u.
- 3. Grammatical Gender: u, neuter; us, masculine; except

Acus, a needle; domus, a house; manus, a hand; tdus, the ides; portucus, a gallery; tribus, a tribe; which are feminine.

4. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ŭs,	ūs,	uī,	ŭm,	ŭs,	n.
Plur	ūs,	uŭm,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*),	ũs,	ūs,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs#).

5. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom:	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ũ,	ūs,	ũ,	ū,	ŭ,	ū.
Plur.	uă,	uŭm,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*),	uă,	uă,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*).

^{*} This ending is used only in a few words.

· Ä. · ŭm. · ĭbŭs. · ä. · ä. · ĭbŭs

ēs.

ŭm.

bŭs.

t he ides :

is*).

ŭs#).

es (a), es. digs. 6. Paradigms.

Fructus,	(ruct.)		n., a horn.
Singular. N. Fruct-ŭs,	Plural.	Singular.	Plurai.
	Fruct-us.	N. Corn-a,	Corn-ua.
G. Fruct-us,	Fruct-uum.	G. Corn-us,	Corn-uum.
D. Fruct-uī,	Fruct-ibus.	D. Corn-ū,	Corn-fbba
A. Fruct-um,	Fruct-us.	A. Corn-u.	Corn-uă.
V. Fruct-ŭs,	Fruct-üs.	V. Corn-ū.	Corn-uit.
A. Fruct-ū,	Fruct-ibus.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-ibus.

577. Fifth Deciension.

- 1. Characteristic et.*
- 2. Nominative ending: es.
- 3. Grammatical gender feminine, except dies, a day (m. and f. in singular, and m. in plural), and merīdies, mid-day (masc.).

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ēs,	ēī,*	ēī,*	ĕm,	ēs,	ē.
Plur.	ēs,	ērŭm,	ēbŭs,	ēs,	ēs,	ēbŭs.

5 Paradigms.

	Res, f ., a thing. (root, r .)			Di	ēs, m. and	d f., a day.
	Singular,	Plural.			Singular.	Plural.
N.	R-ēs,	R-ēs.		N.	Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
G.	R-ĕī,	R-ērum.	,	G.	Di-ēī,	Di-ērŭm.
D.	R-ĕī,	R-ēbŭs.		D.	Di-ēī,	Di-ēbŭs.
A.	R-ĕm,	R-ēs.	- 1	A.	Di-ĕm,	Di-ēs.
\mathbf{V}_{\bullet}	R-ēs,	R-ēs.		V.	Di-ës,	Di-ēs.
Δ.	R-ē,	R-ēbŭs.		A.	Di-ē.	Di-āhňa

578. Case-endings of Substantives.

SINGULAR.

M. N. d.	s. s. n.	N. Q.	F. ēs. ēl.* ĕm. ēs. ē.
--	----------------	---	---------------------------------------

^{*} In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. e is long, except in spëi (where it is short), fidei, and rei (where it is common).

PLURAL.

	Dec. I.	Dos. II.		Dec.	Ш.	Doc. IV.		Dec. V	
D. A. V.	As.	M. i. ōrŭm. īs. ōs. ī. īs.	N. ă. ă. ă.	ŭm (iŭm). Ibŭs. ēs.	N. ă or iă. ă or iă. ă or iă.	M. ūs. uŭm. ĭbŭs (ŭb ūs. ūs. ĭbŭs (ŭb	N. už. už. už. už.	F. ēs. ērūm, ēbūs. ēs. ēs. ēbūs.	

Rum.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

579. Table of Genders.

I. NATURAL GENDER.

Masculine. Names of males.	Feminine. Names of females.	Names applicable to
----------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------

II. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, independent of nominative ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of coun- tries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns, and clauses used as nouns,

III. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, as determined by nominative ending.

Dec. I.	Masculine. as, es.	Feminine. a, e.	Neuter.
Dec. II.	er, us, os.*		um, on.
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, in- creasing in gen., o except do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s impure, x, es not increasing in gen.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
Dec. IV.	us.		· u
Dec. V	i	68.	

Principal Exceptions.+

SECOND DECLENSION.

Alvūs, domus, humus, and vannus, are feminine; pelagus and virūs, neuter; vulgus, generally neuter, sometimes masculine.

^{*} Nouns in ir have natural gender.

[†] This list of exceptions contains some whose gender is not grammatical. They are given here for convenience of reference.

e. V

ŭm. oŭa.

eŭs.

guags,

e to

ıg.

s, and

ouns.

ding.

n, t,

irāa.

ama-

THIRD DECLENSION.

1) MASCULINES.

(do and go.) Cardo, comedo, harpago, ordo, unedo, ligo, and margo (the last sometimes fem.).

(as.) As and Greek nouns in as (gen. antis).

(ia.) Amnia, anguia, axia, cassia, cinia (or f.), collia, crinia, enalia, fascia, finia (or f.), follia, finia, ignia, lăpia, menaia, orbia, pania, piacia, postia, pulvia, sanguia, torria, unguia, vectia, and vermia.

(s impure) Adeps, dens, fons, forceps (or f.), mons, pons, quadrans, and rudens.

(z.) Călix, codex, cortex, grex, pollex, thorax, and vertex.

(l.) Sāl and söl.

(n.) Liën, pectën, rën, and many words of Greek origin.

(ur.) Furfür, turtür, and vultür.

(us.) Lěpůs and mūs.

?) FEMININES.

(or and os.) Arbor, cos, and dos.

(es increasing.) Compēs, mercēs, mergĕs, quiēs, rĕquiēs, sĕgĕs, and tĕgĕs.

(o.) Cărŏ, ēchō, and Argō.

(us.) Grus (m.), incus, juventūs, palūs, pecus (udīs), salūs, senectūs, servitūs, sūs (m.), tellūs, and virtūs.

8) NEUTERS.

(er.) Cădāvěr, ĭtěr, tūběr, ūběr, vēr, verběr, and names of plants in er.

(or.) Ador, aequor, cor, and marmor.

(as and es.) Fās, nefās, vās, and aes.

os.) Os (oris), os (ossis), and the Greek words, chaos, epos, ethos, and melos.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Acus, īdus, manus, porticus, and tribus, are feminine.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Dies and meridies are masculine, though the former is sometimes fem. in sing.

580. Adjectives.—First and second Declension.

1. Case-endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

		agular.		1	Plural.		A few; !	ave Si 1	thue s
	M. 2,*	F 1.	N. 2.	Af. 2.	F. 1.	N. 2.	M.	F.	N.
N. G. D. A. V. A.	ŭs, ĕr,† ī, ō, ŭm, ĕ, ĕr,†	ă, ae, ae, ăm, ă,	ŭm, L ō, ŭm, ŭm,	ī, ōrŭm, īs, ōs, ī, īs,	se, ārŭm, īs, ās, se, īs,	ă. ōrăm, īs. ă. ă. ă.	ŭs, ĕr, Iŭs, I, ŭm, ĕ, ĕr,	ă, Iŭs, I, ăm, ă,	ăm, Iăs. I. ŭm, ŭm,

2. Paradigms.

Singular.			Bŏnŭs,	good.	ral.	
N.	Bŏn-ŭs,	ă,	ăm;	Bŏn-ï,	ae.	iL.
G.	Bon-i,	ae,	ī;	Bŏn-ōrŭm,	ārum,	ōrŭm.
D.	Bon-ō,	ae,	ō;	Bŏn-īs,	īs,	In.
Α.	Bon-ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm;	Bon-os,	ās,	ă.
V.	Bon-ĕ,	ă,	ŭm;	Bŏn-ī,	ae,	ă.
۸.	Bon-ò,	ā,	ō;	Bŏn-īs,	18,	īa.

Těněr, tender: root, těněr (e not dropped).

Singular.			Plural.			
N.	Těněr,	ă,	ŭm;	Těněr-ī,	ne.	ă.
G.	Tĕnĕr-ī,	ae,	ī;	Těněr-örüm,	ārum.	örŭm
D.	Těněr-ō,	ae,	ō;	Tĕnĕr-īs,	īa,	īs.
A.	Tĕnĕr-ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm;	Těněr-ōs,	äs,	ă.
V.	Těněr,	ă,	ŭm;	Těněr-ī,	ae,	á.
A.	Těněr-ō,	ā,	ō;	Těněr-īs,	īs.	īa.

Ram. 1.—Most adjectives in &r drop & before r of the root in all genders.

Rem. 2.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in the it is giverally short in alteriue), and the dative singular in i in all genders, viz.: altime, another; nulling, no one; soling, alone; toting, the whole; ulling, any; uning, one; alter, the other; neuter, neither; and atter, which (of the two).

581. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

1. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz.:

^{*} The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

[†] In adjectives in $\check{e}r$, the masc. nom. sing. is generally the root (\check{e} is sometimes dropped): $\check{e}r$, therefore, is not properly a case-ending; it is given merely to show the termination of the nom. and vcc. sing., without regard to the root (107).

^{\$} See list, 113, REM.

i ag. thus :

ŭm, Iŭs. L

ŭm. ŭm.

i. Fim. A. I.

i. irŭm.

is gano-.: aliñe, nãs, one ;

o three

by nuot (8 is

y; it is

 Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).

2) Those which have two (the masc. and fem. being the same).

3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

2. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same declension, gender, and ending. It must, however, be observed,

1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in ž or ž, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in ž only.

 That all except comparatives have, in the plural, the nom, acc., and voc. neuter in iă, and the genitive in iăm.

3. Paradigms.

CLASS I.

	e:		Acĕr	, shar	·p.		
N. G. D. A. V. A.	M. Acĕr, Acr-ĭs, Acr-ĕm, Acr-ĕm, Acĕr,	ngular. F. ācr-ĭs, ācr-ĭs, ācr-ī, ācr-ĕm, ācr-ĭs, ācr-ŏ,	N. ācr-ĕ. ācr-ĭs, ācr-L. ācr-ĕ. ācr-ĕ. ācr-ĕ.	N. G. D. A. V.	M. Acr-ēs, Acr-iŭm, Acr-ibŭs, Acr-ēs, Acr-ēs, Acr-ibŭs,	ācr-ībus, ācr-ēs, ācr-ēs,	N. ācr-iā. ācr-iūm, ācr-ibūs, ācr-iā. ācr-iā.

CLASS II.

1.	Tristĭs,	sad

anguar.		ı Pi	Plural.		
M. J. F. N. Trist-is. G. Trist-is, D. Trist-i, A. Trist-em, V. Trist-is, A. Trist-i,	N. trist-č. trist-I. trist-č. trist-č. trist-č. trist-i.	M. & F. N. Trist-ës, G. Trist-iŭm, D. Trist-bŭs, A. Trist-ës, V. Trist-ës, A. Trist-bŭs,	N. trist-iŭm. trist-iŭm. trist-ičin. trist-ič. trist-ič. trist-ič.		

2. Tristior (comparative), more sad.

		, ,	77	
	Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	N. Tristior-es,	tristior-a.
G	Tristior-ĭs,	tristior-ĭs.	G. Tristior-um,	tristior-um.
D,	Tristiör-ī,	tristiör-ī.	D. Tristior-ibus,	tristior-ibus
A,	Tristior-em,	tristiŭs.	A. Tristior-es,	tristior-io
V.	Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	V. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristior-a.
A,	Tristior-ĕ (ī),	tristiör-ĕ (ĩ).	A. Tristior-ibus,	tristior-ibna

G.

N. G.

D. A. V. A

nos

sec I spe thei

N. G. D.

A. V.

CLASS III.

Felix, happy.

Singu	ilar.	Plu	Plural.			
M. & F.	N.	M. & F,	N.			
N. Felix,	fēlix.	N. Fēlīc-ēs,	felīc-iă.			
G. Fēlīc-ĭs,	fēlīc-ĭs.	G. Felic-iŭm,	fēlīc-iŭm.			
D. Felic-ī,	felic-ī.	D. Felic-ibus.	fēlīc-ĭbŭs.			
A. Fēlīc-ĕm,	fēlix.	A. Fēlīc-ēs,	fēlīc-iă.			
V. Fēlix,	fēlix.	V. Fēlīc-ēs,	fēlīc-iă.			
A. Fēlīc-ĕ (ī),	fělīc-ĕ (ī).	A. Fēlīc-ĭbŭs,	fēlīc-ĭbŭs.			

582. Comparison of Adjectives.

In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

Comparative.			Superiative.				
M.	F.	. N.	M.	F.	N.		
iŏr,	iŏr,	iŭs.	issīmūs,	isaĭmă,	issīmŭm.		
Exam	•	Root.	Comparative.	Sup	erlative.		
Altŭs (/	high),	alt.	altiŏr (iŏr, iŭs),	altissĭn	nŭs (ă, ŭm).		
Mītĭs (1	nild),	mīt.	mītiŏr (iŏr, iŭs),		nŭs (a, ŭm).		

Rem. 1.—Adjectives in *ĕr* add *rīmūs* (ā, ŭm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulcher, pulchriör, pulcherrimüs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in its form the superlative by adding itmus to the root of the positive; e. g..

no positivo, o. g.,		
Făcilis (easy),	facilior,	făcillimus.
Difficilis (difficult),	diff icilior,	diff icillimus.
Similis (like),	sïmïliör.	sĭmillĭmŭs.
Dissimilis (unlike),	dissimiliör.	dissimillimis

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.

Bonus (good),	měliŏr,	opt ĭmŭs.
Mains (bad),	pejör,	pessimis.
Māgnus (great),	majŏr,	maximis.
Parvus (little),	minor,	minimus,
Multing (much),	plūs (pl. plūrēs, plūrā),	- ,

583. Numerals.*

1 2 8	Cardinals. Unŭs, one. Duŏ. Trēs.	Secundus.	Distributives. Singŭlī, one by one. Bīnī. Ternī.	Adverbs. Sĕmĕl, once. Bĭs. Tĕr.
-------------	----------------------------------	-----------	--	---------------------------------

^{*} See Numerals, p. 145

f the

perla-

e root

noc.

4 5 6 7 8 9	Quătuŏr Quinquĕ. Sex. Septĕm. Octŏ. Nŏvĕm. Dĕcĕm.	Quartus, Quintus, Sextus, Septimus, Octavus, Nonus, Děcimus,	Quăternī, Quīnī. Sēnī. Septēnī. Octōnī. Nŏvēnī. Dēnī.	Quătěr. Quinquies. Sexiës. Septiës. Octiës. Nŏviës. Děciës.
----------------------------	---	--	---	---

584. Substantive Pronouns.

SINGULAR.

	SINGULAR.	
N. Egŏ, I.	2d Person. Tū, thou.	3d Person.
G. Meī, of me.	Tuī, of thee.	Sui, of himself, her.
	Tibi, to or for thee.	self, itself. Sibi, to himself, &c.
D. Mihī, to or for me. A. Mē, me. V.	Te, thee. Tu, O thou.	Sē, himself.
A. Me, with, &c., me.	Te, with thee.	Sē, with himself.
	PLURAL.	
N. Noe, we.	Vos, ye or you.	
G. Nostrum, of us.	Vestrum or Vestri, of you.	Sui, of themselves.
D. Nobīs, to us.	Vobīs, to you.	Sibi, to themselves.
A. Nōs, us. V.	Vös, you. Vös, O ye or you.	Sē, themselves.
A Nobis, with us.	Vobis, with you.	Sē, with themselves.

585. Adjective Pronouns.

I. The Possessive Pronouns (so called because they denote possession), meus, meă, meum; tuus, tuă, tuum; suus, suă, suum; noster, nostră, nostrum; vester, vestră, vestrum, are declined, as we have already seen (114, Rem. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

II. Demonstrative Pronouns (so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer), are $h\bar{\imath}c$, $ill\bar{e}$, $ist\bar{e}$, is, and their compounds, and are declined as follows:

			1. H	ic, this.		
		Singular.		1	Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Hīc,	haec,	hōc.	Hī,	hae,	haec.
G.	Huj ŭ s,	hujŭs,	hujŭs.	Hōrum,	hārum,	hörüm.
D.	Huïc,	huïc,	huïc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
A.	Hunc,	hanc,	hōc.	Hös,	hās,	haec.
v.						
A.	Hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	Hīs,	his,	bīs.

Ĕ

N G D

al ca

G. D.

A.

V. A.

use wh the

fini

cer &c in

2. Illě, he or that.

M. N. Illě, G. Illiŭs, D. Illī, A. Illům,	Singular. F. illä, illīŭs, illī, illām,	N. illūd. illīŭs. illī. illūd.	M. Illī, Illōrŭm, Illīs, Illōs,	Plural F. Illae, illārŭm illīs, illās,	N. illä. illörüm. illä. illä.
A. Illō,	illā,	illō.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

3. Istě, that.

lstě, that, is declined like illë. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

4. Is, he or that.

Less specific than ille.)

		(Less spe	cuic chan me.)		
M. N. Is, G. Ejŭs, D. Eī, A. Eŭm, V.	Singular. F. en, en, ejus, en, eam,	N. Id. ejŭs. eI. Id.	M. II, Eōrŭm, Iīs or eīs, Eōs,	Plural. F. eae, eārum, iīs or eīs, eās,	N. eă. eōrŭm. iīs or eīs. eă.
A. Eō,	eā,	eō.	Iis or eis,	iīs or eīs,	iīs or eīs.

5. Idem, the same.

(Formed by annexing dem to is.)

	(1 ornica by annealing them to us.)					
		Singular.		1	Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Iděm,	eădĕm,	ĭděm.	Iīdĕm,	eaedĕm,	eăděm.
G.	Ejusděm,	ejusděm,	ejusděm.	Eōrundĕm,	eārunděm,	eörunděm.
D.	Eīdĕm,	eīdĕm,	eīdĕm.	Eisděm, or Iisděm,	eisděm, or iisděm,	eisděm, or iisděm.
A. V.	Eunděm,	eanděm,	ĩdĕm.	Eōsděm,	eāsděm,	căděm.
Λ.	Eōdĕm,	eāděm,	eōdĕm.	Eisděm, <i>or</i> Iisděm,	eisděm, <i>or</i> iisděm.	eisděm, or iisděm.

III. The Intensive Pronoun, ipsĕ, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object emphatic. It is declined as follows:

-			1 111111		42
M. N. Ipsč, G. Ipsīŭs, D Ipsī, A. Ipsūm, V.	Singular. F. ipsä, ipsīŭs, ipsī, ipsām,	N. ipsūm. ipsīŭs. ipsī. ipsūm.	M. Ipsī, Ipsōrŭm, Ipsīs, Ipsōs,	Pluial. F. ipsae, ipsārum, ipsīs, ipsās,	N. ipsä. ipsörüm. ipsīs. ipsä.
A. Ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

IV. The Relative Pronoun, qui, who, is so called because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows:

M. N Quǐ, G. Cujǔs, D. Cuǐ, A. Quĕm V.	Singular. F. quae, cujŭs, cuī, quăm,	N. quŏd. cujŭs. cuï. quŏd.	M. Quĩ, Quōrŭm, Quĭbŭs, Quōs,	Plural. F. quae, quārŭm, quĭbŭs, quïās,	N. quae. quōrŭm. quĭbŭs. quae.
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quĭbŭs,	quibus,	quĭbŭs.

V. The Interrogative Pronouns, quis and qui, are so called because they are used in asking questions. Qui (which? what?) is used adjectively, and is declined like the relative. Quis (who? which? what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined like the relative, except in the forms quis, nom. masc., and quid, nom. and acc. neut.

VI. Indefinite Pronouns are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., quīdām, a certain one; ăliquis, some one; quisque, every one; sīquis, if any, &c. They are compounds either of quis or quī, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

Rxm.—The compounds of quis generally take quid in the neut. sing. when used substantively, and quod when used adjectively. Some of those compounds, as aliquis, siquis, take qua (not quae) in the fem. sing. and neut. plur.

586. Paradigm of the verb Esse.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT (am).
Singular,	Plural
Sum, I am.	Sămăs, we are.
Es, thou art.	Estis, you are.
Est, he is.	Sunt, they are.

:й**н.**

ch are

n. eïs,

eīs.

n. děm. n, *or* ěm.

a,

m, *or* ĕ**m.**

ause vs:

FIRST	EATIN BOOK.
Singular.	FECT (was).
Erain, I was.	Plural.
Eräs, thou wast.	Erāmus, we were.
Erăt, he was.	Erātis, you were.
	Erant, they were.
FUTURE (s.	hall or will be).
Ero, I shall be.	Erimus, we shall be.
Eris, thou wilt be.	Eritis, you will be.
Erit, he will be.	Erunt, they will be.
Perfect (ha	we been or was).
Fui, I have been.	Fuimus, we have been.
Fuisti, thou hast been.	Enights and I am I
	Fuistis, you have been.
Fuit, he has been.	Fuere, they have been.
PLUPERFE	CT (had been).
Fueram, I had been.	Fuĕrāmŭs, we had been.
Fuĕrās, thou hadst been.	Fuĕrātĭs, you had been.
Fuĕrăt, he had been.	Fuerant, they had been.
FUTURE PERFECT (8	hall or will have been).
Fuĕrő, I shall have been.	Fuertmin and all I
Fueris, thou wilt have been.	Fuerimus, we shall have been
Fuerit, he will have been.	Fueritis, you will have been.
	Fuerint, they will have been.
SUBJUNCI	
PRESENT (m	ay or can be).
Sim, I may be.	Sīmus, we may be.
Sis, thou mayest be.	Sītĭs, you may be.
Sit, he may be.	Sint, they may be.
IMPERFECT (might, cou	eld, would, or should be).
Essem, I might be.	Essemus, we might be.
Esses, thou mightest be.	Essētis, you might be.
Esset, he might be.	Essent, they might be.
	and have I
Fuerim, I may have been.	ay have been).
Fueris, thou mayest have been.	Fuerimus, we may have been.
Fuerit, he may have been.	Fuerītis, you may have been.
	Fuerint, they may have been.
PLUPERFECT (might, could,	would, or should have been).
t missem, I might have been.	Fuissēmus, we might have been
Fuissos, thou mightest have been.	Fuissētis, you might have been.
Fuisset he might have been	77

Fuisset, he might have been.

Fuissent, they might have been.

1. 2. 1. 2. Am-} Am-Am-Am-Am-ā Am-a

58

E

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular. Es, or estŏ, be thou Estŏ, let him be. Plural. Estě or estôtě, be yv. Suntő, let them be.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Essě, to be.

Perfect, Fuisse, to have been.

FUTURE, Fütürüs (ă, ŭm) esse, to be about to be.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE, Fütürüs, ă, üm, about to be.

587. Regular Verbs.—Four Conjugations.

1. Infinitive endings.

1. 2. 3. 4. ārĕ, ĕrĕ, ĕrĕ, īrĕ.

2. Favorite vowels.

588. First Conjugation (Inf. ending are)

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2. 8. āv. āt.

2. Paradigm.

Amāre, to love: 1st root, am; 2d, amāv; 3d, amat.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Active, I love. Passive, I am loved. Singular. Plural Singular, Plural Am-ö, Am-āmŭs. Am-or, Am-āmur, Am-ās, Am-ātis. Am-āris (rĕ), Am-āminī. Am-ăt. Am-ant. Am-ātur; Am-antur.

IMPERFECT, was loving; was loved.

Am-ābām, Am-ābāmŭs, Am-ābār, Am-ābāmŭr, Am-ābās, Am-ābātšs, Am-ābātšs (rč), Am-ābāmŭrī, Am-ābāttš (rč), Am-ābamtīrī, Am-ābāttš (rč), Am-ābanttš (rč), Am-ābantš (rč),

Am

Am

1.

2.

Mŏn-Mŏn-

Mŏn-

Mŏn-i

Mŏn-ë

Mŏn-ĕ Mŏn-ĕ Mŏn-ĕ

FUTURE, will love; will be loved.

Singular	Plural.	Singular.	Plarat.
Am-ābŏ,	Am-ābĭmŭs,	Am-ābŏr,	Am-ābĭmŭr,
Am-ābĭs,	Am-ābĭtĭs,	Am-ābĕrĭs (rĕ),	Am-ābĭmĭnī,
Am-ābĭt;	Am-ābunt.	Am-ābĭtŭr;	Am-ābuntŭr.

Perfect, have loved; have been loved.

Amāv-ī,	Amāv-imus,	Amāt-ŭs sum,*	Amāt-ī sumus,
Amāv-istī,	Amāv-istĭs,	Amāt-ŭs ĕs,	Amāt-ī estĭs,
Amāv-it;	Amāv-ērunt (ērĕ)	. Amāt-ŭs est ;	Amāt-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, had loved; had been loved.

Amāv-ĕrăm, Amāv-ĕrās, Amāv-ĕrăt:	Amāv-ērāmus, Amāv-ērātis, Amāv-ērant.	Amāt-ŭs ĕrām,* Amāt-ŭs ĕrās,	Amāt-ī ĕrātĭs,
Amav-erat;	Amav-érant.	Amāt-ŭs ĕrăt ;	Amāt-ī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT, will have loved; will have been loved.

Amāv-ĕrŏ, Amāv-ĕrĭs, Amāv-ĕrĭt :	Amāv-ērīmus, Amāv-ērītis, Amāv-ērint	Amāt-ŭs ĕrŏ,* Amāt-ŭs ĕrĭs,	Amāt-ī ĕrĭmŭs, Amāt-ī ĕrĭtĭs,
Amāv-ērīt ;	Amāv-ĕrint.	Amāt-ŭs ĕrĭt;	Amāt-ī ĕrunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, may love; may be loved.

Am-ĕm,	Am-ēmŭs,	Am-ēr,	Am-ēmŭr,
Am-ĕs,	Am-ētĭs,	Am-ēris (rē),	Am-ēmĭnī.
Am-ĕt;	Am-ent.	Am-ētur;	Am-entür.

IMPERFECT, might love: might be loved.

		in today inight oc to	ccu.
Am-ārĕm,	Am-ārēmus,	Am-ārĕr,	Am-ārēmur,
Am-ārēs,	Am-ārētĭs,	Am-ārērīs (rĕ),	Am-ārēminī.
Am-ārĕt	Am-ārent.	Am-ārētur	A m-arontus

Perfect, may have loved; may have been loved.

Amāv-ĕrĭm,	Amāv-ĕrīmŭs,	Amāt-ŭs sĭm,†	Amāt-ī sīmus,
Δ māv-ĕrĭs,	Amāv-ĕrītĭs,	Amāt-ŭs sīs,	Amāt-ī sītĭs.
Amāv-ĕrĭt;	Amāv-ĕrint.	Amāt-ŭs sĭt;	Amāt-ī sint.

Pluperfect, might have loved; might have been loved.

Amāv-issēm,	Amāv-issēmus,	Amāt-ŭs essēm,	Amāt-ī essēmus
Amāv-issēs,	Amāv-issētus,	Amāt-ŭs essēs,	Amāt-ī essētīs,
Amāv-issēt;	Amāv-issent.	Amāt-ŭs essēt;	Amāt-ī essent.
		mat-us esset;	Amat-Lessent,

^{*} See 331, N. † See 332, N.

ŭr, ĭnī, tŭr.

imŭs, stĭs, int.

ä**m**ŭs, ātĭs, ant.

ímŭs, itis,

unt.

r, 11, r.

ŭs,

emùs, etĭs, ent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	The state of the s			
Singular. Am-ā, or ăm-ātŏ, Am-ātŏ;	Plural, Am-ātě, <i>or</i> ăm-ātōtě, Am-antő.	Singular. Am-ārē, or ăm-ātŏr, Am-ātŏr	Plural Am-āmĭnī Am-antŏr,	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Am ārē.	Am-ārī.
PERF.	Amāv-issē.	Amāt-ŭs essě.
Fur.	Amāt-ūrŭs essĕ.	Amāt-um īrī

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Am-ans,	PERE	Amāt-ŭs.
Fur.	Amāt-ūrŭs.	Fur.	Am-andŭa

GERUND.

Am-andī, andō, andŭm, andō.

SUPINES.

Amāt-um.		it-ŭm.	1		Amāt-ū.		
_	589.	SECOND	CONJUGATION (Inf.	ending	ērĕ).	

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots

2. Paradigm.

Monere, to advise: 1st root, mon; 2d, monu; 3d, monut

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

		THEORIE	
	ve, I advise.	Passive, I	am advised.
Singular.	Plural.	Singular,	Plural.
Mŏn-eŏ,	Mŏn-ēmŭs,	Mŏn-eŏr,	Mŏn-ēmŭr,
Mŏn-ēs,	Mŏn-ētĭs,	Mŏn-ērĭs (rĕ),	Mŏn-ēmĭnī,
Mŏn-ĕt;	Mŏn-ent.	Mŏn-ētŭr;	Mon-entur.
	IMPERFECT, was a	dvising; was advis	sed.
Mŏn-ēhăm,	Mŏn-ēbāmŭs,	Mon-ebar,	Mŏn-ēbāmŭr,
Mŏn-ēbās,	Mŏn-ēbātĭs,	Mŏn-ēbārĭs (rĕ),	Mon-ebamini,
Mŏn-ēbăt;	Mŏn-ēbant.	Mŏn-ēbātŭr;	Mon-ebantur.
	FUTURE, shall ad	vise; shall be advis	ed.
Mŏn-ēbŏ,	Mŏn-ēbimus,	Mŏn-ēbŏr.	Mŏn-ēbĭmŭr,
Mŏn-ēbĭs,	Mŏn-ēbĭtĭs,		
Mŏn-ēbĭt;	Mŏn-ēbunt.	Mon-ēbitur;	Mön-ebuntür.
		Mŏn-ēbĕrĭs (rĕ), Mŏn-ēbĭtŭr;	Mŏn-ēbĭmĭ

^{*} See 192, N

1. 1

2. I

Sing Rěg-ŏ, Rěg-ĭs,

Rěg-ĭt;

Rĕg-ēb Rĕg-ēb

Rĕg-ēb

Rĕg-ăn Rĕg-ēs,

Rčg-ět

Perfect, have advised; have been advised.

Singuar.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mŏnu-ī,	Mŏnu-ĭmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sŭm,*	Mŏnit-ī sŭmŭs,
Mŏnu-istī,	Mŏnu-istĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕs,	Mŏnit-ī setis,
Mŏnu-ĭt;	Mŏnu-ērunt (ërĕ).	Mŏnĭt-ŭs est;	Mŏnit-ī sunt.

Pluperfect, had advised; had been advised.

Mŏnu-ĕrăm,	Mŏnu-ĕrāmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrām,*	Monit-ī erāmus,
Mŏnu-ĕrās,	Mŏnu-ĕrātĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrās,	Monit-ī erātis,
Mŏnu-ĕrăt :	Mŏnu-ĕrant.	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrāt;	Monit-ī eratis,
monu-erat;	monu-erant.	Monit-us erat;	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT, shall have advised; shall have been advised.

Mŏnu-ĕrŏ,	Mŏnu-ĕrīmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrŏ,* Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrĭs, Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrĭt;	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrĭmŭs,
Mŏnu-ĕrĭs,	Mŏnu-ĕrītĭs,		Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrĭtĭs,
Mŏnu-ĕrĭt;	Mŏnu-ĕrint.		Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, may advise; may be advised.

MXn oXm	35V	1 350	9.00
Mŏn-eăm,	Mŏn-eāmŭs,	Mŏn-eăr,	Mŏn-eāmŭr,
Mŏn-eās,	Mŏn-eātĭs,	Mŏn-eārĭs (rĕ),	Mon-eamini,
Mŏn-eăt;	Mŏn-eant.	Mon-eatur;	Mŏn-eantŭr.

IMPERFECT, might advise; might be advised.

Mŏn-ērĕm,	Mŏn-ērēmŭs,	Mon-ērer,	Mŏn-ērēmur,
Mŏn-ērēs,	Mŏn-ērētĭs,	Mŏn-ērērĭs (rĕ),	Mon-eremini,
Mŏn-ērĕt;	Mon-erent.	Mon-ērētur;	Mŏn-ērentŭr.

Perfect, may have advised; may have been advised.

Mŏnu-ĕrĭm	Mŏnu-ĕrīmŭs,	Monit-us sim,+	Mŏnĭt-ī sīmŭs,
Mŏnu-ĕrĭs,	Mŏnu-ĕrītĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sīs,	Mŏnĭt-ī sītĭs,
Mŏnu-ĕrĭt:	Mŏnu-ĕrint.	Monitous sit :	Monit-T sint

PLUPERFECT, might have advised; might have been advised.

	_		
Mŏnu-issĕm,	Mŏnu-issēmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs essĕm,†	Monit-ī essēmus.
Mŏnu-issēs,	Mŏnu-issētĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs essēs,	Monit-ī essētis,
Mŏnu-issĕt;	Mŏnu-issent.	Mŏnĭt-ŭs essĕt;	Monit-ī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Mŏn-ë,	Mŏn-ētĕ,	Mŏn-ērĕ,	Mŏn-ēmini.
or mčn ētő,	or mon-ētote,	Mŏn-ērĕ, or mŏn-ētŏr,	•
Mŏn-ētŏ ;		Mŏn-ētŏr;	Mŏn-entŏr.

^{*} See 331 N.

[†] See 332, N.

imŭa, stĭa, int.

amŭs, atis, ant

ised.

imŭs, itis,

unt.

ir, nī,

ír.

ŭr, ŭni.

ŭr.

mŭs, tĭs, nt. ed. sēmūs, sētĭs, sent.

ī,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

l'nes.	Mŏn-ērĕ.	Mŏn-ērī.
PERF.	Mŏnu-issĕ.	Monit-us esse
Fur.	Mŏnĭt-ūrŭs essĕ.	Mörit-um īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Mŏn-ens.	Mŏnĭt-ŭs.
Fur	Monit-ūrus,	Mŏn-endŭs.

GERUND.

Mŏn-endī, endō, endŭm, endō.

SUPINES.

Monit-um.	Mŏnĭt-ū.
-----------	----------

590. THIRD CONJUGATION (Inf. ending ěrě).

- Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.
 2d, s, or like 1st; 3d, t, sometimes s.
- 2. Paradigm.

Regere, to rule: 1st root, reg; 2d, rex; 3d, rect.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Λe	t., I rule.	Pass., 1	am ruled.
Singular. Rěg-5, Rěg-ĭs, Rěg-ĭt;	Plural. Rěgimüs, Rěg-ītis, Rěg-unt.	Singular. Rěg-ŏr, Rěg-ĕrĭs (nĕ), Rěg-ĭtŭr;	Plural. Rěg-ĭmŭr, Rěg-ĭmĭuī, Rěg-untŭr.
Rĕg-ēbăm, Rĕg-ēbās, Rĕg-ēbăt;	Imperfect, wa Rěg-ēbāmŭs, Rěg-ēbātĭs, Rěg-ēbant.	s ruling; was ruled Rěg-ēbār, Rěg-ēbārĭs (rč), Rěg-ēbātŭr;	d. Rĕg-ēbāmŭr, Rĕg-ēbāmĭnī, Rĕg-ēbantŭr.
Rěg-ăm, Rěg-ēs, Rěg-ět ;	Future, shall Rěg-ēmŭs, Rěg-ētĭs, Rěg-ent.	rule; shall be ruled Rěg-ăr, Rěg-ērĭs (rĕ), Rěg-ētŭr;	Rěg-ēmŭr, Rěg-ēmĭnī, Rěg-entŭr.

Singular. Plural. Singular. Plural.

Rex-ī, Rex-imūs, Rect-ūs sūm,* Rect-ī sūmūs,

Rex-istī, Rex-istīs, Rect-ūs est; Rect-ī sunt.

Rex-īt; Rex-ērunt (ērē). Rect-ūs est; Rect-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, had ruled; had been ruled.

Rex-ĕrām, Rex-ĕrāmŭs, Rect-ūs ĕrām,* Rect-ī ĕrāmŭs, Rect-ī ĕrāmŭs, Rect-ūs ĕrās, Rect-ī ĕrātīs, Rect-ūs ĕrāt; Rect-ī ĕratīs,

FUTURE PERFECT, shall have ruled; shall have been ruled.

Rex-ero, Rex-erons, Rect-us ero, Rect-us ero, Rect-us ero, Rect-us eros, Rect-us eros,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, may rule; may be ruled.

 Rěg-ăm,
 Rěg-āmŭs,
 Rěg-ār,
 Rěg-āmŭr,

 Rěg-ās,
 Rěg-ātīs,
 Rěg-ārĭs (rĕ),
 Rěg-āmĭnī,

 Rěg-āt;
 Rěg-ant.
 Rěg-ātŭr;
 Rěg-antŭr.

IMPERFECT, might rule; might be ruled.

 Rěg-črěm,
 Rěg-črěmůs,
 Rěg-črěř,
 Rěg-črēmůr,

 Rěg-črěš,
 Rěg-črěřís (rč),
 Rěg-črěmůr,

 Rěg-črětit,
 Rěg-črentůr,
 Rěg-črentůr,

Perfect, may have ruled; may have been ruled.

Rex-ěrim, Rex-ěrimus, Rect-us sim,† Rect-us sim,† Rect-us sim, Rect-us sim,† Rect-us s

PLUPERFECT, might have ruled; might have been ruled.

Rex issēm, Rex-issēmus, Rect-us essēm, Rect-us essēmus, Rect-us essētus, Rect-us essētus, Rect-us essēt; Rect-us essēt; Rect-us essēt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

 Rěg-š, or rěg-itě, or rěg-itět;
 Rěg-ěrě, Rěg-imini, or rěg-itět, or rěg-itěr, Rěg-untě.

 Rňg-itě;
 Rěg-untě.

* Sec 331, N. † Sec 332, N.

3. I

590.

Sing Căp-ið, Căp-ĭs, Căp-ĭt;

Căp-iel Căp-iel Căp-iel

Căp-iăn Căp-iēs Căp-iĕt

Căp-iăn Căp-iās Căp-iăt imŭs,

amus

ātĭs, ant.

ed.

ĭmŭs,

ĭtĭs,

unt.

r,

αĩ,

r.

nŭr, nĭn**L** ıtŭr.

nŭs. is, it.

eemiis, setis, sent.

tis,

int.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Rěg-ěrě. Rěg-i.
Prip Rex-issě. Rect-üs essă.
Fut. Rect-ūrůs essě. Rect-üm iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Rěg-ens. Perf. Rect-üs.
Fur. Rect-ürus. Fur. Rěg-endia.

GERUND.

Rěg-endī, endō, endūm, endō.

SUPINES.

Rect-um. Rect-u.

3. Paradigm of verbs in i of the third conjugation.

Căpere, to take: 1st root, căp; 2d, cep; 3d, capt.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

	Active.	Pa	1881 Ve.
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Piurat.
Căp-iŏ,	Căp-imŭs,	Căp-iŏr,	Căp-ĭmŭr,
Căp-ĭs,	Căp-itĭs,	Căp-ĕrĭs (rĕ),	Căp-ĭmĭnī,
Căp-ĭt;	Căp-iunt.	Căp-ĭtŭr;	Căp-iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

Căp-iēbār,	Căp-iēbāmŭr,
Căp-iēbāris (rĕ),	Căp-iēbāmĭnī,
Căp-iēbātŭr;	Căp-iēbantŭr.
	Căp-iēbāris (rĕ),

FUTURE.

Căp-iăm,	Căp-iēmus,	Căp-iăr,	Căp-iēmur,
Căp-iēs,	Căp-iētis,	Căp-iēris (rĕ),	Căp-iemini,
Căp-iĕt	Căp-ient.	Căp-iētur;	Căp-ientur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Căp-ıăm,	Căp-iāmŭs,	Căp-iăr,	Căp-iamur
Căp-iās,	Căp-iātĭs,	Căp-iārĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iamini,
Căp-iăt ·	Căp-iant	Căp-iātur;	Căp iantăr.

591.

Audī

Audī

Audr

Audi

Audi

Aud-i

Aud-i

Aud-ī

Aud-ī Aud-ī

Audiv Audiv

Audīv Audīv Audīv

Aud-ī, or a Aud-ī

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

8d Pr. Căp-iuntă.

8d Pr. Căp-iuntor

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Căp-iens.

Fur. Căp-iendăs.

GERUND.

Căp-iendī, dō, &c.

The other parts of verbs in i & are entirely regular

591. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Inf. ending Tre).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.
2d, iv; 8d, it.

2. Paradigm.

Audīre, to hear: 1st root, and; 2d, audīv; 3d, audīt

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Act.	I hear.	Pass.,	I am heard.
Singular.	Plural. Aud-Imŭs, Aud-Itĭs, Aud-iunt.	Singular.	Plural.
Aud-ið,		Aud-iŏr,	Aud-īmŭr,
Aud-Is,		Aud-īrĭs (rĕ),	Aud-īmĭnī,
Aud-ĭt;		Aud-ītŭr;	Aud-iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT, was hearing; was heard.

	· ·			
Aud-iēbăm,	Aud-iebāmus,		Aud-iebar,	Aud-iēbāmŭr
Aud-iēbās,	Aud-iebātīs,	L	Aud-iēbārĭs (rĕ),	Aud-iebāminī,
Aud-iēbāt;	Aud-iebant		Aud-iebātur;	Aud-iebantur.

FUTURE, shall hear; shall be heard.

Aud-iăm, Aud-iës, Aud-iĕt :	Aud-iēmus, Aud-iētis, Aud-ient.	Aud-iār, Aud-iērĭs (rĕ), Aud-iētĭr;	Aud-iēmur, Aud-iēmur,
Aud-let;	Aud-ient.	Aud-letur;	Aud-ientur.

Perfect, have heard; have been heard.

Audīv-ī,	Audīv-imus,	Audīt-ŭs sŭm,*	Audīt-ī sumus
Audīv-istī,		Audīt-ŭs ĕs,	Audīt-ī estĭs,
Audīv-ĭt;	Audīv-ērunt (ērĕ).	Audit-us est;	Audīt-ī sunt.

^{*} See 331, N.

ŭr, Inī, tŭr.

āmür āminī, antür.

ıŭr, ıïnī, tŭr.

sŭmŭa, estĭs, sunt.

PLUPERFECT, had heard; had been heard.

Audīv-ērām,	Audīv-ērāmus,	Audīt-ŭs ĕrām,* Audīt-ŭs ĕrās, Audīt-ŭs ĕrāt;	Audīt-ī ĕrāmās,
Audīv-ērās,	Audīv-ērātis,		Audīt-ī ĕrātīs,
Audīv-erāt;	Audīv-ērant,		Audīt-ī ĕrant
Audiv-erat;	Audiv-erant,	Audit-us erat;	Audit-i erant

FUTURE PERFECT, shall have heard; shall have been heard.

Audīv-ērč,	Audīv-ērīmus,	Audīt-ūs ērē,* Audīt-ūs ērīs, Audīt-ūs ērīt;	Audīt-ī ērīmūs,
Audīv-ērĭs,	Audīv-ērītis,		Audīt-ī ērītīs,
Audīv-ērĭt;	Audīv-ērint.		Audīt-ī ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, may hear; may be heard.

Aud-iam,	Aud-iāmŭe,	Aud-iar,	Aud-iamur,
Aud-iās,	Aud-iātĭs,	Aud-iārīs (rĕ), Aud-iātŭr;	Aud-iāmini,
Aud-iăt;	Aud-iant.	Aud-iatur;	Aud-iantur.

IMPERFECT, might hear; might be heard.

Aud-īrĕm,	Aud-īrēmus,	Aud-īrĕr,	Aud-īrēmur,
Aud-īrēs,	Aud-īrētis,	Aud-īrēr, Aud-īrēris (rĕ),	Aud-īrēminī,
Aud-īrēt;	Aud-īrent.	Aud-īrētur;	Aud-irentur.

Perfect, may have heard; may have been heard.

Audiv-ĕrĭm,	Audīv-ĕrīmus,	Audīt-ŭs sim,	Audit-ī sīmus,
Audīv-ĕrĭs,	Audīv-ĕrītĭs,	Audīt-ŭs sīs,	Audīt-ī sītīs,
Audīv-ĕrĭt;	Audiv-ĕrint.	Audīt-ŭs sit;	Audit-i sint.

PLUPERFECT, might have heard; might have been heard.

Audīv-issĕm,	Audīv-issēmus,	Audīt-ŭs essem,†	Audīt-ī essēmīs,
Audīv-issēs,	Audīv-issētis,	Audit-ŭs essēs,	Audīt-ī essētīs,
Audīv-isset	Audiv-issent.	Audīt-ŭs esset;	Audīt-ī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Aud-ī,	Aud-ītĕ,	Aud-īrĕ,	Aud-īminī,
or aud-ītŏ,	or aud-ītōtĕ,	or aud-ītŏr,	·
Aud-ītð;	Aud-iuntő.	Aud-ītŏr;	Aud-iuntör.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Aud-īrĕ.	Aud-īrī.
PERF.	Audīv-issĕ.	Audīt-ŭs essē.
Fur.	Audīt-ūrŭs essĕ.	Audīt-ŭm īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

Para. Aud-iens. Fur. Audīt-ūrŭs.

PERF. Audit-us. Fur. Aud-iendŭa.

GERUND.

Aud-iendī, iendō, iendŭm, iendō.

SUPINES.

Audīt-ŭm.

Audīt-ū.

592. Formation of Second Root.

Conj. I.

Conj. II. Conj. III. Conj IV.

āv.

REGULAR. u or ēv. s or like 1st root. īv

FIRST IRREGULARITY.

Radical vowel lengthened.

radical vowel lengthened.

conj.

radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).

radical vowel lengthened.

SECOND IRREGULARITY.

Reduplication.

reduplication. | reduplication. |

Analogy of 2d conj.

THIRD IRREGULARITY. analogy of 3d

4th conj.

analogy of 2d or | analogy of 2d or 8d conj.

593. Deponent Verbs.

Deponent verbs are such as have a passive form, but an active meaning. They take, however, all the four participles; e. g.,

1) Loquens, speaking; 2) locatus, having spoken; 3) locatūrus, about to speak; 4) loquendus, to be spoken.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the perfect active. which other verbs do not have.

Irregular Verbs.

594. Paradigm of Posse,* to be able.

2d root, pŏtu.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. Possum, potes, potest, possumus, potestis, possunt.

Imp. poteram Fut. potero; Perf. potu-ī; Pluperf. potu-eram; Fut. Perf. pŏtu-ĕrŏ.

595.

Pros.

Pres.

595

Vŏl-ē

Và V

Vč

Vě.

Vel

Vŏl

Vŏl

^{*} For the conjugation of the simple verb, esse, see 586.

IV.

vowel

of 2d or onj.

active

) lŏca-

t active.

t. Perf.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pros. possim Imp. possem; Perf. potu-erim; Pluperf. potu-issem.
INFINITIVE.

Pres. possě; Perf. pětu-issě.

PARTICIPLE.

Potens (used as an adjective, powerful).

595. Paradigms of Velle (to be willing) and its compounds.

TT 11 w		1
Vellě.	Nollě.	Mallě.
2d root, völu.	2d root, nolu.	2d root, malu.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Völö,	Nolö,	Mālö,
Vis,	Nonvis,	Māvīs,
Vult;	Nonvult;	Māvult;
Völŭraŭs,	Nolüniüs,	Mālumus,
Vultis,	Nonvultis,	Māvultis,
Völunt.	Nolunt.	Mālunt
	Nonvultis, Nõlunt.	Māvultīs, Mālunt.

IMPERFECT.

Vŏl-ēbăm, bās, &c.	1	Nol-ēbăm, bās, &c.	Māl-ēbăm, bās, do
--------------------	---	--------------------	-------------------

FUTURE.

voi-am.	Nōl-ĕm.	1	Māl-ăm.
	PERFECT.		

Iālu-L
į

	PLUPERFECT.			
Trilu-ëram	1	Males XeXes		3.F-3 N N

A	a tosta Citating	maiu-eram.
•	FIFTIPE DEPERCM	

Včlu-ěrő. Nolu-ěrő. Malu-érő.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Věl-ĭm, īs, &c. Nol-ĭm, īs, &c.	Māl-ĭm, īs, &c
---------------------------------	----------------

Vell-ěm, ěs, &c. | Noll-ěm. | Mali čiv

,	mui cii
PERFECT.	

volu-erim.	- 1	Nolu-erim,	Mālu-ĕrĭm,	
		THE PERSON IN NAME AND ADDRESS.		

IMPERATIVE.

Nol-ī or ītö. Nol-ītĕ or ītōtĕ.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Vellė. Nollė. Mallė.
Perf. Volu-issė. Nolu-issė. Malu-issė.

PARTICIPLES.

Võlens. Nõlens.

596. Paradigm of Ferre, to bear.

2d root, tul; 3d, lat.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Active.

Passive.

Passive.

För-ö fer-s, fer-t, fér-imus, fer-tis, fer-tir, fér-imur, fér-imur, fér-imur, fér-imur, fér-imur.

IMPERFECT.

Fer-ebar, bas, &c. Fer-ebar, baris, &c.

FUTURE.

Fěr-ăm, ēs, &c. Fěr-ăr, ēris, &c.

PERFECT.

Tul-ī, istī, &c. Lāt-us sum, es, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Tul-ēram, as, dc. Lat-us ēram, dc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Tul-ero, &c. Lat-us ero, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Fěr-ăm, ās, &c. Fěr-ăr, āris, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Fer-rem, res, &c. Fer-rer, reris, &c.

PERF CT.

Tul-erim, &c. Lat-us sim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Tŭl-issēm. Lāt-ŭs essēm, &c.

-Imur.

IMPERATIVE.

Active. Fěr, or fertő,

Fer-to:

Fer-tě, or fer-tötě, Fĕr-untŏ.

Passine.

Fer-re, or fer-tor.

Fer-tor:

Fěr-iminī, Fer-untor.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fer-rĕ,

Perf. Tul-isse.

Fut. Lāt-ūrus esse. Fer-ri.

Lat-us est Lat-um iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Fěr-ens,

Perf. Lāt-ŭs (ă, ŭm).

Fut. Lāt-ūrus (ă, um).

Fut. Fĕr-endus (ă, ŭm)

GERUND.

Fĕr-endī, dō, dŭm, dō.

SUPINE.

Lat-um.

Lat-a.

REM.—The compounds of ferre are conjugated like the simple verb.

597. Paradigm of Fieri, to become, be made.

PRESENT.

Indicative.

Fið, fis, fit, &c.

Subjunctive.

FI-ăm, fī-ās, fī-ăt, do.

IMPERFECT.

Fī-ēbăm, ēbās, &c.

Fī-ĕrĕm, ĕrēs, &c. FUTURE.

Fī-ăm, ēs, &c.

PERFECT.

Fact-us sum, &c.

Fact-us sim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Fact-us ĕrăm, &c.

Fact-us essem, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Fact-us erd, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Bing. Fi, or fi-to, Fi-ta.

Plur. Fī-tĕ, or fī-tōtĕ. Fi-unt&

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fieri; Perf. Fact-us esse; Fut. Fact-um iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-us (ă, um); Fut. Făciendus (ă, um).

598. Paradigm of Ire, to go.

2d root, iv: 3d, it.

PRESENT.

Indicative.
Eš, īs, ĭt; īmŭs, ītĭs, eunt.

Subjunctive. Eăm, eās, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Ibăm, ībās, &c.

Irĕm, īrēs, &c.

FUTURE.

Ibo, ibis, &c

PERFECT.

Iv-ī, īv-istī, &c.

Iv-ĕrĭm, ĕrĭs, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Iv-ĕrăm, ĕrās, &c.

r. Iv-issĕm, issēs, **&c.**

FUTURE PERFECT.

Iv-ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. I, or ītŏ, Itŏ. Plur. Itě, or ītōtě, Eunt**ě**.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Ire; Perf. Iv-isse; Fut. Itūrus esse.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens (gen. euntis); Fut. Itūrus, a, um.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Eundī, dē, dăm, dō.

Itum, ita.

599. Eděrě, to eat.

Edërë, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of esse. These are so follows:

Regular.

Pres. Edő, &c.

Imperat. Edě, &c.

Subj. Imp. Eděrěm, &c.

infin. Edere.

Irregular.

Es, est, estis.

Es, estő, estĕ, estōtř.

Essem, esses, &c

Essĕ.

600

the stense sents

scrip neces

1. singu subje

2.

3. 7. ally;

4. The use

600. Periphrastic Conjugations.

There are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in $r\ddot{u}s$ and $d\ddot{u}s$, combined with the various tenses of the verb $ess\ddot{e}$. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as future, or as one that is about to be done; e.g., $script\ddot{u}r\ddot{u}ss\ddot{u}m$, I am about to write: the second expresses duty o. necessity; e.g., $virt\ddot{u}ss\ddot{u}m$, virtue must be cultivated.

601. Impersonal Verbs.

1. Impersonal verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I*, thou, he). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun it; e.g.,

Oportět, it behooves.

Taedět mē, it disgusts me (I am disgusted with).

2. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used impersonally; e. g.,

Constat, it is known. Juvat, it delights.

3. The second periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; e. g.,

Mihi seribendum est,
Tibi seribendum est,
Illi seribendum est,
Nobis seribendum est,
Vobis seribendum est,
Illis seribendum est,
Ill

4. Those verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihf crēdītūr,
Tībī crēdītūr,
Illī crēdītūr,
Nobīs crēdītūr,
Vobīs crēdītūr,
Illīs crēdītūr,
They are believed.
They are believed.

ird con-

602 bined boy pi 603 e. g., currit 604 comp

> 606 are ef

SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION.

602. Parts of speech (as we have seen, 2), either singly or combined, form propositions; e.g., Amas, thou lovest; puer ladit, the boy plays.

603. Propositions, either singly or combined, form sentences; e. g., Equus currit (one prop.), the horse runs; Puer ludit et equus currit (two propositions).

604. Sentences, in their various forms and combinations, of course, comprise the language.

605. Sentences may be divided into two classes, viz.:

- Simple sentences, or such as contain a single proposition;
 g., Puer ladit.
- 2) Compound sentences, or such as contain more than one proposition; e. g., Puer ladit et equus currit.

606. In a compound sentence, the propositions which compose it are either,

- Independent of each other, as in the above example, and are called co-ordinate propositions; or,
- 2) One of them is used to qualify the other, or some part of it, and is called a dependent or subordinate proposition, while that on which it depends is called a leading or principal proposition; e. g., Servüs vēnīt üt portas claudāt, the slave has come to shut the gates. Here, 'servüs vēnīt' is a principal proposition, and ŭt portās claudāt' is a dependent proposition.

sul

pre

6

ın t

with

earl

com

of tl

6

CHAPTER I.

The Essential Elements of Sentences .- Subject and Predicate.

SECTION I.—SUBJECT.

- 607. Every sentence, however simple, consists of two distinct parts, viz.
 - 1) The Subject, or that of which it speaks, as, puĕr, in the sentence puĕr lūdĭt.
 - 2) The Predicate, or that which is said of the subject, as lūdit, in the above sentence.
 - 608. The subject of a sentence must be either,
 - 1) A noun; e. g., puer, in the sentence puer ludit; or,
 - 2) A word or clause used as a noun; e. g., mentīrī, in the sentence turpš est mentīrī.
- 509. Rule I. The Subject.—The subject of a finite* verb is put in the nominative; e. g., Equus currit, the horse runs.
 - 610. The subject may either be simple or compound.
 - The simple subject consists either of a single nominative, or of two or more nominatives representing the same person or thing; e. g., (1) Lătīnūs rēgnābāt, Latinus was reigning; (2) Lātīnūs rex rēgnābāt, Latinus the king was reigning.
 - 2) The compound subject consists of two or more simple subjects connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., Caesar et Balbus Romam venerunt, Caesar and Balbus came to Rome.

SECTION II.—PREDICATE.

- 611. The predicate of a sentence must be either,
 - 1) A verb; e. g., lūdīt, in the sentence puĕr lūdīt; or,
 - The verb esse (or sometimes a passive verb) with an attributive† noun or adjective; e. g.,

^{*} For the subject of an infinitive see 655.

[†] By an attributive noun is meant one which is used to qualify or describe another noun.

Cicero fuit consul, Cicero was consul.

Christiani est neminem violare, ut is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody. Here, fuit consul and Christiani est are the predicates.

Terră est rotundă, the earth is round.

Humanum est errare, to err is human. Here, est rotunda and hūmānum est are the predicates.

612. Rule II. Finite Verb .- A finite verb must agree with its subject in number and person; e. g., Puer ladit, the boy plays.

REM .- If the subject is compound, the verb is generally put in the plural.

613. Rule III. Attributive Noun .- An attributive noun in the predicate, after the verb esse and a few passive verbs, is put,

1) In the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., Cicero fuit consul, Cicero was consul.

2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., Christiani est nēminem violare, it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.

614. Rule IV. Adjectives .- Adjectives and participles (whether in the subject or the predicate) agree in gender, number, and case, with the nouns which they qualify; e. g., Terra est rotunda, the earth is round.

615. The predicate, like the subject, may be either simple or compound.

1) The simple predicate contains but a single finite verbe. g., Puer currit, the boy runs.

2) The compound predicate consists of two or more simple predicates connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., Puer currit et ludit, the boy runs and plays.

616. In principal sentences (including simple sentences) the verb of the predicate may be put in any finite mood.

1) The indicative is used, in positive assertions; e. g., Portas claudit, he is shutting the gates.

2) The subjunctive is used,

listinct

cate.

in the

ect, as

in the

is put

native. ne peris was e king

simple under-Caesar

an at-

or de-

wit

the E

cati

eve

fic

and titě

•

F

liqt

- a) To express an affirmation doubtfully cr conditionally e. g., Dăret, he would give it (i. e., if he had it, perhaps).
- b) Sometimes to express a wish or command; e. g., Seribat, he may write, may he write, or let him write.
- 3) The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., Portas claude, shut the gates.
- 617. Rule V. Vocative.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative; e. g., Quid est, Cătilină? why is this, Catiline?

Rum.-This, of course, forms no part of the subject or predicate.

CHAPTER II.

Subordinate Elements. - Modifiers.

SECTION I.—USE OF MODIFIERS.

- 618. Both subject and predicate may have qualifying words and clauses connected with them, to limit or modify their meaning; e. g.,
 - 1) Lătīnus rex regnavit, Latinus the king reigned. Here the subject is modified by rex (59).
 - 2) Milites fortiter pagnant, the soldiers fight bravely. Here the predicate is modified by fortiter (77).
- 619. Any modifier, whether in the subject or the predicate, may be itself modified; e.g., Latinus, bonus rex, regnavit. Here the modifier, rex, is itself modified by bonus.
- 620. Nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs, are often found with modifiers.

SECTION II.-MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.

- 621. Nouns, including pronouns, may be modified,
 - I. By adjectives and participles.
 - II. By nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives.
- 622. I. Nouns may be modified by adjectives and participles; e. g.,
 Bŏnŭs puĕr, a good boy.
 See Rule IV.
- 623. II. Nouns may be modified by nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives. These are,

lly

ps). băt

Por-

ad.

y is

and

g.,

the

Iere

nay

the

vith

. g.

vith

- 1) Limiting nouns.
- 2) Relative clauses.

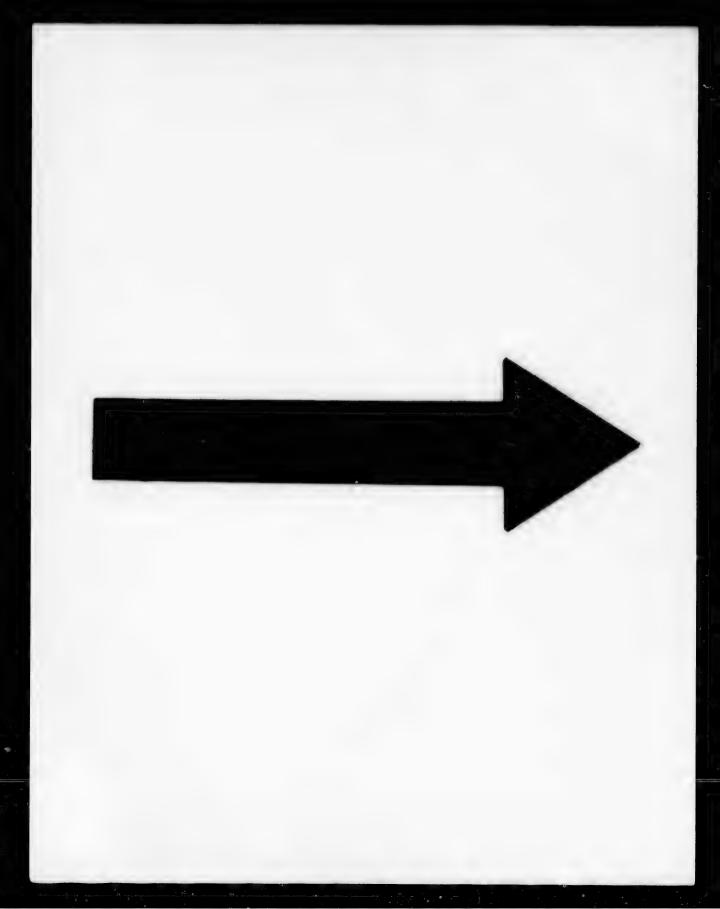
624. Rule VI. Limiting Nouns.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., Latinus rex, Latinus the king.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e.g., Rēgis filius, the king's sqn: except,
 - a) When it denotes character or quality; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; e.g., Puĕr eximiae pulchritudinis, or Puĕr eximia pulchritudine, a boy of remarkable beauty.
- 625. Rule VII. Relative Clauses.—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; e. g., Puer qui lodit, the boy who plays.
- 626. The predicate of a relative clause is sometimes in the *indicative* and sometimes in the *subjunctive*. It may be observed, however, that the subjunctive is used,
 - To express purpose or result; e. g., Lēgātös mīsērunt quī dīcĕrent, they sent ambassadors to say (lit., who might say).
 - 2) To define an indefinite antecedent; e.g., Sunt qui putent, there are (some) who think.

Section III. - Modifiers of Adjectives.

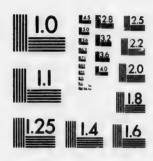
627. Adjectives may be modified,

- I. By adverbs.
- By words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs.
- 628. I. Adjectives may be modified by adverbs; e.g., Haud difficilis, not difficult.
- 629. Rule VIII. Adverbs.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., Haud difficilis, not difficult; miles fortiter pugnat, the soldier fights bravely.
 - RBM —It will be observed that adverbs modify verbs and other adverbs as well as adjectives.
- 630. II. Adjectives may be modified by words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs. These are,



M1.25 M14 M16

IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580 (716) 872-4503

STATE OF THE STATE



ob

(2

an

- 1) The genitive.
- 2) The dative.
- 3) The ablative.
- 4) The infinitive.
- 631. Rule IX. Genitive.—Many adjectives signifying desire, thowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fulness, and the like, together with their contraries, take the genitive; e. g., Cupidus laudis, desirous of praise.
- 632. Rule X. Dative.—Many adjectives are followed by the dative of the object to which the quality is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., Pax mihi gratissimă ĕrăt, peace was very acceptable to me.
- 633. Rule XI. Ablative.—Adjectives may be modified by an ablative denoting cause, manner, or means; e. g., Aeger avaritia, diseased by avarice.
- 634. Rule XII. Ablative.—The adjectives, dīgnus, indīgnus, contentus, praedītus, frētus, and līber, take the ablative; e. g., Virtus parvo contenta est, virtue is content with little.
- 635. Rule XIII. Supine in a as Ablative.—The supine in a as a verbal noun in the ablative is used after adjectives signifying good or bad, easy or difficult, agreeable or disagreeable, &c.; e. g., Difficile dicta (difficult in saying), difficult to say.
- 636. Rule XIV. Ablative.—The comparative degree without quam is followed by the ablative; e.g., Clementia divinius, more godlike than clemency.
 - Obs.—If quam is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes; e. g., Europa minor est quam Asia, Europe is smaller than Asia.
- 637. Rule XV. Infinitive.—The infinitive sometimes depends upon adjectives; e. g., Dignus amari, worthy to be loved.
 - Ram.—Infinitives dependent upon adjectives are generally used as substantives, and as such may be referred to Rule XI. or XII.

SECTION IV .- MODIFIERS OF VERBS.

638. Verbs may be modified,

I. By objects.

II. By adverbial modifiers.

esire.

oge-

udĭs,

da-

h it

lable

an

ĭtiā,

con-

rtūs

as a

rood

Dif-

out

vore

that

nds

and

40

§ 1. Objects.

- 639. Verbs may be modified by objects. These are,
 - 1) The oblique cases of nouns.
 - 2) Infinitives or clauses used as nouns.
- 640. Verbs may take one or more oblique cases of nouns as objects; e.g., (1) Caiŭs puellam laudat, Caius praises the girl. (2) Balbus puero viam monstrat, Balbus shows the way to the boy.
- 641. Rule XVI.—The accusative is used as the direct object of an action; e. g., Caius puellam laudat, Caius praises the girl.
 - 642. Rule XVII .-- The genitive is used,
 - 1) After verbs of pitying; e. g., Miseremini sociorum, puty the allies.
 - After verbs of remembering and forgetting; e. g., Měmini vivorům, I remember the living.
 - 3) After refert and interest; e.g., Interest omnium, it is the interest of all.
 - REM. —Verbs of remembering and forgetting sometimes take the accusative; e. g., Mömini Cinnam, I remember Cinna.
 - 643. Rule XVIII.—The dative is used,
 - 1) After esse in expressions denoting possession; e.g., Puero est liber, the boy has a book (lit., there is a book to the boy).
 - 2) After the compounds of esse, except posse, to be able; e. g., Mihi profuit, it profited me.
 - 3) After the compounds of bene, satis, and male; e.g., Officio suo satisfecit, he nas discharged his duty (lit., has done enough for).
 - 4) After the compounds of the prepositions, ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, and super, together with a few others; e. g., Veni ut mini succurras, I have come that you may assist (succor) me.
 - 5) After verbs signifying to command or obey, please or displease, favor or injure, serve or resist, together with to indulge, spare, pardon, envy, believe, persuade, &c.; e. g., Legibus paret, he obeys the laws (is obedient to the laws).
 - 4. RILE XIX.—The ablative is used,
 - i) After the deponent verbs, ūtī, fruī, fungī, polīrī, vescī,

ei

th

fii

1/0

de

ur

pa

the

 $\{A$

Ba

the

dignari,* and their compounds; e.g., Lacte vescantur, they live upon milk.

- After verbs signifying to abound or be destitute of; e.g., Nemo aliorum ope carere potest, no one can be (do) without the assistance of others.
- 645. Rule XX. Two Accusatives.—Verbs of asking, demanding, seaching, and concealing, may take two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing; e.g., Caesar frumentum Aeduos flagitabăt, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.
- 646. Rule XXI. Accusative and Genitive.—Verbs of accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning, and the like, take the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e.g., Caium proditionis accusant, they accuse Caius of treachery.

REM.—The genitive is perhaps best explained by making it depend upon the ablative crimins, understood. See 214, Note.

- 647. RULE XXII. Accusative and Genitive.—The impersonal verbs of feeling, miseret, poenitet, pidet, taedet, and piget, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling; e. g., Taedet me vitae, I am weary of life (lit., it wearies me of life).
- 648. Rule XXIII. Accusative and Dative.—Any transitive verb may take the accusative of the direct object and the dative of the indirect object; e. g., Balbus puero viam monstrat, Balbus shows the way to the boy.
- 649. Rule XXIV. Accusative and two Datives.—Transitive verbs of giving, sending, imputing (dăre, mittere, vertere, &c.), sometimes take a direct object in the accusative, together with two indirect objects in the dative; e. g., Regnum suum Romanis dono dedit, he gave his kingdom to the Romans as a present (for a present).
- 650. Rule XXV. Accusative and Ablative.—Verbs signifying to separate from, or deprive of, take the accusative of the direct object, together with the ablative of that from which it is separated, &c.; e. g., Mē lūcĕ prīvant, they deprive me of light.

^{*} Dīgnārī takes a direct chject in connection with the ablative; e. g., l'e hŏnōrĕ dīgnātūr, he thinks you worthy of honor.

cantŭr.

e.g.

) with-

nding, 10 peragita-

using, ive of Caiŭm

e abla-

sonal se the bject veary

verb f the

rerbs omeo inlono

ent).
g to
ject,
kc.;

ı g,

651. Rule XXVI. Two Datives.—Intransitive verbs signifying to be, to come, to go, and the like, often take two datives, one denoting the object to which, and the other the object for which; e. g., Caesari auxilio vēnit, he went to the assistance of Caesar.

652. Rule XXVII. Dative and Ablative.—Opus est and usus est, as impersonal verbs signifying need, take the dative of the person and the ablative of the object needed; e. g., Duce nobis opus est, we need a leader (lit., there is need to us of a leader).

653. Verbs sometimes take an infinitive or clause as object; e. g.,

1. Cupit pugnare, he desires (what?) to fight.

2. Spēro tē esse beatum, I hope (what?) that you are happy.

 Nesciö undě sol Igněm hăbeăt, I know not (what?) whence the sun derives its fire.

654. Rule XXVIII. Infinitive as Object.—The infinitive mood, either alone or with other words connected with it, may be used as the object of a verb. (See examples above.)

REM.—The infinitive as object is used chiefly after verbs of perceiving, declaring, desiring, and the like.

655. Rule XXIX. Subject of Infinitive.—The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; e. g., Sperö te esse beatum, I hope you are happy.

Rum. In this example te, which is the subject of esse, is put in the accusative according to rule.

656. Rule XXX. Dependent Question as Object.—An indirect or dependent question may be used as the object of a verb; e. g., Nescið unde sol Ignem habeat, I know not whence the sun derives its fire.

657. The verb in dependent questions is put in the subjunctive, as in the above example.

658. Rule XXXI. Object after Passive Verbs.—Verbs in the passive voice are followed by the same cases as in the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive; e. g. (Act.) Balbum furti accusant, they accuse Balbus of theft; (Pass.) Balbus furti accusatur, Balbus is accused of theft.

659. Rule XXXII. Agent of Passive Verbs.—After passive verbs, the agent of the action is expressed by the ablative with a or ăb e. g., Puĕr a Caiō dŏcētŭr, the boy is taught by Caius; except.

6

fie

lai

sle

ral

C

ma

or

is p

Ca

or i

a p

6

6

belli.

mrĕ

mīli

67 cusa

6

The second periphrastic conjugation (425), which takes the dative of the agent; e. g., Mihi scribendum est, I must write.

660. RULE XXXIII. Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Verbs which have no direct object in the active voice, are only used impersonally in the passive; e. g., Mihi crēditur, I am believed (lit., it is believed to me).

§ II. Adverbial Modifiers.

- 661. Verbs often take adverbial modifiers: these are,
 - 1) Adverbs.
 - 2) Adverbial expressions.
- 662. Verbs may be modified by adverbs; e. g., Fortiter pugnat, he fights bravely.

See Rule VIII.

- REM.—Adverbial modifiers are the same whether the verb is active or passive.
- 663. Verbs may be modified by adverbial expressions: these are,
 - 1) The oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions.
 - 2) Infinitives, or dependent propositions.
- 664. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) used as adverbial modifiers, may be referred to the following classes, viz.:
 - 1) Adverbial expressions of manner, means, &c.
 - 2) Adverbial expressions of time.
 - 3) Adverbial expressions of place.
 - 4) Miscellaneous adverbial expressions.
- 665. The oblique cases of nouns (and sometimes of adjectives) may be used as adverbia. modifiers denoting manner, means, &c.
- 666. Rule XXXIV. Manner, Means, &c.—The manner or cause of an action, and the means or instrument employed, are expressed by the ablative; e. g., Döminum gladio occidit, he killed his master with a sword.
- 667. Rule XXXV. Price.—Price, when expressed by nouns, is usually put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, usually in the genitive; e. g., (1) Avarus pătriam auro vendet, the avaricious man will sell his country for gold; (2) Avarus pecuniam magni aestimăt, the avaricious man values money highly.

ative

hich

nally

ieved

năt.

are,

ons.

ns)

808.

es)

use

sed

ster o

, is

US.

the im

,

668. The oblique cases of nouns may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting time.

669. Rule XXXVI. Time.—Time when is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; e. g., Hieme ursus dormit, the bear sleeps in winter.

670. Rule XXXVII. Length of Time.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g., Caius annum unum vixit, Caius lived one year

671. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting place.

672. RULE XXXVIII.—The name of a town where any thing is, or is done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive, otherwise in the ablative; e. g., (1) Caius Cortonae vixit, Caius lived at Cortona; (2) Caius Tibure vixit, Caius lived at Tibur.

673. Rule XXXIX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town, is generally put in the ablative with a preposition; e. g., Ursus in antro dormit, the bear sleeps in a cave.

674. Rule XL.—After verbs of motion,

- The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, otherwise by the accusative with one; e. g., (1) Romam venire, to come to Rome; (2) In Italiam venire, to come into Italy.
- 2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, otherwise by the ablative with one; e. g., (1) Roma věnírě, to come from Rome; (2) Ab Italia věnírě, to come from Italy.

675. Rule XII.—Domus and rus, together with the genitives belli, humi, and militiae, are used like names of towns; e.g., Caius rure rediit, Caius returned from the country; Balbus et domi et militiae fuit, Balbus was with me both at home and on service.

676. Rule XLII.—The supine in $\check{u}m$, as a verbal noun in the accusative, follows verbs of motion to express the purpose or object

BC:

me

ad

Rel

lūd

pro

of that motion; e.g., Mittit legatos pacem petitum, he sends ambassadors to sue for peace.

- 677. The ablative absolute and the oblique cases of nouns with prepositions are used to express various adverbial relations.
- 678. RULE XLIII. Ablative Absolute.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, are put in the ablative absolute; e. g., Caesar victis hostibus, Caesar having conquered his enemies (or, when he had conquered; lit., his enemies being conquered).
 - Rum.—The ablative absolute generally expresses either the adverbial relation of time (as in the above example) or that of cause; sometimes, however, it adds an attendant circumstance.
- 679. Rule XLIV. Prepositions with Accusative.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., Ad, adversus, antě, ăpud, circà or circum, cis or citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, intěr, intra, juxta, öb, pěněs, pěr, poně, post, praetěr, propě, proptěr, sěcundům, sůpra, trans, ultra, versus (rare).
- 680. Rule XLV. Prepositions with Ablative.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., A (ăb or abs), absque, corăm, căm, dē, ē or ex, pălăm, prae, pro, sine, tenus.
- 681. Rule XLVI. Prepositions with Accusative or Ablative.—The five prepositions, clam, in, sub, subter, and super, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.
 - REM. 1.—In and süb govern the accusative in answer to whither (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to where (i. e. after verbs of rest). Subtingenerally takes the accusative. Süpër takes the accusative after verbs of motion, and also when it signifies upon, and the ablative when it signifies on or of (as of a subject spoken or written about).
 - Rem. 2.—Prepositions in composition often govern the same cases as when they stand alone.
- 682. Verbs may be modified by infinitives or by dependent propositions.
- 683. Rule XLVII. Infinitive as Modifier of Verb.—The infinitive mood may be used after verbs denoting custom, ability, and the like; e. g., Non făcĕrĕ possum, I am not able to do, &c.
 - 684. Dependent propositions, as adverbial modifiers, are gene-

raily introduced by conjunctions, and express a great variety of relations, as time, place, manner, condition, &c.

685. Dependent propositions take the verb,

- Sometimes in the indicative; e. g., Iter făciebăm, quum has litterăs dăbam, I was making a journey when I gave these letters.
- But more commonly in the subjunctive; e. g., SI quid hăbeăt, dăbĭt, if he has any thing, he will give it.

Section V .- Modifiers of Adverss.

- 686. Adverbs are modified by other adverbs; e.g., Sătis bĕnĕ scripsit, he has written sufficiently well.
- 687. Prepositions and conjunctions are connectives, and neither modify nor are modified.
- 688. Interjections are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address, and have no grammatical influence upon the rest of the sentence.

CHAPTER III.

Use of Moods, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

689. The indicative is used in positive assertions; e. g., Paër ludit, the boy plays.

Rem.—The indicative is commonly used in principal propositions, but sometimes in dependent ones.

690. The subjunctive is used both in principal and dependent propositions.

691. I. In principal propositions the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express a wish or a command; e. g., Scribat, he may write, may he write, or let him write.
- 2) To express an affirmation doubtfully or conditionally; e. g., Dăret, he would give it (i. e. if he had it, perhaps).

692. II. In dependent propositions,

1) With ŭt, nē, quō, quīn, quōminus, to express purpose or

with

iciple e, aro aesar ., his

tion of

wing raŭs, infra, prop-

wing squĕ,

The imes

verba Subtër f moor of

pro-

itive like;

ene-

consequence; e. g., Vēnīt ŭt scrībăt, he has come to write; Caio nihīl obstăt quomīnus sīt beātus, nothing prevents Caius from being happy (by which he should be less happy)

2) With quum (cum), when it introduces a cause or reason, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g., Quae cum ita sint, since these things are so

3) With licet, although, quasi, tanquam, ac sī, as if, dum modo, dummodo, provided, if only, quamvīs, however much, however; e. g., Improbus itā vivit, quasi nesciāt, &c., the wicked (man) lives, as if he did not know, &c.; Nemo, quamvīs sīt locuples, no one, however wealthy he may be.

4) In conditional sentences, to represent the condition either as simply possible or as impossible; e. g., SI quid habeat, dabit, if he has any thing, he will give it. SI quid haberet, daret, if he had any thing, he would give it.

5) In indirect or dependent questions; e. g., Nesciö unde sol Ignem habeat, I know not whence the sun derives its fire.

6) In relative clauses, (1) to express purpose or result, and (2) to define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., (1) Legatos miserunt qui dicerent, they sent ambassadors to say; (2) Sunt qui putent, there are (some) who think.

693. Subjunctive Tenses in Dependent Propositions.—The subjunctive, (1) when dependent upon a present tense (pres., perf. def., or ful.) is put in the present to denote an incomplete action, and in the perfect to denote a completed action; and (2) when dependent upon a past tense (imperf., perf. indef., or pluperf.), in the imperfect to denote an incomplete action, and in the pluperfect to denote a completed action; e. g.,

- 1. Nescio quid dicăt, I know not what he is saying.
- 2. Nescio quid dixerit, I know not what he said.
- 3. Nescīvīt quid dīcērēt, I knew not what he said.
- 4. Nescīvit quid dixisset, I knew not what he had said.

694. The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., Portas claude, shut the gates.

695. The infinitive, which expresses the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number, is used,

1) As the subject of another verb; e. g., Difficile est judicare, it is difficult to judge.

events
(ppy)
(ason,

upon tre so dŭm, nuch, c., the

emő, be. ither beät, eret,

e sol re. and gatos (2)

perf. tion, dethe

ortas the

earĕ,

- 2) As the object of another verb; e. g., Căpiö săpěrě, I desire to be wise.
- 3) As the modifier of an adjective or verb; e.g., (1) Dignüs ămarī, worthy to be loved; (2) Non făcĕrĕ possum, I am not able to do, &c.

696. Participles, gerunds, and supines are followed by the various cases of nouns like the other parts of verbs. In regard to their own government, it must be observed,

- 1) That participles, like adjectives, agree with substantives.
- That gerunds are governed like the same cases of substantives.
- That supines, as verbal nouns, are governed like the same cases of other nouns.

1

2 8 4.

8. 6. 7.

8.

10.

† for t

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

11

	ENGLISH IDIOM.	LATIN IDIOM.
1	To think nothing of	To reckon at nothing (nihili ducore
2	To value highly.*	or facere). To value at a high price (magni aestimare).
	To think little of † } To hold cheap.	To value at a little price (parvi assismāre).
4.	No stability.	Nothing of stability (nihil stabili- tatis).
	Some time.	Something of time (aliquid temps-
	Much good.	Much of good (multum boni).
	How much pleasure.	How much of pleasure (quantum
F	are to be translated by nihil, aliquid	ote quantity, not number), much, how much, multum, quantum, followed by the gen.
D.	He did it unwillingly.	He unwilling did it.
6.	It is disgraceful to lie.	To lie is disgraceful.
	It is the part duty business mark character It is the part auty of a wise man.	It is of a wise man.
8.	To condemn a man to death.	To condemn a man of the head.
υ.	As many as possible. he can or could. The greatest possible.	As the most (quam plurimi).
	he can or could.	As the greatest (quam maximus).
10.	On the top of the mountain.	[That is, as many as the most: as great as greatest, &c.]
	In the middle of the water.	On the mountain highest. In the water middle (in summe
	•	monte; in media aqua).

^{*} To value very highly (maximi aestimare).
† The substantive will follow in the accusative norwithstanding the of for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

ENGLISH IDIOM.

- 11. Is going to bed.
- 12. It is hard to say.
- 13. Whilst they were (are, &c.) During playing (inter ludendum). playing.
- 14. The intention of writing a letter.
- 15. We must cultivate virtue.
- 16. Caius must write.
- 17. We must believe Caius.
- 18. The ways of expressing the murpose are,

He comes to see the games.

- 19. a) 1 may go.
 - b) I might have gone.
- 20. a) I ought to go.
 - b) I ought to have gone.

LATIN IDIOM.

Is going to lie down (cubĭtum, sup.) It is hard in saying (difficile est dictu; supine).

The intention of a letter to-be-written (scribendae epistŏlae).

Virtue is to-be-cultivated (colenda est virtus).

It is to-be-written by Caius (Caio scribendum est).

It is to-be-believed to Caius (credendum est Caio).

(a) Venit ut ludo: spectet.

(b) Venit ludos spectātum (sup.).

(c) Venit ludos spectatūrus. (d) Venit ad ludos spectandos. To which add,

(e) Venit causa (for the purpose) ludorum spectandorum; and

(f) Instead of ut, the relative may be used:

He sent ambassadors, qui pacem petérent (to sue for peace).

Mihi ire licet (it is permitted to me to go).

Mihi ire licuit (it was permitted to me to go).

Me ire oportet. Me ire oportuit, a His the suī,

per late b. In a trar exp

prin Woo

Thi

wou 1 9. Cum

meca f. Man

tion

7. Such qual

h. Tha pres

i. Whe

/ Afte are t ut or

t. Who verb

CAUTIONS.

11

a Him, her, them (or he, she, they, when they are to be translated by the accusative), must be translated into Latin by the proper case of sul, when they and the nominative of the verb stand for the same person. Also, in the same case, his, hers, its, theirs, must be translated by suus.

b. In a sentence with that dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated into Latin by the present infinitive, whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as over before the time of the

principal verb.

c. Would, should, after a past tense are future forms:

He says that he will come. He said that he would come.

d. Thing should be expressed by res (fem.), when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether men or things were meant:

Thus, of many things, not multorum, but multarum rerum.

- s. Cum is written after, and as one word with the ablatives me, te, &c. mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum.
- f. Many English verbs become transitive by the addition of a preposition; for instance, to smile at, &c.
- g. Such in English is often used where size is meant, rather than quality. It should then be translated into Latin by tantus, quantus; not talis, qualis.
- h. That or those, when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in a preceding clause, is not to be translated.
- i. When that introduces a consequence, that not is ut non, not ne.

That—not { for a purpose..... ne, for a consequence ... ut non.

- j After verbs of fearing, the Eng. future and the participial substantive are translated into Latin by the present or imperfect subjunctive, with ut or no.
- t. Who, what, which, are often dependent interrogatives, especially after verbs of asking, knowing, doubting, &c.

13

sup.) e est m).

writ-

lenda Caio

eden-

os.

pose) and ativo

cem o me

ed to

- May, might, sometimes mean can, could, and must be translated by possum.
- m. The perf. infin. must be translated into Latin by the present infin. after might, could, ought, unless the action is to be represented as over before the time to which might, could, &c. refer.
- n. In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, are used adjectively, and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.
- a. What is sometimes used for how (quam) sometimes for how great (quantus).
- p. For and as are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in apposition to another noun in the sentence.
- q. When one, tuo, &c. mean one, two, &c. apiece, or for each, they must be translated by the distributive numerals, singüli, bini, &c.
- r. I have to do it, must be translated by the part. in dus.
 - (Eng.) With whom we have to live.
 - (Lat.) With whom it is to-be-lived (quibuscum vivendum est).

A

A

A

AAAA

- s It is, followed by what is in form the infin. pass., generally expresses necessity, fitness, or something intended.
- t. But is to be sometimes means, not necessity, fitness, or intention, but possibility; as, 'the passage is to be found in the fifth book,' the passage may or can be found in the fifth book.
- u. A present participle must be translated into Latin by a perfect participle (or its substitute, quum with perf. or pluperf. subj.) when the action expressed by it must be over, before that expressed by the verb begins.
- v. The English present part. act. is generally translated by the Latin past partic, when the verb is deponent.
- w. When the action was not done in, but only near a town, at must be translated by ad or apud.
- z. One often means some one (aliquis) or a certain one (quidam).
- y. Will and would will not and would not, are often principal verbs, to be translated by velle and nolle respectively.

They are to be so translated when for

will, would, we may substitute

es (are, &c.) willing, was (were, &c.) willing.

: When an English word is followed by a preposition, consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case; and then by what preposition or what case.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A.

d by

infin. ed as

betany ad-

great

an be

must

t).

resses

ı, but

- the

parti-

n the

y the

n past

1st be

, to he

nether

case;

A, ăb, abs (prep. with abl.), from, by.
Abīrē, i, it, to go away, depart.
Absolvērē, v, ūt, to acquit.
Ac, and.
Accēdērē, cess, cess, to approach.
Accipērē (iŏ), cep, cept, to receive, accept.
Accipīter, trīs, hawk.
Accūsārē, āv, āt, to accuse.
Acĕr, ācrīs, ācrē, sharp, severe.
Achillēs, is, Achilles, a Grecian hero.
Aciēs, ēī, line of battle.

Ad (prep. with acc.), to.
Adducere (ad and ducere), dux, duct,
to lead to.

Adeo, so, in such a manner.

Adesse (ad and esse), fu, fut, to be present.

Adjumentum, I, aid, help.
Adjuvare, juv, jut, to aid, help.
Admiratio, onis, admiration.
Admonere, u, it, to admonish, warn.
Adulatio, onis, flattery.
Adulator, oris, flatterer.

Adventus (adventre), us, approach. Aedificare, av, ut, to build. Aedificium, I, building, edifice.

Aenēas, ae, Aeneas, a Trojan prince. Aequitās, ātis, equity, justice. Aestās, ātis, summer.

Aestimārē, āv, āt, to value, prize; māgnī aestimārē, to prize highly. Afferrē (ad and ferre), attūl, allāt,

to bring to. Ager, agrī, field.

Agere, eg, act, to drive, lead, do; gratias agere, to render thanks. Agnus, I, lomb.

Agricolă ae, husbandman. Aliquando, some time. Aliquis, quă, quid, any one, any some; ăliquid temporis, some time

Aliŭs, ă, ŭd (113. R.), other. Alpēs, iŭm, the Alps.

Altus, a, um, high, lofty. Amāre, av, at, to love. Ambitus, us, bribery.

Ambŭlāre, āv, āt, to walk.

Americanus, a, um, American. Amicitia, ae, friendship.

Amīcus, ī, friend. Amittere, mīs, miss, to lose.

Amphibium, I, an amphibious animal.

Amplius (adv.), more, further. Amplus, a, um, ample, large.

An, interrog. part., used in double questions, 482.

Anchises, ae, Anchises, the father of Aeneas.

Anguis, is, m. or f., snake. Angustiae, ārum, a narrow pass, defile.

Animăl, ālis, animal. Animus, ī, mind, soul.

Annuere, nu, nut, to assent, to give assent.

Annus, I, year. Ante (prep. with acc.), before.

Anteā (adv.), before. Antrum, ī, cave.

Anŭlus, I, ring. Apërirë, ëru, ert, to uncover, to open Appropinguarë, av, at, to approach

Aquă, ae, water. Aquārī, āt, to bring water.

Aquilă, ae, eagle. Ară, ae, altar.

Arārě, āv, āt, to plough. Arbŏr, ŏrĭs, f., tree.

Argentum, I, silver.

Armiger, i, armor-bearer Arripere (io), ipu, ept, to snatch, scire. Ars, artis, art. Arx, arcis, citadel, tower. Ascănius, I, Ascanius, son of Ae-Asinus, I, ass. Aspergěrě (or adspergěrě), ers, ers, to sprinkle. Athenae, arum, Athens, city of Greece. Atheniensis (Athenae), ĕ, Athenian, pl., the Athenians. reasoning). Attămen, but, but yet. Attingere (ad and tangere), tig, tact, to attain, reach. Auctor, oris, author. Auctumnus, ī, autumn. Audax, ācis, daring, audacious. Audīrě, īv, īt, to hear. Augere, aux, auct, to increase. Aureus (aurum), a, um, golden. Aurum, I, gold. Aut, or; avt-aut, either-or. Autěm, but. Auxilium, ī, aid. Avārīciă, ae, avarice. Avārus, a, um, avaricious. Avis, is, bird.

В.

Balbus, ī, Balbus, a man's name Barbă, ae, beard. Beātē (beātus), happily. Beātus, a, um, happy. Bellum, i, war. Běně, well. Běněficium, i. benefit. Běnīgnus, a, um, kind. Bibere, bib, bibit, to drink. Biennium, I, two years, space of two years. Bönüs, ä, üm, good. Brāchium, ī, arm. Brěvis, ě, short. Brūtus, I, Brutus, a Roman con-

C.

Oū

Cŏ

Co

Cŏ

Cŏ

Co

Co

Co

Co

Co

Cor

Con

Cor

Con

Con

Con

Cöp

Cŏq

Cŏr.

Cor

7

80

V

p

c

n

a

Căděrě, cěcid, cas, to fall. Caecus, a, um, blind. Caesar, aris, Caesar, a distinguished Roman general. Caius, I, Caius, a man's name. Călămitās, ātis, misfortune, calanity Candidus, a, um, white. Cănere, cecin, cant, to sing. Cănis, is, c., dog. Cantare (canere), av, at, to sing. Căpere (io), cep, capt, to take, re Captīvus, a, um, captive. Atqui (conj.), but, now (as used in Căput, Itis, head; căpitis, of the head, to death. Carpere, carps, carpt, to gather, to pluck, to card. Carthaginiensis (Carthago), ĕ, Carthaginian. Carthago, inis, Carthage, an ancient city in northern Africa. Castīgāre, av, at, to chastise, Castră, ōrŭm, camp. Cătenă, ae, chain. Căvere, cav, caut, to take care, to be on one's guard against. Cělěběr, brís, brě, celebrated Cělěritěr, quickly. Certamen, inis, contest. Certŭs, ă, ŭm, certain. Christianus, I, Christian. Cibus, i, food. Cicero, onis, Cicero, the great Roman orator. Cingërë, nx, nct, to surround. Circumdăre (circum and dăre), ded, dăt, to surround. Cis, on this side. Cīvīlis (cīvīs), ĕ, civil. Cīvis, is, citizen. Cīvitās (cīvis), ātis, state. Clauděrě, claus, claus, to shut. Clēmens, entis, mild, merciful. Clementia, ae, mildness, clemency. Clipeus, ī, shield. Coelum, i, heaven, the heavens. Coenă, ae, supper, feast. Cogitare, av, at, to think, to think about. Cognitus, a, um, known.

ished

nily

the

r, to Car-

cient

to be

man

děd,

lin!

Colere, colu, cult, to till, cultivate, practise. Colloquium, i, conference. Cŏlŏr ōrĭs, colur. Cŏlumbă, ae, dove. Committere, mis, miss, to engage; proelium committere, to engage tattle. Compărare, av, at, to procure, raise, Compellere, pul, puls, to compel, drive. Compescere, escu, to restrain, repress. Complere, ev, et, to fill.

Dognoscěrě, nov, nit, to ascertain.

Comprehendere, nd, ns, to arrest. Concertare, av, at, to contend, quarrel. Concilium, i, council, meeting. Conděrě (con [cum] and dare), did, dit, to build, found.

Conditio, onis, condition, terms. Confugere (io), fug, to flee for refuge.

Conjux, ŭgis, spouse, wife, husband. Conservare, av, at, to preserve. Consilium, i, advice, instruction. Conspicere (io), spex, spect, to see,

discover. Constăt (impers.), it is known, is an

admitted fact. Constituere, u, ūt, to arrange, ap-

point. Construere, strux, struct, to build, construct.

Consul, ulis, consul, the Roman chief magistrate. advice. Consulere, sulu, sult, to consult, ask

Contemněrě, ps, pt, to despise. Contentus, a, um, contented, content. Continere, u, tent, to restrain, confine.

Continuus, a, um, successive. Contrā (prep. with acc.), against. Convenire (con [cum] and venire),

ven, vent, to come together. Convertere, t, s, to turn, convert. Copiae, arum, forces.

Coquere, x, ct, to cook, to bake, to Dies, et, day. ripen.

Cor, cordis, n., heart. Coram (prep.with abl.), before, in pre- Dilaniare, av at, to tear in pieces sence of; adv., openly, in person. Diligens, tis, diligent.

Cŏrōnă, ae, crown, garland. Corpus, ŏris, body. Corrigere, rex, rect, to correct. Corrumpërë, rūp, rupt, to mislead corrupt. Crābrŏ, onis, wasp.

Crēber, bra, brum, frequent. Credere, credid, credit, to Seliew. put confidence in. Crescere, crev, cret, to increase, 's

wax (as moon). Culpă, ae, favlt, blame. Cum (prep. with abl.), with. Cunctus, a, um, all as a whole. Cupere (io), iv (i), it, to desire. Cupiditās, ātis, desire, passion. Cŭpidŭs, ă, ŭm, desirous of. Curare (cura), av, at, to take care of.

Currere, cucurr, curs, to run, Currus, üs, chariot. Custodire (custos), iv, it, to guard

D.

Damnāre, av, at, to condemn. Dărĕ, dĕd, dăt, to give. De (prep. with abl.), from, about, concerning. Dĕcĕm, ten. Dēcerněrě, crēv, crēt, to decree do cide. Děcimus, ă, um, tenth. Dēcĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), cēp, cept, to deceive. Dēdere, dēdid, dēdit, to surren der.

Dēfenděrě, d, s, to defend. Dēglūbere, ups, upt, to skin, flay. Dēlērē, lēv, lēt, to destroy. Dēmonstrārĕ, āv, āt, to show, demon strate. Deprehendere, d, s, to seize, catch. Dēterrēre, u, it, to deter, prevent.

Dēvincere, vīc, vict, to conquer. Dicere, dix, dict, to say. Tdo, onis, Dido, the foundress of Jarthage.

Difficilis, ĕ, difficult. Dīgnus, a, um, worthy.

Diligentia (diligens), ae, diligence. Dīmittere, mīs, miss, to dismiss. Discere, didic, to learn. Discipulus, I, pupil. Disjungërë, x, ct, to separate. Dīvidere, vīs, vīs, to divide. Dīvīnus, a, um, divine. Divitiacus, I, Divitiacus, a man's name. Döcere, u, t, to teach. Dŏlērĕ, u, it, to grieve. Dölör, öris, pain, grief, sorrow. Dominus, I, master as owner. Domus, us or i, f., house; domi, at home. Donare, av, at, to give, present: Dönum, I, gift. Dormīrě, īv, īt, to sleep. Dŭbĭtārĕ, āv, āt, to doubt. Dücenti, ae, ă, two hundred. Dūcere, dux, duct, to lead. Dum, while. Dummodo, if, but, provided. Duŏ, ae, ŏ, two. Duŏděcím, twelve. Dūrārĕ, āv, āt, to last. Dux, dŭcis, leader, guide.

Е

Eděrě, ēd, ēs (420), to eat. Educere (e and ducere), dux, duct, to lead forth. Efficere (io), fec, fect, to effect, accomplish. Egő, mei, &c., I. Elĕgantiă, ae, elegance. Elěphās, antis, m., elephant. Eměrě, ēm, empt, to buy, purchase. Enim, for, indeed. Enumerare, av. at, to enumerate. Epistolă, ae, letter, epistle. Epitomē, ēs, abridgment. Eques, itis, horseman. Equitatus, ūs, cavalry. Equus, I, horse. Ergā (prep. with acc.), towards. Ergo (conj.), therefore. Errare, av, at, to err. Erudīrē, īv, īt, to instruct. Esse, fu, fut, to be; est, is, it is. Et and; et-et, both-and

Etiam, also, even; ětiam atquo ěti ăm, again and again. Evertere, rt, rs, to pull down, to overthrow. Evolare, av, at, to fly away, to flee from. Ex (prep. with abl.), from. Excitare, av, at, to excite, arouse. Exclamare, av, at, to exclaim, cry Excruciare, av, at, to torture. Exercere, u. it, to practise, exercise Exercitus, us, army. Exorare, av, at, to supplicate. Expellere, pul, puls, to expel, banish. Exponere, posu, posit, to set forth, explain. Expugnare (ex and pugnare), av At, to storm.

Fle

Fh

Fle

Fo

Fo

Fo

Fo

Fr

Fr

Fr

Fre

Fri

 \mathbf{Fr}

Fŭ

Fŭ

Fű

Fu

Fu

Fu

Fŭ

Ga

Ga

Gĕ

Gĕ

Gě

Ge

Gl

Gl

Gr

Gr

Gr

Gr

Gr

Hà

H

H

Hε

Ha

He

He

Hi

Hi

Hi

F. Fābŭlōsŭs, **ŭ**, ŭm (*fabŭla*), *fabulou*s.

Exspectare, av at, to expect

Făcere (io), fec, fact, to do, make, Făcies, eī, face, appearance. Făcilis, ĕ, easy. Fallax (fallere), ācis, false, deceptive. Fămēs, ĭs, hunger. Faustulus, ī, Faustulus, an Itzlian shepherd. Făvēre, fav, faut, to favor. Fēlīcitās, ātis, happiness. Ferre, tul, lat (414), to bear. Ferrum, I, iron. Fĭdēlĭs, ĕ, faithful. Fides, eī, faith, fidelity; fidem við lārĕ, to break one's word. Fierī, fact (416), to become, be made. Fīgūră, ae, figure. Fīliă, ae (D. pl. filiābus), daughter. Fīliŭs, ī, son. Fīnīrě (finis), īv, īt, to finish. Finis, is (m. and f. sing., m. pl.), end. Firmus, a, um, firm. Flagitium, i, crime. Flērĕ, flēv, flēt, to weep. Florere (flos), u, to flourish, bloom. Flörescere (florere), to begin to bloom.

Flös, öris, flower. Fluere, x, x, to flow. Flümen, inis, river, stream. Foedus, ĕris, treaty. Fortis, ŏ, brave. Fortiter (fortis), bravely. Fortuna, ae, fortuna. Frangěrě, freg, fract, to break. Frater, tris, brother. Fraudārě, āv, āt, to defraud. Frētus, a, um, relying on. Frīgus, oris, cold. Frutex, icis, m., shrub. Fŭgă, ae, flight. Fugare (fuga), av, at, to put to siight. Fügere (io), füg, fügit, to flee. Fundus, ī, estate, farm. Fungī, funct, to discharge, fulfil. Furtum, ī, theft. Fütürüs, ă, üm, future.

ĕ

cise

ıis/L

rth.

at,

ous.

akc,

cep-

lian

VIÕ

ade.

ter.

end.

om.

r ta

G.

Gallicus (Galliu), a, um., Gallic.
Gallus, I, a Gaul.
Gener, I, son-in-law.
Genus, eris, kind, nature.
Gerere, gess, gest, to carry on, to wage (as war).
Germania, ae, Germany.
Gladius, I, sword.
Gloria, ae, glory.
Graeci, orum, the Greeks.
Granum, I, grain.
Gratia, ae, gratitude, favor; pl., thanks.
Gravis, e, hsavy.
Grex, egis, m. flock, herd.

H.

Hăbērč, u, it, to have.
Hăbitārč (habēre), āv, āt, to inhabit.
Haedūs, I, kid.
Hannībāl, ălis, Hannibal.
Hastā, ae, spear.
Hērōe, ōis, hero.
Hesternūs, ă, ŭm, of yesterdıy.
Hīc, haec, hōc, this.
Hiems, ĕmīs, winter.
Historiā, ae, history.

Homő, inis, man.
Honor, oris, honor.
Hortülüs (hortüs), little garden.
Hortüs, I, garden.
Hostis, is, enemy.
Homanis, ă, üm, human, natural & man.
Humerus, I, shoulder.

Ī.

Ibi, there. Iděm, eăděm, idem, same. Ideo, therefore. Igitur, therefore. Ignārŭs, ă, ŭm, ignorant. Ignāvus, a, um, indolent, cowardly. Ignis, is, m., fire, heat. Ignorātio, onis, ignorance. Ignoscěrě, ov, ot, to pardon. Ille, illa, illud, that, he, she, it. Illustrare, av, at, to illumine, to enlighten. Immensus, a, um, immense. Immergěrě, rs, rs, to plunge into. Immobilis, e, immovable. Immortālis, ĕ, immortal. Impědīrě, īv, īt, to impede, hinder. Impendēre, to overhang, threaten. Imperare, av, at, to command; impěrātă, ōrum, commands. Imperator (imperare), oris, commander. Impětus, us, attack. Impius, ă, um, impious. Improbus, a, um, bad, wicked. Imprüdens, entis, imprudent. In (prep. with acc. or abl.), with acc., into, to, against; with abl., in. Incendere, d, s, to set on fire, to burn. Inceptum, i, beginning. Incertus, a, um, uncertain. Incognitus, a, um, unknown. Incola (in and colere), ae, inhabi-Incolumis, e, safe, uninjured. Incredibilis (in and credere), e, encredible. Indīcere, dix, dict, to declare (no war). Indignus, a, um, unworthy.

Indoctus, a, um, unlearned.

Indulgere, ls, lt, to indulge. Industriă, ae, industry Inferre, intul, illat (414), to wage. Infra (prep. with acc.), below. Infligere, flix, flict, to inflict. Ingenium, I, talent, ability. Injūria, ae, injury, wrong done. Innocens, tis, innocent. Innoxius, a, um, harmless. Instruere, strux, struct, to arrange, Intelligere, lex, lect, to understand. Inter (prep. with acc.), between, during. Interdum, sometimes. Interessě, fu, fút, to be engaged in. Interficere (io), fec, fect, to kill. Interim, in the mean time, meanwhile. Intervallum, ī, distance, space. Intra (prep. with acc.), within, Inūtilis, č, useless. Invāděrě (in and vāděre), vās, vās, to invade. Invěnîrě, věn, vent, to find. Invidēre, vid, vis, to envy. Invītus, a, um, unwilling. Ipse, a, um, self, he himself. Iră, ae, anger. Irĕ, ĭv, ĭt, to go. Irrītāre, āv, āt, to irritate. Is, ea, id, he, she, it, that. Iste, a, ud, that. Ităliă, ae, Italy. Ităque, therefore. Iter, itineris, journey, way Iterum, again.

J.

Jubēre, juss, juss, to direct, order. Jūcut dus, a, um, pleasant, delightful. Judex, icis, judge. Jūdicare, av, at, to judge. Jūrārě, āv, āt, to swear. Justus, a, um, just, fair.

Lăbor, oris, labor. Lăborāre, av, at, to labor Lana, ac. wool.

Lătīnus, I, Latinus, a king of Latium. Laudāre, av, at, to praise. Laus, dis, praise. Lăvare, lav, laut, or lăvat, to wash. Lavinia, ae, Lavinia, daughter of Latinus. Lēgātus, i, ambassador. Lěgěrě, lēg, lect, to read. Legio, onis, legion, body of foot. Lēnis, ĕ, mild, merciful. Leo, onis, lion. Lex, legis, law. Liber, libri, book. Liber, a, um, free. Līběrī, ōrum, children. Licet (impers. v.), it is lawful. Licet, although. Liquescere, licu, to melt. Literae, arum (pl.), letter, epistle. Locuples, etis, wealthy, rich. Locus, i (pl. loci or loca), place. Lŏquī, lucūt, to speak. Lücere, lux, to shine. Luctus, us, grief, sorrow. Lūcus, i, grove. Lūděrě, lūs, lūs, to play. Lūdŭs, ī, play, sport. Lügere, lux, to grieve, mourn, weep for. Lūnă, ae, moon. Lupus, I, wolf. Luscinia, ae, nightingale Lux, lūcis, light.

M

M

M

M

M

M

M

M

M

M

M

M

M

M

Mi

Mi

Mi

Mi

Mi

Mī

Mĭ

Mi

Mĭ

Mi

Mā

Ma

Mà

Mo

Mo

Mo

Mo

Mo

Mč

Mŭ

Mu

Μu

Mi

 $M\bar{u}$

Nă

Na

M.

Măculare, av, at, to stain, to blem-Măgister, trī, master as teacher. Māgnĭtūdo (magnus), inis, greatness, Māgnŭs, ă, ŭm, great, large; māgnī, at a great price, highly; magnum est, it is a great thing. Major, us (comp. of magnus), greater larger. Mălě (malus), badly. Mallě, malu (410), to prefer. Mălăm, ī, evil, misfortune. Mălŭs, ă, ŭm, bad. Mănēre, ns, ns, to remain.

Manus, us, j., hand, force. Mărĕ, ĭs, sea. Marinus, a, um, marine, of the sca. Mäter, tris, mother. Mătronă, ae, matron. Maximus, a, um (superl. of magnus) a very great price. Mědicus, i, physician. Mědiŭs, ŭ, ŭm, middle, midst of, middle of, 267. Měl, mellis, honey. Mendācium, lie, falsehood. Mensis, is, m., month, Mětuěrě, u, to fear. Mětus, us, fear. Meus, a, um (masc. voc. sing., mi), my. Micare, u, to glitter, shine. Mīles, Itis, soldier. Militia, ae, military service; militiae (gen. sing.), in war, on service. Mille, thousand Minor, us (comp. of parvus), smaller. Mīrābilis, ĕ, wonderful. Miser, a, um, miserable, wretched. Misereri, ert or erit, to pity. Miseret (impers. verb), it pities, one pities. Mittere, mīs, miss, to send. Mōbĭlĭs, ĕ, movable. Mŏdŏ, only. Monere, u, it, to advise, admonish. Mons, tis, m., mountain. Monstrāre, av, at, to show. Mordērě, momord, mors, to bite. Mors, tis, death. Mortālis (mors), ĕ, mortal. Mŏvērĕ, mov, mot, to move. Mŭliër, ĕrĭs, woman. Multitudo (multus), inis, multitude. Multus, a, um, much, many; multa Numerus, ī, number. (neut. pl.), many things; multum Nunquam, never. poris, much time. Mūrŭs, I, wall. Mūtārĕ, āv, āt, to change

La

eep

em-

€88,

ζIIĬ,

ហែរ

Năm, for Namque, for.

Nare, nav, to swim. Narrārē, āv, āt, to relate, narrate. Narrātio (narrāre), narration, nar rative. Nascī, nāt, to be born. Nātio, onis, nation. greatest, very great; maximi, at Ně, interrog. particle, 287 and 288. Ne (used with imperat. and subj.), not. Něc, neither; něc-něc, neither-Nēglīgērē, lex, lect, to disregard. Nemo (inis, not in good use), nobody, no one. Mens, tis, mind, the reasoning fa-culty. Nequidem, not even, generally with the emphatic word between the two parts; as, ne populus quidem, not even the people. Nërë, nëv, nët, to spin. Nescīre, īv, īt, not to know, to be ignorant of. Nīdŭs, ī, nest. Nihil, nothing. Nimius, a, um, too much, excessive. Nix, nĭvĭs, snow. Nŏcērĕ, u, ĭt, to hurt. Nollě, nolu (410), to be unwilling. Nōměn, ĭnĭs, name. Non, not; non solum—sed etiam. not only-but also. Nondum, not yet. Nonně, interrog. particle; expects ans, yes. 288, REM. Nostěr, tră, trům, our. November, bris (abl. i), November. Nox, noctis, night. Nūbës, ĭs, *cloud*, Nullus, ă, um (113, R.), no, no one. Num, interrog. particle; expects ans, no. 288, Rem. [Rome. Rome. Nămă, ae, Numa, second king of Nunc, now. Numerare, av, at, to number. bonī, much good; multum tem- Nuntiāre (nuntius), av, at, to announce, report.

O.

O (interjection), O. O sī, 'if, would that.

Nuntiŭs, ī, messenger.

Obesse, fu, fut, to be prejudicial to. | Per (prep. with acc.), through. Oblivieci, oblit, to forget. Obsěs, idis, hostage. Obstare, stit, stat, to oppose, prevent. Obtinēre, inu, ent, to acquire, obtain. Occasio, onis, occasion, Occidere (ob and caedere), cid, cis, to kill. Occidere (ob and cadere), cid, cas, to Occultare (occulere), av, at, to conceal, hide. Octo, eight. Oculus, i, eye. Odium, I, hatred Officium, i, duty. Olim, once, formerly. Omnīno, in all. Omnis, ĕ, all, every. Oportet (impers.), it behooves, one ought. Optio, onis, choice. Opus, eris, work. Orātio, onis, oration. Orātor, oris, orator. Ornārě, āv, āt, to adorn. Ovis, is, sheep. P.

Pābŭlārī, āt, to forage. Pallium, i, cloak. Părāre, av, at, to prepare. Parere, u, it, to obey. Parcere, peperc, parcit, to spare. Pars, tis, part. Parvus, a, um, small, little; parvum, little, a little; parvi, at a low price; parvī aestimārē, to think little of. Pastor (pascere), oris, shepherd. Păter, tris, father. Pătriă, ae, native country. Paucus, ă, ŭm, little, few. Pauper, eris, a poor man. Pausanias, ae, Pausanias, a distinguished Spartan general. Pāvō, onis, peacock. Pax, pācis, peace. Peccare, av, at, to sin, do wrong. Pěcūniă, ae, money. Pendere, pepend, to hang.

Perdere, did, dit, to waste. Perfidiă, ae, perfidy. Perfügium, i, refuge. Pěriculosus (periculum), a, un, dangerous. Perītus, a, um, skilful, skilled in. Perniciës, ël, destruction. Perpetuo, for ever. Perspicere (ið), ex, ect, to perceive, Persuādērē, s, s, to persuade. Pertimescere, timu, to fear greatly. Pervenīre, ven, vent, to arrive at reach. Pēs, pědís, foot. Pětěrě, īv or i, īt, to seek. Philosophus, i, philosopher. Piĕtās, ātĭs, piety, faithfulness. Piget (impers.), it irks, one is grieved at; me piget, I am grieved. Piscis, is, m., fish. Piŭs, ă, ŭm, pious. Plācārě, āv, āt, to appease. Plăcēre, u, it, to please. Plānē, plainly. Plurimus, a, um (superl. of multus) very much or great; pl., very many. Poēmă, ătis, poem. Poenitet (impers.), it repents, one re. pents. Poētă, ae, poet. Poněrě, posu, posit, to place. Pons, tis, m., bridge. Popularis (populus), e, popular. Populus, i, people. Portă, ae, gate. Poscere, popose, to demand. Possě, pětu (irreg., 407), to be able. Possidere, ed, ess, to possess. Post (prep. with acc.), after. Postera, um (mas. not used), next, following. Postulare, av, at, to demand. Pŏtīrī, īt, to get possession of. Prae (prep. with abl.), before, in comparison with. Praebēre, u, it, to furnish, offer. Praeceptum, I, precept, instruction. Praedă, ae, booty. Praeditus, a, um, endued with.

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

P

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

 \mathbf{Pr}

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

 \Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pr

Pĭ

Pu

Pu

 $\mathbf{P}\bar{\mathbf{u}}$

Pu

P

Praemittere, mis, miss, to send before. | Quare, wherefore. Praepărăre, av, at, to prepare. Praesens, tis, present. Praestans, tis, excellent. Praestăt (impers.), it is better. Praeteritus, a, um, past; neut. pl., the past. Prātum, i, meadow. Prětiosus, a, um, valuable. Primus, a, um, first. Princeps (primus and capere), ipis, chief, leader. Privare, av, at, to deprive. Prīvātus, a, um, private, personal. Pro (prep. with abl.), for, before. Probus, a, um, honest. Prodesse, profu, profut, to profit. Proditio, onis, treachery. Proditor, oris, traitor. Producere, dux, duct, to lead forward, or out. Proelium, i, battle. Proficisci, fect, to set out, to march. Promittere, mis, miss, to promise. Promovere, mov, mot, to move forward, advance. Propensus, a, um, inclined to. Propior, us (comp.), nearer. Providus, a, um, cautious, prudent. Provincia (pro and vincere), ae, province. Proximus, a, um, nearest, next. Prūdens, tis, prudent, cautious. Prüdentiă (prudens), ae, prudence. Pudor, oris, shame, modesty. Puellă, ae, girl. Puĕr, ī, boy. Pūgnārě (pugnă), āv, āt, to fight. Pulcher, chră, chrăm, beautiful. Pūnīre, īv, īt, to punish. Pŭtārě, āv, āt, to think, regard.

lan

oive,

uly.

pod

us)

ery

re.

ble.

ext

in

B1L

Quaestio, onis, question. Quăm (adv.), how; quăm multi, how many; with superl. intensive, as quăm maximus, as great as possible. Quăm (conj.), than. Quamvis, however, however much. Quantus, a, um, kow great.

Quartus, a, um, fourth. Quăsi, as if. Quatuor, four. Que (always appended to another word), and Qui, quae, quod, who, which, that. Qui, quae, quod (interrog.), who which, what I Quiă, because. Quiescere, ev et, to rest, be quiet. Quin (478), that not, but that. Quinque, five. Quintus, a, um, fifth. Quis, quae, quid (interrog. suba) who, which, what i Quō, that, in order that. Quominus (472), that not, from. Quŏquĕ, also. Quum, when; quum-tum, bothand.

R.

Rătio, onis, reason. Rěcĭpěrě (iŏ), cēp, cept, to receive. Recordari, at, to remember, call to mind. Rědîrě, i, it, to return. Rědůcěrě, dux, duct, to lead back. Rěferrě, tůl, lāt, to relate. Rěgěrě, rex, rect, to rule, govern. Rēgīnă, ae, queen. Rēgnārē, āv, āt, to reign. Regnum, I, kingdom, government. Rěliquus, a, um, remaining, the rest. Rěpěrirě, rěpěr, rěpert, to find. Rēs, rēī, thing, affair. Resistere, stit, to resist. Respondere, d, s, to answer. Responsum, i, answer, response. Respuěrě, pu, to reject. Reus, I, criminal. Rěvertěrě, vert, vers, to return, turn back. Rex, rēgis, king Rhēnds, ī, Rhine.

Rīdērē, rīs, rīs, to laugh, laugh at. Robustus, a, um, robust, strong. Rŏgārĕ, āv, āt, to ask, entreat. Rōmă, ae, Rome. Romānus (Roma), a, um, Roman.

Romülüs, ī, Romulus. Rotundüs, ň, ŭm, round. Ruěrě, ru, rūt (ruĭt), to rush. Rūmör, öris, rumor. Rumpěrě, rūp, rupt, to break, violate. Rūs, rūris, n., country.

S.

Săcerdos, otis, priest, priestess. Snepě, often. Saevīrē (saevūs), īv (i), īt, to rage. Săgittă, ae, arrow. Saltare, av, at, to dance. Salūs, ūtis, safety. Sanare, av, at, to cure, reform. Sancīre, x, ct, to enact, confirm. Sanguis, inis, m., blood. Săpěrě, iv or i, to be wise. Săpiens, entis, wise. Săpientiă, ae, wisdom. Sătiārĕ, āv, āt, to satisfy. Sătis, enough. Sceptrum, I, sceptre. Scientia, ae, knowledge. Scīpio, onis, Scipio, a distinguished Roman, Scīrĕ, īv, īt, to know. Scriběrě, ps, pt, to write. Secundus, a, um, second. Sěd, but. Sēměn, inis, seed. Semper, always. Sempiternus, a, um, lasting, eternal. Sěnātor, oris, senator. Senātus (senex), us, senate. Sěnectūs, ūtis, old age. Sĕnex, sĕnĭs, an old man. Sensus, us, feeling, perception. Sententia, ae, sentiment. Sentīre, s, s, to perceive, to feel (as pain). Sěpělīrě, pělīv or i, pult, to bury. Sermo, onis, discourse. Servare, av, at, to keep, observe, Servire, iv, it, to serve, be slave to. Servius, ī, Servius, a man's name. Servus, ī, slave. Beu-sen, whether-or, either-or.

Sex. six. Si, if. Sic, so. Sīcut, so as, just as. Simplex, icis, simple. Simulatio, onis, assumed appearance, pretence. Sine (prep. with abl.), without. Sinus, us, bosom. Sīrēn, ēnis, siren, Sitīre, īv, īt, to thirst. Sīvē—sīvē, whether—or. Socrates, is, Socrates, the celebrated Grecian philosopher. Söl, sölis, m., sun. Somnus, I, sleep. Sonus, I, sound. Soror, oris, sister. Spargěrě, rs, rs, to scatter, sow. Spěciosus (species), a, um, specious, plausible. Spectare (specere), av, at, to look at, behold. Spērārē, āv, āt, to hope for. Spēs, eī, hope. Splendens, tis, shining. Spoliare, av, at, to rob of, despoil.Stabilitas, atis, firmness, stability Statim (stare), immediately. Stellă, ae, star. Studere, u, to study, strive for. Studiosus, a, um, studious. Stultītiā, ae, folly. Suadere, s, s, to advise. Subvěnīrě, vēn, vent, to aid. Succurrere, curr, curs, to aid, suc-Suěrě, su, sūt, to sew, stitch. Suī, sibī (257), of himself, hersel, &c. Sullă, ae, Sulla, a man's name. Summus, a, um, highest, greatest; sometimes the top of (267); summus mons, the top of the mountain. Sumptus, us, expense. Superāre, āv, āt, to surpass, conquer, to go over. Superficies, eī, surface. Supervacuus, a, um, unnecessary.

Supplicatio, onis, thanksgiving.

7

1

T

1

T

T

T

T

 $\hat{\mathbf{T}}$

T

T

T

T

 \mathbf{T}

T

T

T

T

T

U

U.

U

Supra (adv. and prep. with acc.), Unus, a, um (118, R.), one, single Sustinare, u, tent, to sustain, endure. Suŭs, ă, am, Ais, her, &c.

Τ.

Such

148,

at,

do-

4,

1:

176-

cr,

Tăcere, u, ît, to be silent, to pass over in silence. Tăm, so; tăm—quăm, so—as. Tămin, yet. Tangere, tetig, tact, to touch, Tanquam, as if. Tantus, a, um, so great. Tărentum, I, Tarentum, a town in Italy. Tardŭs, ă, ŭm, slow. Tarquinius, I, Tarquin, one of the kings of Rome. Tectum (tegere), I, roof, house. Tegere, tex, tect, to cover. Tempus, oris, time. Těněrě, u, t, to hold. Tentare, av, at, to try, attempt. Terră, ae, the earth. Terrēre, u, it, to terrify. Tertiŭs, ă, ŭm, third. Tībur, uris, Tibur, a town in Italy. Timere, u, to fear. Timidus, a, um, timid. Tondērē, totond, tons, to shear, shave. Totus, a, um (113, R.), the whole, the entire. Tranquillus, ă, um, calm, tranquil. Transīrĕ, i, ĭt, to go over. Trēs, triă, three. Trojānus (Trojā), a, um, Trojan. Tū, tuī, thou. Tullia, ae, Tullia, a queen of Rome. Turpus, ĕ, base, disgraceful. Turris, is (acc., em or im; abl., e or i), tower. Inds, a, um, your.

U.

Ullus, ă, ŭm (113, R.), any. Undě, whence. Unquam, ever.

single one. Urbs, is, city. Ursüs, I, bear. Usque, as far as; usque ad, even Ut (conj.), that, as, Uti, as, to use. Utilis, č, useful. Utilitas (atilis), atis, utility, advan Utinam (ounj.), would that. Utrum (interrog. part.), whether; utrum—an, whether—or. Uvă, ae, grape.

Văcare, av, at, to have lessure for. Věl (conj.), or; věl-věl, either-Vellě, vělu (410), to wish, be willing. Vēlox, öcis, swift. Vēnārī, āt, to hunt. Venděrě, díd, dít, to sell. Věnīrě, vēn, vent, to come. Vēr, vēris, n., spring. Verbum, i, word. Věrērī, ĭt, to fear. Vero, indeed, truly. Vērus, a, um, true, real; vērum truth. Vēruntāmen, but yet. Vestěr, tră, trăm, your. Vestĭs, ĭs, garment. Větustůs, a, um, ancient. Viă, ae, way, road. Victimă, ae, victim. Victoria, ae, Victoria, Videre, vid, vis, to see; pass., vidērī, to seem. Vigilārē (vigil), āv, āt, to watch. Viginti, twenty. Vincere, vic, vict, to conquer. Vincīrē, vinx, vinct, to bind. Vincŭlŭm, ī, chain.

Vindĭcārĕ, āv, āt, to avenge.

break.

Vĭr, vĭrī, man, hero.

Virgo, inis, virgin, maiden

Violare, av, at, to violate, wrong,

Virus, utis, virtue, manliness.
Vis, vis (acc., vim), pl., virės, virium, dc., force, strength.
Viti, ae, life.
Vitis, a. life. Vitare, av, at, to shun, avoid. Vituperare, av, at, to blame, criticise. Vulnus, eris, mound. Vivere, vix, vict, to live. Vulpes, is, fox.

Vulněrarě, av, at, to wound.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

Ability, ingenium, L. About, de (with abl.). Above, supra (adv. and prep. with Abridgment, ĕpĭtŏmē, ēs. Accept, accipere (io), cep, cept (550).Accomplish, efficere (io), fec, fect. Accuse, accūsārē, āv, āt. Achilles, Achilles, is. Acquire, obtinēre, tinu, tent. Acquit, absolvěrě, v, üt. Act, v., făcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fact. Admiration, admīrātiö, onis. Admonish, monere, u, it, admonere, dec. Adorn, ornārē, āv, āt, Advance, promovere, mov, mot. Advantage, ūtilitās, ātis. Advice, consilium, L Advise, suādērē, s, s; monēre, u, it. Aemas, Aenēās, ae. Affair, rēs, rěī. After, post (with acc.). Again, iterum. Again and again, ĕtiăm atquĕ ĕtiām. Against, in (acc.); contra (acc.). Aid, s., adjūmentum, ī; auxilium, ī. Aid, v., subvěnīrě, vēn, vent, adjuvārĕ, jūv, jūt. All (as a whole), cunctus, a, um. All (every), omnis, ĕ. Alps, Alpēs, iŭm. Also, ĕtiam, quoquĕ. Altar, āră, ae. Although, licet. Always, semper. Ambassador, lēgātus, ī. American, Americanus, a, um.

Amphibious animal, amphibium, Ample, amplus, a, um. Anchises, Anchīsēs, ae. Ancient, větustůs, a, ům. And, ět, quě (enclitic), āc. Anger, īrā, ae. Animal, animal, alis. Announce, nuntiare, av, at (540). Answer, s., responsum, ī. Answer, v., respondere, d, s. Any, ullus, ă, um (113, R.). Any one, aliquis, a, quid. Appearance, făcies, el. Appease, plācārě, āv, āt. Appoint, constituere, u, ūt. Approach, s., adventus, us (521). Approach, v., appropingrare, av, at accedere, cess, cess. *Arm*, brāchiŭm, ī. Armor-bearer, armiger, i. Army, exercitus, us. Arouse, excitare, av. at. Arrange, constituere, u, ūt. Arrange, array, instručrě, ux, uct. Arrest, comprehendere, d, s. Arrival, adventus, us (521). Arrive at, pervěnīrě, vēn, vent. Arrow, săgittă, ae. Art, ars, artis. As, ŭt. As far as, usque. As if, quăsi, tanquăm. As possible, quam with superl. (309) Ascanius, Ascănius, L Ascertain, cognoscere, nov, nit. Ask, rŏgārĕ, āv, āt. Ask advice, consulere, lu, lt. Ass. asinus, L Assemble, convěnírě, věn, vent (550) Assent, give assent, annuere, u, at. Assumed appearance, simulatio, onia

high price, maximi. At a low price, parvi. At home, domi. Athenian, Atheniensis, č. Athens, Athenae, arum. Attack, impětus, us. Attain, attingere, tig. tact. Attempt, tentāre, āv, āt. Audacious, audax, ācis. Author, auctor, oris. Autumn, auctumnus, L. Avarice, ăvārītiā, ae. Avaricious, ăvārus, a, um. Avenge, vindicāre, av, at. Avoid, vītārĕ, āv, āt.

B.

Bad, improbus, a, um; malus, a, um. Badly, mălě. Bake, coquere, cox, coct. Balbus, Balbus, 1. Banish, expellěrě, půl, puls. Base, turpis, ě. Battle, proelium, i. Be, esse, fu, fut. Be able, possě, pětu. Be born, nascī, nāt. Be engaged in, intěressě, fu, fút. Be ignorant of, nescîre, īv (i), īt. Be made, fieri, fact. Be on one's guard against, căvēre, cav, caut. Be prejudicial to, obesse, fu, fut. Be present, adesse, fu, fut. Be quiet, quiescĕrĕ, quiēv, quiēt. Be silent, tăcēre, u, it. Be slave to, servīrē, īv, īt. Be unwilling, nollě, nôlu Be willing, vellě, volu. Be wise, săpěrě, ïv or i. Bear, s., ursus, ī. Bear, v., ferre, tul, lat. Beard, barbă, ae. Beautiful, pulcher, chră, chrum. Because, quiă. Become, fieri, fact. Before (adv.), anteä. Before (prep.), antě, cōrăm, prae, prō. Beg for, sue for, pětěrě, îv (i), ît. Begin to bloom, florescere (544).

At a high price, magni; at a very Beginning, inceptum, L Behold, spectare, av, at. Believe, crēděrě, crēdíd, crēdít. Below, infra (with acc.). Benefit, běněficium, i. Between, inter (with acc.). Bind, vincīrē, vinx, vinct. Bird, ăvis, is, f. Bite, mordere, momord, mora. Blame, s., culpă, ae. Blame, v., vituperare, av, at. Blind, caecus, a, nm. Blood, sanguis, inis, m. Bloom, florere, u. Body, corpus, oris. Book, liber, libri. Booty, praedă. Bosom, sinus, ūs. Both-and, et-et; quan-tun. Boy, puĕr, ī. Brave, fortis, č. Bravely, fortiter. Break, frangěrě, freg, fract; rumpěrě, rūp, rupt; viŏlārě, āv, āt: break one's word, fĭděm viŏlārě. Bribery, ambitŭs, ūs. Bridge, pons, tis, m. Bring, bring to, afferre, attul, allat. Bring water, ăquâri, āt. Brother, frater, tris. *Brutus*, Brūtŭs, ī. Build, ${f ae}$ dĭfĭcārĕ, ${f av}$, ${f at}$; ${f construĕr}{f \xi}$ x, ct; conděrě, díd, dít. Building, aedĭfĭciŭm, L Burn, incenděrě, d, s. Bury, sĕpĕlīrĕ, īv (i), pult. But, sĕd, ăt, autĕm. But, now (in reasoning), atqui. But, but yet, attămen, veruntămen. But that, quin. Buy ĕmĕrĕ, ēm, empt. By (with voluntary agent), a, ab, abs in other cases indicated by abl.

Caesar, Caesar, aris. Caius, Caius, L Calamity, călămitās, ātis, Call, vŏcārĕ, āv, āt. Call to mind, recordari, at. Calm, tranquillus, ă, um.

Camp, castră, örum. Captive, captīvus, ī. Card, carpere, ps, pt. Carry, ferre, tul, lat. Carry on (as war), gěrěrě, gess, gest. Carthage, Carthago, inis. Carthaginian, Carthaginiensis, č. Catch, deprehendere, d, s. Cautious, prūdens, tis; providus, Cavalry, equitatus, us. Cave, antrum, ī. Celebrated, cělěběr, brís, brě. Censure, vituperare, av, at. Certain, certus, a, um. Chain, vinculum, ī; cătenă, ae. Change, mütāre, av, at. Chariot, currus, us. Chastise, castīgārē, āv, āt, Chief, princeps, cipis. Children, līberi, ōrum. Choice, optio, onis. Christian, Christianus, I. Cicero, Cicero, onis. Citadel, arx, arcis. Citizen, cīvis, is. City, urbs, urbis. Civil, cīvīlis, ĕ (528). Clemency, clementia, ae. Cloak, pallium, ī. Cloud, nūbēs, is. Cold, frīgus, ŏris. Collect, compărare, av, at. Color, color, oris. Come, věnīrě, věn, vent. Come together, convenire, ven, vent, Command, v., impěrarě, av, at, Commands, s., imperātā, ōrum. Commander, imperator, oris (521). Compel, compellere, pul, puls. Conceal, occultare, av, at. Concerning, de (with abl.) Condemn, damnāre, av. at. Condition, conditio, onis. Conference, colloquium, I. Confine, continere, tinu, tent. Confirm, sancīre, sanx, sanct. Conquer, superare, av, at; vincere, vīc, vict; dēvincere, vīc, vict. Construct, construĕrĕ, x, ct,

Consul, consul, ulis.

Consult, consulere, lu, lt.

Contend, concertare, av, at. Contented, contentus, a, um. Contest, certamen, inis. Convert, convertere, t, s. Cook, coquere, cox, coct. Correct, corrigere, rex, rect. Corrupt, corrumpere, rup, rupt. Council, concilium, i. Country, rus, ruris. Cover, těgěrě, tex, tect. Cowardly, īgnāvŭs, ă, ŭm. Crime, flagitium, ī. Criminal, reus, ī. Criticise, vituperare, av. at. Crown, s., cŏrōnă, ae. Crown, crown with a garland, corons cingĕrĕ, nx, nct. Cry out, exclamare, av, at. Cultivate, colere, colu, cult. Cure, sanarě av, at.

D.

Dance, saltārĕ, āv, āt. Dangerous, periculosus, a, um. Daring, audax, ācis. Daughter, filia, ac. Day, dies, et. Death, mors, tis. Deceive, dēcīpērē (ið), cēp, cept. Deceptive, fallax, ācis. Decide, dēcerněrě, crēv, crēt. Declare, indicere, dix, dict; declare war, bellum indīcere. Decree, decernere, crev, cret. Defend, defendere, d, s. Defile, angustiae, ārum. Defraud, fraudārē, āv, āt. Delightful, jūcundus, a, um. Demand, poscěrě, poposc; postulara av. at. Demonstrate, demonstrare, av, at. Depart, abīrē, i, it. Deprive, prīvārē, āv, āt. Derive, have, hăbere, u, it. Desire, s., cupiditas, atis. Desire, v., cupere (io), iv or i, it. Desirous of, cupidus, a, um. Despoil, spöliāre, av, at. Destroy, delere, ev, et. Destruction, pernicies, čl. Deter, deterrere, u, it.

Dido, Dido, onia, Difficult, difficilis, ĕ. Diligence, diligentiă, ac. Diligent, dīligens, tis, Direct, order, jubere, juss, juss. Discharge, fungī, funct. Discourse, sermo, onis. Discover, conspicere (io), spex, spect. Disgraceful, turpis, ě. Dismiss, dīmittere, mīs, miss. Disregard, nēgligērē, lex, lect. Distance, intervallum, i. Divide, dīvidērē, vīs, vīs. \emph{Divine} , dīvīnŭs, ă, ŭm. Divitiacus, Divitiacus, I. Do, făcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fact. Do good to, prodesse, profu, profut. Do wrong, peccare, av, at, Dog, cănis, is. Doubt, dŭbitāre, av, at. Dove, columbă, aq. Drink, biběrě, bib, bibit. Drive, ăgěrě, ēg, act; compellerě, pul, puls. During, inter (with acc.). Duty, officium, ī. Dwell, hăbitāre, āv, āt.

E

Eagle, aquilă, ac. Earth, terra, ae. Easy, facilis, č. Eat, ĕdĕrĕ, ēd, ēs. Edifice, aedificium, i. Effect, efficere (io), fec, fect Eight, octo. Either-or, aut-aut. Elegance, elegantia, ac. Elephant, elephas, antis, Enact, sancīre, x, ct. End, fīnis, is, m. and f. Endued with, praeditus, a, um. Endure, sustinēre, tinu, tent; ferre, tŭl, lāt. Enemy, hostis, is, c. Engage (as battle), committere, mīs, miss; engage battle, proelium committere. Enjoy, frui, fruct (fruit). Enlighten, illustrārē, āv, āt. Enough, sătis.

Entire, totus, a, um (113, R.) Entreat, rogāre, av, at. Enumerate, enumerare, av, at. Envy, invidere, vid, vis. Epistle, ĕpistŏlă, ae; lītĕrae, ārām Equity, aequitas, atis. Err, errare, av, at. Estate, fundus, ī. Eternal, sempiternus, a. um. Even, ětiăm. Even to, usque ad. Ever, unquam. Every, omnis, e. Evil, mălum, I. Excellent, praestans, tis. Excessive, nimius, a, um. Excite, excitārē, āv, āt. Exclaim, exclămăre, av, at. Exercise, exercere, u, it. Expect, exspectare, av, at. Expel, expellere, pul, puls. Expense, sumptus, us. Explain, exponere, posu, posit. Eye, ŏcŭlŭs, ī.

F.

Fabulous, fābŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm. Face, făcies, eī. Faith, fides, ēī. Faithful, fidelis, ě. Faithfulness, pietas, atis. Fall, căděrě, cěcid, cas; occiděrá cid, cas. False, fallax, ācis (535). Falsehood, mendācium, ī. Farm, fundus, ī. Father, păter, pătris. Fault, culpă, ae. Faustulus, Faustulus, i. Favor, s., grātiă, ae. Favor, v., făvēre, fav, faul, Fear, s., mětůs, üs. Fear, v., timērē, u; mětuěrě, u, at věrērī, ĭt. Fear greatly, pertimescérě, mu. Feast, coenă, ae. Feel (as pain, &c.), sentīrĕ, s, s Feeling, sensus, us. Few, paucī, ae, ă. Fidelity, fīdēs, ĕī. Field, ager, agrī.

rěpěr, rěpert. Fine, beautiful, pulcher, chră, chrum. Finish, finīrē, īv, ĭt (540). Fire, ignis, is, m. Firm, firmus, a, um. Firmness, stăbilitās, ātis, First, prīmus, a, um. Fish, piscis, is, m. Five, quinquě. Flatterer, adulator, oris. Flattery, ădulătio, onis. Flay, deglübere, ps, pt. Flee, fŭgërë (iŏ), fūg, fŭgit. Flee for refuge, confugere füg. Flee from, ēvolārē, āv, āt. Flight, fugă, ae. Flock, grex, gregis, m. Flourish, florere, u. Flow, fluěrě, x, x. Flower, flös, öris. Fly, vŏlārĕ, āv, āt. Fly away, evolare, av, at. Following, postěrá, ŭm (masc. nom. not used). Folly, stultitia. ac. Food, cibus, i.

Foot, pēs, pēdīs.

For ever, perpetuo.

Force,

vīrēs).

Forage, pābulārī, āt.

Forces, copiae, ārum.

Fortune, fortūra, ae.

Fourth, quartus, a, um.

Friendship, ămīcĭtiă, ae.

Frighten, terrērē, u, it.

Found, conděrě, dřd, dřt (550).

Frequent, crēběr, bră, brum,

Formerly, ölim.

Four, quătuor.

Fox, vulpēs, ĭs.

Free, līber, a, um.

Friend, ămīcus, ī.

Forget, oblivisci, oblit.

For (conj.), ĕnĭm, năm, namquĕ.

mănus, us vis, vis (pl.

For (prep.), pro (with abl.).

rŭm

Fifth, quintus, a, um.

Fight, pūgnārĕ, āv, āt.

Fill, complere, ev, et.

Find, invěnīrě, ven, vent; rěpěrīrě,

Figure, figură, ae.

From, ā, ăb, abs, dē, ex, and some times before participial nouns, quōmĭnŭs.
Fulfil, fungī, funct.
Furnish, praebērē, u, it.
Further, ampliŭs.
Future, fūtūrūs, ā, ŭm.

G.

Gallic, Gallicus, a, um. Game, lūdus, L Garden, hortŭs, ī. Garland, cŏronă, ae. Garment, vestis, is. Gate, portă, ae. Gather, carpere, ps, pt. Gaul, a Gaul, Gallus, i. Germany, Germāniă, ae. Get possession of, potīrī, īt. Gifi, donum, L. Girl, puella, ae. Give, dăre, ded, dăt; donare, av, āt. Glitter, micare, u. Glory, gloriă, ae. Go, īrĕ, īv or ī, ĭt. Go away, ăbīrĕ, i, ĭt. Go over, transīre, i, it; superāre, av. āt. Gold, aurum, L Golden, aureŭs, ă, ŭm. Good, bonus, a, um. Govern, rěgěrě, rex, rect. Government, regnum, ī *Grain*, grānum, ī. Grape, ūvă, ae. Gratitude, gratia, ae. Great, māgnus, a, um; at a great price, magni; it is a great thing, magnum est. Greater, major, üs. Greatest, highest, summus, a, um. Greatest, very great, maximus, a, um, at a very great price, maximi. Greatness, māgnītūdō, ĭnīs. Greeks, Graecī, ōrum. Grief, dölör, öris; luctus, ūs. Grieve, dŏlērě, u, ĭt; lūgērě, lux. Grove, lūcus, ī. Guard, custodirě, iv, it (540). Guide, dux, ducis.

Hand, manus, us. Hang, pendere, pepend. Hannibal, Hannibal, alis. Happily, beate. Happiness, felīcītās, ātis. Happy, beātus, a, um. Harmless, innoxiŭs, ä, ŭm. Hatred, ŏdiam, I. Have, hăbere, u, it. Hawk, accipiter, tris. He himself, ipse, a, um. He, she, it, ille, a, ud. He, she, or it is, est. Head, caput, itis. Hear, audīre, īv. īt. Heart, cor, cordis, n. Heat, īgnīs, is, m. Heaven, the heavens, coelum L Heavy, gravis, č. Help, s., adjumentum, I. Help, v., adjuvare, jūv, jūt. Herd, grex, gregis, m. Hero, vir, viri; hēros, ois. Hide, occultare, av, at, High, altus, a, um. Highest, summus, a, um. Hinder, impědīrě, īv (i), īt. His, her, its, &c., suus, a, um. History, historia, ne. Hold, inere, u, tent. Home, domus, us or i, f. Honest, probus, a, um. Honey, měl, mellis. Honor, honor, oris. Hope, s., spēs, čī. Hope, hope for, spērāre, āv, āt. Horse, ĕquŭs, ī.

Horseman, ĕquĕs, ĭtĭs.

House, tectum, ī; domus, ūs or ī, f.

How, quam; how many, quam multī.

How great, quantus, a, um; how

much, quantum (with gen.).

Human, hūmānus, a, um.

Hunger, fămēs, is.

Hurt, nŏcērĕ, u, ĭt.

Husband, conjux, ŭgĭs. Husbandman, ăgrĭcŏlă, ae.

Hunt, vēnārī, āt.

However, however much, quamvis.

Hostage, obses, idis.

I

I, ĕgŏ, meī. If, sī, dummodo. Ignorance, īgnorātio, onia Ignorant, īgnārus, a, um. Illumine, illustrare, av, at. Immediately, statim. Immense, immensus, a, um Immortal, immortalis, č. Immovable, immobilis, č. Impede, impědīrě, īv (i), īt Impious, impius, a, um. Imprudent, imprudens, tis. In, in (with abl.). In all, omnīnă. In comparison with, præ. In order that, quo. In person, in presence of, corum. In the mean time, interim. In such a manner, ădeō. Inclined to, propensus, a, um. Increase, augere, aux, auct; crescere crēv, crēt. Incredible, incredibilis, č. (535). Indeed, ĕnĭm, vērð. Indolent, īgnāvūs, ă, ŭm. Indulge, indulgērē, ls, lt. Industry, industria, ac. Inflict, infligere, x, ct. Inhabit, hăbitārĕ, āv, āt Inhabitant, incolă, ae, (560.) Injury, injūriă, ae. Innocent, innocens, tis. Instruct, ērudīre, īv, īt. Instruction, consilium, I: præcep ţŭm, ī Into, in (with acc.). Invade, invāděrě, vās, vās, (550.) Invite, call, vŏcārĕ, āv, āt. Iron, ferrum, L Irritate, irrītārē, āv, āt. It behooves, oportet. It is better, præstat. It is well known, is an admitted fact constat. It is lawful, licet. It pities, one pities, miseret. It repents, one repents, ponitet. Italy, Italia, ae.

J.

Journey, iter, itineris, n. Judge, s., jūdex, icis. Judge, v., jūdicāre, āv, āt. Just, justus, ā, ŭm. Just as, sīcut. Justice, æquitās, ātis.

K.

Keep, servārě, āv, āt.
Kid, hædůs, ī.
Kill, occīděrě, cīd, cīs; interficěrě
(iŏ), fēc, fect.
Kind, sort, s., gěnůs, ěris.
Kind, a., běnīgnůs, ă, ŭm.
King, rex, rēgis.
Kingdom, rēgnům, ī.
Know, scīrě, scīv, scīt.
Knowledge, scientiă, ae.
Known, cōgnǐtůs, ă, ŭm.

L

Labor, s., lăbŏr, ōrĭs. Labor, v., lăborārĕ, āv, āt. Lamb, āgnus, ī. Large, māgnus, a, um; amplus, a, ŭm, Larger, major, us. Last, dūrārĕ, āv, āt. Lasting, sempiternüs, ä, üm. Latinus, Lătinus, L Laugh, laugh at, rīdērč, rīs, rīs. Lavinia, Lāvīnia, ae. Law, lex, legis. Lead, dūcere, dux, duct; agere, eg, Lead back, rědūcěrě, dux, duct. Lead forth, ēdūcĕrĕ, dux, duct. Lead forward or out, producere, dux, duct. Lead to, addūcere, dux, duct. Leader, dux, ducis. Learn, discere, didic. Legion, legio, onis. Letter, līteræ, ārum: ĕpistŏla, ae. Levy, compărārĕ, āv, āt. Lie, a falsehood, mendāciŭm, ī. Life, vîtă, ae. Light, lux, lūcis.

Line of battle, ăciēs, ēī.
Lion, leħ, ōnǐs.
Listen to, audīrč, īv, īt.
Little, parvūs, ā, ŭm; a little, parvūm; paucūs, ă, ŭm.
Little garden, hortūlūs, ī. (515).
Live, viverč, vix, vict.
Lofty, altūs, ă, ŭm.
Look at, spectārč, āv, āt.
Lose, āmitterč, mīs, miss.
Love, ămārč, āv, āt.

M.

Maiden, virgo, ĭnĭs. Make, făcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fact: make a reply, responsum dăre. Man, homo, inis: vir, I. Manliness, virtūs, ūtis. Many, multus, a, um; many things, multă. March, proficisci, fect. Marine, of the sea, marinus, a, um. Master as teacher, măgister, trī. Master as owner, dominus, I. Matron, mātronă, ae, Meadow, prātum, ī. Meanwhile, interim. Meeting, concilium, ī. Melt, liquescere, licu. Merciful, clēmens, tis: lēnis, č. Messenger, nuntiŭs, ī. Middle, midst of, middle of, medias, ă, ŭm, (267.) Mild, lēnis, ĕ: clēmens, tis. Mildness, clēmentiă, ae. Military service, mīlĭtiă, ae. Mind, animus, 1; mind, the reason. ing faculty, mens, tis. Miserable, miser, a, um. Misfortune, călămitās, ātis: măl**um, ī** Mislead, corrumpere, rup, rupt. Modesty, pudor, oris. Money, pecūnia, ae. Month, mensis, is, m. Moon, lūnă, ae. More, amplius, (adv.). Mortal, mortalis, ĕ. Mother, māter, tris. Mountain, mons, tis, n. Mourn, wear mourning for, lagere, x, ct.

cĕrĕ

m.

сер

fact

Movable, mobilis, č.

Move, movare, mov, mot.

Move forward, promovare, mov, mot.

Much, multus, ä, üm; much good,
multum boni; much time, multim temporis.

Multitude, multituda, inis.

Mu, meus, ä, üm.

N.

Name, noměn, inis. Narrate, narrārē, āv, āt. Narration, narrative, narrātio, onis, (521.)Narrow pass, angustize, arum. Nation, nātio, onis, Native country, pătriă, ae. Natural to man, hūmānus, a, um. Nature, genus, eris. Nearer, propior, us. Neither, nec; neither-nor, necněc. Nest, nīdus, ī. Never, nunquăm. Next, nearest, proximus, a, um; next following, postěră, um (masc. nom. not used). Night, nox, noctis. Nightingale, lusciniă, ae. No, no one (adj.), nullus, a, um (113, R.). No one, nobody, (sub.), nemo, (inis). Not, non; with imperat. or subj., ne; not only-but also, non solumsĕd ĕtiăm. Not even, neguidem. Not to know, nescīre, īv, īt. Not yet, nondům. Nothing, nihîl (indec.). November, November, bris (abl. I.), Numa, Nŭmă, ae. Number, s., numerus, ī. fumber, v., numěrárě, av. at.

O.

O. o sī. Obey, pārērē, u, it. Closerve, servārē, āv, āt. Obtain, obtinērē, u, tent.

Occasion, occāsio, onie. Of himself, sui. f yesterday, hesternus, a, nia Offend-against, viöläre, av, at. Offer, præbere, u, it. Often, saepě. Old age, senectūs, ūtis. Old man, sěnex, sěnis. On scrvice, militiae. On this side, cis. One, single one, unus, a, um (113 R) One is grieved at, piget; I am grieved at, mē piget. One ought, oportet. Only, modo. Open, ăpěrīrě, u, t. Openly, coram. Opportunity, occāsio, onis. Oppose, obstarě, střt, stat. Or, aut, vel; either-or, vel-vel Or, in double questions, ăn. Oration, ōrātio, ōnis. Orator, örātör, öris. Order, jubere, juss, juss, Other, alius, a, ud (113. R.). Our, nostěr, tră, trům. Overhang, impendērě. Overthrow, evertere, rt, rs.

P.

Pain, dölör, orıs. Pardon, ignoscěrě, nov, net. Parent, părens, entis. Part, pars, tis. Pass over in silence, tăcere, u, it. Passion, cupiditas, atis. Past, praeteritus, a, um; the past praetěrită Pausanias, Pausăniās, ae. Peace, pax, cis. Peacock, pāvo, onis. People, populus, ī. Perceive, sentīre, s. s; perspicare (iŏ), spex, spect. Perception, sensus, us. *Perfidy*, perfĭdiă, ae. Personal, prīvātus, a, um. Persuade, persuadere, s. s. Philosopher, philosophus, i. Physician, mědicůs, ī. Pietu, pičtās, ātis.

3 R) rieved

-vel

ĭt. past

cere

Pious, piŭs, ă, ŭm, Pity, misereri, it. Place, s., locus, I. (pl. I, or a.) Place, v., poněrě, půsu, posit. Plainly, plane. Plausible, spēciosus, a, um. Play, s., ludus, L. Play, v., lūděrě, s. s. Pleasant, jūcundus, a, um. Please, plăcērē, u, it. Pleasure, voluptās, ātis. Plough, ărārĕ, āv, āt. Pluck, carpěrě, ps, pt. Plunge into, immergere, rs, rs. Poem, poēmă, ătis. Poet, poetă, ae. Poor man, pauper, eris. Popular, popularis, ĕ (528). Possess, possidere, ed, ess. Practise, colere, u, cult; exercere, u, ĭt. Praise, s., laus, dis. Praise, v., laudārē, āv, āt. Precept, praeceptum, I. Prefer, mallě, mālu. Prepare, părārē, āv, āt; praepărārē. Present (adj.), praesens, tis. Present, to make a present, donare, āv, āt, Preserve, conservārē, āv, āt. Pretence, simulatio, onis. Prevent, deterrere, u, it; obstare, stīt, stāt. Priest, priestess, săcerdos, otis. Private, prīvātus, a, um. Prize, aestimārš, āv, āt; prize highly, māgnī aestimārě. Procure, compărare, av, at. Profit, prodesse, profu, profut. Promise, promittere, mis, miss. Provided, dummodo. Province, provincia, ae. Prudence, prudentiă, ac. Prudent, prūdens, tis; providus, a, .Pull down, evertere, t, s. Punish, pünīrē, īv, īt. Pupil, discipulus, L Purchase, ĕmĕrĕ, ēm, empt. Rob of, spöliārĕ, āv, āt. Put confidence in, crēděrě, crēdíd, Robust, robustŭa, ă, ŭm. crēdit. Roman, Romanus, a, um. Put to flight, fugare, av, at, (540). Rome Romă, ae.

Quarrel, concertare, av. at Queen, rēgīnā, ae. Question, quaestid, onis. Quickly, celeriter.

Rage, saevīrē, īv. īt. Raise, compărare, av. at. Reach, attingere, tig, tact; perre nīrĕ, vēn, vent. Read, lěgěrě, lēg, lect. Real, vērus, a, um. Reason, rătio, onis. Receive, accipere (io), cep, cept recipere (ið); capere (ið), cep capt. Reform, sānārĕ, āv, āt. Refuge, perfugium, I. Regard, pŭtare, av, at. Reign, rēgnārē, āv, āt. Reject, respuĕrĕ, pu. Relate, narrārē, āv, āt; rēferrē, tŭl, lāt. Relying on, frētus, a, um. Remain, mănērē, mans, mans. Remaining, rěliquus, a, um. Remember, recordari, at. Render thanks, grātiās ăgĕrē. Repent, one repents, poenitet (485). Report, s., rümör, öris. Report, nuntiāre, āv, āt. Repress, compescere, cu. Resist, resistere, stit, stit. Response, responsum, ī. Rest, the rest, reliquus, a, um. Rest, quiescĕrĕ, quiēv, quiēt. Restrain, continere, u, tent; com pescěrě, cu. Return, rědīrě, i, ĭt; rěvertorě, t, s (551.)Rhine, Rhēnus, L Rich, locuples, ētis. Ring, ānŭlŭs, ī. Ripen, coquere, cox, coct. River, flumën, inis. Road, viă, ne.

Romulus, Rōmūlūs, I.
Roof, tectūm, I.
Round, rŏtundūs, ň, ŭm.
Rule, rĕgĕrĕ, rex, rect.
Rumor, rūmŏr, ōris.
Run, currĕrĕ, cŭcurr, curs.
Rush, ruĕrĕ, ru, rŭt.

S.

Safe, incolumis, o. Safety, sălūs, ūtis. Same, Iděm, eăděm, Iděm. Satisfy, sătiare, av, at, Save, servārē, āv, āt. Say, dīcĕrĕ, dix, dict. Scatter, spargěrě, spars, spars. Sceptre, sceptrum, I. Scipio, Scipio, onis. Sea, măre, is. Second, secundus, a, um. See, vidērē, vid, vis; conspicērē (iŏ), spex, spect. Seed, sēmen, inis. Seek, pětěrě, īv or i, īt. Seem, vidērī, vīs. Seize, arripërë (iŏ), ipu, ept; dëprëhenděrě, hend, hens. Self, ipsě, ă, ŭm. Sell, venděrě, dřd, dřt. Senate, senātus, ūs, (517.) Senator, senator, oris. Send, mittere, mīs, miss. *Send before*, praemittěrě, mís, misa Sentiment, sententiă, ac. Separate, disjungere, x, ct. Serve, servire, iv (i), it. Servius, Servius, L. Set forth, exponere, posu, posit. Set on fire, incendere, d, s. Set out, proficisci, fect. Severe, ācer, ācris, ācee. Sew, stitch, suěrě, su, sūt. Shame, pudor, oris. Sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre. Shave, tondere, totond, tons. Shear, tondēre, totond, tons. Sheep, ŏvis, is. Shepherd, pastor, oris. (520.) Shield, clipeus, i. Shine, mĭcārĕ, u; lūcērĕ, x. Shining, splendens, tis.

Short, brěvis, č. Shoulder, humerus, 1. Show, monstrare, av, at; demon strare, av. at. Shrub, frutex, icis, m. Shun, vītārē, āv, āt. Shut, clauděrě, s, s. Silver, argentŭm, 1. Simple, simplex, ĭcĭs. Sin, peccare, av, at. Since, cum, quum. Sing, cănere, cecin, cant; cantare, āv, āt. Single, single one, unus, a, um (113, R.). Siren, sīrēn, ēnīs. Sister, soror, oris. Six, sex. Size, māgnītūdo, ĭnšs. Skilful, skilled in, pěrītus, a, um. Skin, deglübere, ps, pt. Slave, servus, I. Sleep, s., somnŭs, ī. Sleep, dormīrē, īv, īt. Slow, tardŭs, ă, ŭm. Small, parvus, a, um. Smaller, minor, ŭs. Snake, anguis, is, m. Snatch, arripërë (ið), ipu, ept. Snow, nix, nivis. So, sīc, ādeō, tăm; so—as, tăm quam, sīcut. So great, tantŭs, ă, ŭm. Socrates, Socrates, is, Soldier, mīles, ītis. Some, ăliquis, quă, quid (quod); some time, aliquid temporis. Some time, some time or other, alfquandŏ. Sometimes, interim. Son, fīliŭs, ī. Son-in-law, gĕnĕr, ī. Sorrow, dŏlŏr, ōrĭs; luctŭs, ūa. Soul, ănimus, ī. Sound, sŏnŭs, ī. Sow, spargěrě, rs, rs. Space, intervallum, I. Spare, parcere, peperc (pars), parcet (pars) Speak, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs. Spear, hastă, ae. Specious, speciosus, a, um (550)

E v, āt; dēmon

cant; cantare, unus, a, um

rītus, a, um. pt.

ĭpu, ept. so—as, tăm—

quid (quod); emporis. or other, alf-

ictŭs, ūa.

(pars), pareit

im (580)

Spin, nërë, nëv, nët. Sport, ludus, I. Spouse, conjux, gis. Spring, vēr, vērīs, n. Sprinkle, aspergěrě, ra, ra Stability, stabilitas, atis Stain, măculare, av, at. Star, stellă, ae. State, civitās, ātis. Storm, expugnare, av, at. Stream, flimen, inis. Strength, vis, vis (pl., virês). Strive for, studere, u. Strong, robustus, a, um. Studious, studiosus, a, um. Study, studere, u. Successive, continuus, a, um Succor, succurrere, rr, rs. Sue for, pětěrě, īv (i), īt. Sulla, Sullă, ae. Summer, aestās, ātīs. Sun, sõl, sõlis, m. Supper, coenă, ae. Supplicate, exorare, av, at. Surface, superficies, el. Surpass, superare, av, at. Surrender, dedere, did, dit. Surround, circumdăre, ded, dăt; cingĕrĕ, x, ct. Sustain, sustinērē, u, tent. Swear, jūrārē, āv, āt. Swift, vēlox, öcis. Swim, nārē, āv, āt. Sword, gladius, L

T.

Take, căpěrě (15), cep, capt. Take care, cavere, cav, caut, Take care of, cūrārĕ, āv, āt. Take by storm, expūgnāre, av, at (550).Talent, ingenium, 1. Tarentum, Tărentum, L Tarquin, Tarquiniŭs, I. Teach, dŏcērĕ, u, doct. Tear in pieces, dīlāniārē, āv āt. Ten, děcěm. Tenth, dĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm. Terms, conditio, onis. Terrify, terrērē, u, ĭt. Than, quăm. Thanks, grātiae, ārum.

Thanksgiving, supplicātio, onis. That (pron.), ille, a, ud; is, ea, td istě, a, ud. That (conj.), ut, with comp. (469), That not, quominas, quin. The entire, tōtus, a, um (113, R.). Theft, furtum, L There, ibi. Therefore, ergő, ităque, ideo, igitür Thing, res, rel. Think, putare, av, at; think about cogitare, av, at; think little of parvī aestīmārē, āv, āt. Third, vertius, a, um. Thirst, sitīrē, īv, īt. This, hīc, haec, hōc. Thou, you, tū, tuī. Thousand, mille. Threaten, impendēre. Three, tres, tria. Through, per. Tibur, Tibur, uris. Till, cŏlĕrĕ, u, cult. Time, tempüs, ŏris. Timid, timidus, a, um. To, ad, in (with acc.). To death, căpitis. Too much, nimius, a, um. Top, the top, summus, a, um; agreeing with the noun, as, summus mons, the top of the mountain. Torture, excruciare, av, at. Touch, tangĕrĕ, tĕtĭg, tact. Towards, ergā (with acc.). Tower, arx, cis; turris, is (acc., ein or im, abl. ĕ or i). Traitor, proditor, oris. Tranquil, tranquillus, a, um. Treachery, treason, proditio, onia. Treaty, foedus, eris. Tree, arbor, oris, f. Trojan, Trojānus, a, um. True, vērus, a, um. Truly, vērŏ. Truth, vērŭm, ī. Try, tentārĕ, āv, āt. Tullia, Tullia, ac. Turn, convert, convertěrě, t. s. Turn back, revertere, t, s. Twelve, duŏdĕcĭm. Twenty, viginti.

Two, duŏ, duae, duŏ.
Two hundred, dücenti, ae, ă.
Two years, space of two years, biennium.

TT

Uncertain, incertăs, ă, ăm (550). Uncover, ăperīre, ru, rt. Understand, intelligere, lex, lect. Uninjured, incolümis, ë. Unknown, incognităs, ă, ăm. Unlearned, indoctăs, ă, ăm. Unnecessary, săpervăcuăs, ă, ăm. Unworthy, indignus, ă, ăm. Unworthy, indignus, ă, ăm. Use, v., ātī, ūs. Useful, ūtilis, ĕ. Utility, ūtilitās, ātis.

V.

Valuable, prětiōsůs, ă, ŭm.
Value, aestimārě, āv, āt.
Very (before a noun or pronoun, sometimes), ipsě, ă, ŭm.
Very fond, stůdiōsůs, a, um.
Very much or great, plūrimůs, ă, ŭm; very many, plūrimů.
Victim, victimă, ae.
Victoria, Victōriä, ae (prop. name).
Victory, victōriä, ae,
Violate, viòlārě, āv, āt; rumpěrě, rūp, rupt.
Virgin, virgő, ĭnis.
Virtue, virtůs, ūtis.
Voice, vox, vōcis.

w.

Wage (as war), gĕrĕrĕ, gess, gest; inferrĕ, tŭl, lāt.
Walk, ambūlarĕ, āv, āt.
Walk, mūrŭs, ī.
Warn, bellŭm, ī.
Warn, admönērĕ, u, ĭt.
Wash, lăvārĕ, lāv, laut, and lăvāt.
Wasp, crābrō, ōnĭs.
Wase, perdĕrĕ, did, dĭt.
Watch, vĭgĭlarĕ, āv, āt.
Watcr, ĭquä, ae.
Wax (as moon), crescĕrĕ, crēv, crēt.
Way, viā, ae; ĭtĕr, ĭtīnĕrĭs, n.

Wealthy, locuples, stis, Weep, flere, ev. et. Weep for, lugere, lux. Well, bene. When, quum. Whence, undě. Wherefore, quare. Whether, utrum; whether-or, in double questions, utrum-an, in other cases, seu-seu; sivě-sivě. While, dum; while walking, inter ambŭlandŭm. White, candidus, a, um. Who, which, that (rel.), qui, quae, quŏd. Who, which, what? (interrog.), quia quae, quid! (subs.); qui, quae. quod ! (adi.). Whole, totus, a, um (113, R.). Wicked, improbus, a, um. Wife, conjux, gis. Winter, hiems, is. Wisdom, săpientiă, ae. Wise, săpiens, tĭs. Wish, vellě, volu. With, cum. Within, intra (with acc.). Without, sině (with abl.). Witness, spectare, av, at (548). Wolf, lupus, ī. Woman, mulier, is. Wonderful, mīrābilis, č. Wool, lana, ae. Word, verbum, i. Work, opus, eris. World, mundus, I; orbis terrarum. Worthy, dīgnus, a, um. Would that, ŭtĭnăm, o sī. Wound, s., vulnus, eris. Wound, v., vulněrarě, av, at. Wretched, miser, a, um. Write, scrīběrě, ps, pt. Wrong, v., viŏlārĕ, āv, ē.

Y.

Year, annus, ī.
Yesterday, hesternō diē.
Yet, tăměn.
You, tū, tuī.
Your, thy, tuŭs, ă, ŭm ' your, vestěr,
tră, trům.

ther—or, in rum—an, in ; sivě—sivě silking, intěr

, quī, quae,

errog.), quia ; qui, quae.

13, R.). im.

.). it (548).

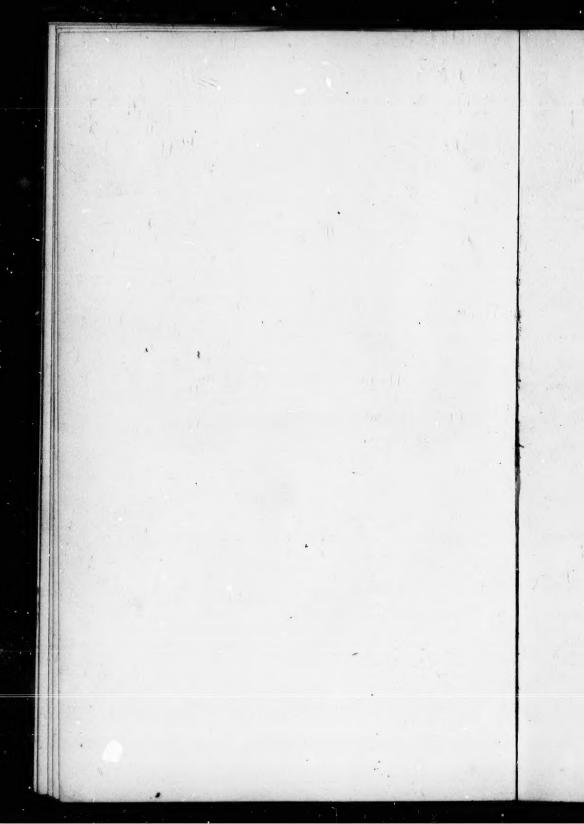
is torrārum.

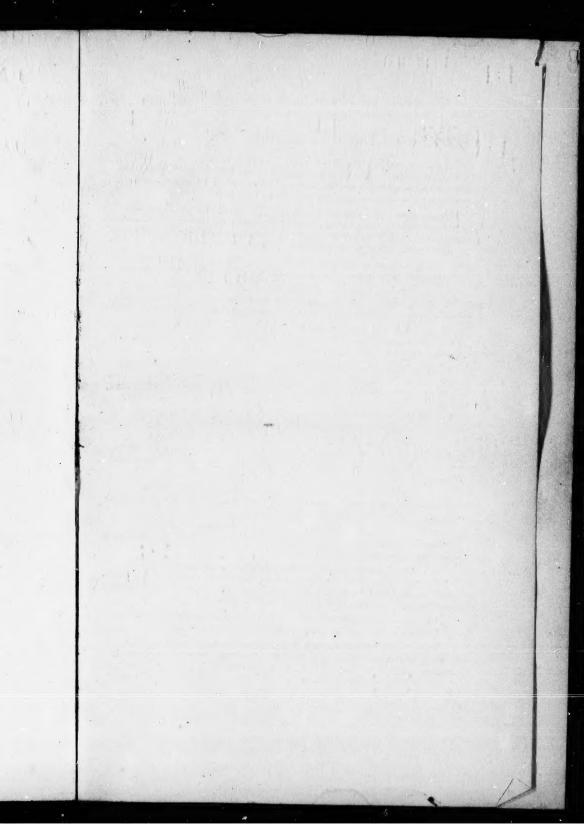
sī.

i, iv, āt.

4.5

your, vestăr,





Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Rev. Prof. J. J. OWEN, D.D., New York Free Academy.

"I have carefully examined Harkness's Latin Grammar, and am so well pleased with its plan, arrangement, and execution, that I shall take the earliest opportunity of introducing it as a text-book in the Free Academy."

From Mr. JOHN D. PHILBRICK, Superintendent of Public Schools, Boston, Mass. "This work is evidently no hasty performance, nor the compilation of a mere book maker, but the well-ripened fruit of mature and accurate scholarship. It is eminently practical, because it is truly philosophical."

From Mr. G. N. Bigelow, Principal of State Normal School, Framingham, Mass. "Harkness's Latin Grammar is the most satisfactory text-book I have ever used."

From Rev. Daniel Leach, Superintendent Public Schools, Providence, R. I.
"I am quite confident that it is superior to any Latin Grammar before the public.
It has recently been introduced into the High School, and all are much pleased with it."

From Dr. J. B. CHAPIN, State Commissioner of Public Instruction in Rhode Island.

"The vital principles of the language are clearly and beautifully exhibited. The work needs no one's commendation."

From Mr. Abneb J. Phipps, Superintendent of Public Schools, Lowell, Mass.

"The aim of the author seems to be fully realized in making this 'a useful Book, and as such I can cheerfully commend it. The clear and admirable manner in which the intricacies of the Subjunctive Mood are unfolded, is one of its marked features.

"The evidence of ripe scholarship and of familiarity with the latest works of German and English philologists is manifest throughout the bool."

From Dr. J. T. CHAMPLIN, President of Waterville College.

"I like both the plan and the execution of the work very much. Its matter and manner are both admirable. I shall be greatly disappointed if it does not at once win the public favor."

From Prof. A. S. PACKAED, Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar exhibits throughout the results of thorough scholarship. I shall recommend it in our next catalogue."

From Prof. J. J. STANTON, Bates College.

"We have introduced Harkness's Grammar into this Institution. It is much more logical and concise than any of its rivals."

From Mr. Wm. J. Rolfe, Principal Cambridge High School.

"Notwithstanding all the inconveniences that must attend a change of Latin Grammars in a large school like mine, I shall endeavor to secure the adoption of Harkness's Grammar in place of our present telt-book as soon as possible."

From Mr. L. R. WILLISTON, Principal Ladies' Seminary, Cambridge, Mass. "I think this work a decided advance upon the Grammar now in use."

From Mr. D. B. Hager, Princ. Eliot High School, Jamaica Plain, Mass.

"This is, in my opinion, by far the best Latin Grammar ever published. It is admirably sdapted to the use of learners, being remarkably concise, clear, comprehensive, and philosophical. It will henceforth be used as a text-book in this school."

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Prof. C. S. Habrington and Prof. J. C. Van Benschoten, of the Wesleyan
University.

"This work is clear, accurate, and happy in its statement of principles, is simple yet echolarly, and embraces the latest researches in this department of philological science. It will appear in our catalogue."

From Mr. Elbridge Smith, Principal Free Academy, Norwich, Ct.

"This is not only the best Latin Grammar, but one of the most thoroughly prepared school-books that I have ever seen. I have introduced the book into the Free Academy, and am much pleased with the results of a month's experience in the class-room."

From Mr. H. A. Principal High School, Hartford, Ct.

"I can heartily recommend Harkness's new work to both teachers and scholars. It
is, in my judgment, the best Latin Grammar ever offered to our schools,"

From Mr. I. F. Cadv, Principal High School, Warren, R. I.

"The longer I use Harkness's Grammar the more fully am I convinced of its superior
excellence. Its merits must secure its adoption wherever it becomes known."

From Messrs, S. Thurber and T. B. Stockwell, Public High School, Providence.

"An experience of several weeks with Harkness's Latin Grammer, enables us to say with confidence, that it is an improvement on our former text-book,"

From Mr. C. B. Goff, Principal Boys' Classical High School, Providence, R. I.
"The practical working of Harkness's Grammar is gratifying even beyond my expectations."

From Rev. Prof. M. H. BUOKHAM, University of Vermont.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar seems to me to supply the desideratum. It is philosophical in its method, and yet simple and clear in its statements; and this, in my judgment, is the highest encomium which can be bestowed on a text-book."

From Mr. E. T. QUIMBY, Appleton Academy, New Ipewich, N. H.
"I think the book much superior to any other I have seen. I should be glad to sutroduce it at once."

From Mr. H. OROUTT, Glenwood Ladies' Seminary, W. Brattleboro', Vt. "I am pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar, and have already introduced it into this seminary."

From Mr. Charles Jewett, Principal of Franklin Academy.

"I deem it an admirable work, and think it will supersede all others now in use, in the division and arrangement of topics, and in its mechanical execution, it is superior to any Latin Grammar extant."

From Mr. C. C. Chase, Principal of Lowell High School.

"Prof. Harkness's Grammar is, in my opinion, admirably adapted to make the study of the Latin language agreeable and interesting."

From Mr. J. Kimball, High School, Dorchester, Mass.

"It meets my ideal of what is desirable in every grammar, to wit: compression of general principles in terse definitions and statements, for ready use; and fulness of detail, well arranged for reference."

vell pleased ortunity of

on, Mass. mere book seminently

ham, Mass. ver used." ce, R. I. the public.

ed with it."

ode Island.

bited. The

l, Mass. eful Book, er in which atures. eks of Ger-

natter and it once win

b scholar.

nuch more

atin Gram-Harkness's

Mass.

fass.
ied. It is
c, compreschool."